CHINESE CHINESE

CORNELIUS C. KUBLER

READ AND WRITE MANDARIN CHINESE AS THE CHINESE DO

Learn to read and write Chinese easily through a proven, practical method



Features native-speaker recordings of all reading exercises



进阶中文: 读与写

進階中文:讀與寫

TUTTLE

CHINESE CHINESE

READ AND WRITE MANDARIN CHINESE AS THE CHINESE DO



CORNELIUS C. KUBLER

进阶中文: 读与写 進階中文: 讀與寫

TUTTLE Publishing

Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

The Tuttle Story: "Books to Span the East and West"

Many people are surprised to learn that the world's leading publisher of books on Asia had humble beginnings in the tiny American state of Vermont. The company's founder, Charles E. Tuttle, belonged to a New England family steeped in publishing.

Immediately after WWII, Tuttle served in Tokyo under General Douglas MacArthur and was tasked with reviving the Japanese publishing industry. He later founded the Charles E. Tuttle Publishing Company, which thrives today as one of the world's leading independent publishers.

Though a westerner, Tuttle was hugely instrumental in bringing a knowledge of Japan and Asia to a world hungry for information about the East. By the time of his death in 1993, Tuttle had published over 6,000 books on Asian culture, history and art—a legacy honored by the Japanese emperor with the "Order of the Sacred Treasure," the highest tribute Japan can bestow upon a non-Japanese.

With a backlist of 1,500 titles, Tuttle Publishing is more active today than at any time in its past—still inspired by Charles Tuttle's core mission to publish fine books to span the East and West and provide a greater understanding of each.

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Copyright © 2015 Cornelius C. Kubler All photos © 2015 Cornelius C. Kubler

Cover photos©qingwa/istockphoto.com; @Yali Shi/Dreamstime.com; @Miao99/istockphoto.com

ISBN 978-0-8048-4020-0; ISBN 978-1-4629-1719-8 (ebook) **Library of Congress Control Number: 2015940927**

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Distributed by:

North America, Latin America & Europe

Tuttle Publishing
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.
Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930 Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993
info@tuttlepublishing.com
www.tuttlepublishing.com

Asia Pacific

Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd. 61 Tai Seng Avenue, #02-12, Singapore 534167 Tel: (65) 6280-1330 Fax: (65) 6280-6290 inquiries@periplus.com.sg www.periplus.com

18 17 16 15 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 Printed in Singapore 1509CP

Japan

Tuttle Publishing Yaekari Building, 3rd Floor 5-4-12 Osaki Shinagawa-ku Tokyo 141-0032 Tel: (81) 3 5437-0171 Fax: (81) 3 5437-0755 sales@tuttle.co.jp www.tuttle.co.jp

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

A Note to the Learner

Welcome to the second volume of an unusual and highly effective two-volume course in written Chinese!

As a native English speaker learning Chinese, working hard to learn Chinese is not enough; you have to work smart in order to learn this very different language efficiently. No matter why you've chosen to learn Chinese—for business, travel, cultural studies, or another goal—the Basic Chinese approach of two separate but integrated tracks in spoken and written Chinese will help you learn this language efficiently and successfully.

- Intermediate Written Chinese is a continuation of Basic Written Chinese (Tuttle Publishing, 2011).
- Intermediate Written Chinese systematically introduces 336 of the highest-frequency characters (in both their simplified and traditional forms) and over 1,200 common words written with them, showing their use in a variety of sentences and reading passages, to help you master Chinese reading and writing. Together with the 288 characters and some 700 words introduced in Basic Written Chinese, a total of 624 characters and more than 1,900 words are formally taught in this two-volume course. In addition, Intermediate Written Chinese introduces another supplementary 199 characters and over 700 words, meaning that students will have encountered a grand total of 823 characters and over 2,600 words by the end of this course.
- Each lesson introduces six new characters and a number of words written with them. By dividing the learning into small tasks, you maintain a sense of accomplishment rather than getting bogged down.
- The structure and etymology of each new character is explained in detail to make the learning of characters easier, and similar characters are compared and contrasted.
- Some lessons include realia such as photographs of street signs, name cards, e-mail messages, and handwritten notes.
- Lessons include both printed and handwritten forms of characters, as well as several different printed fonts.
- There are detailed, clear English explanations for the key points you need to understand to read and write Chinese correctly, plus information about Chinese usage, culture, and society, as well as recommended study strategies for learning written Chinese.
- Intermediate Written Chinese should be used in conjunction with the accompanying Intermediate Written Chinese Practice Essentials.
- Either before or at the same time that you study a lesson in *Intermediate Written Chinese*, you should study the companion lessons in *Intermediate Spoken Chinese* and *Intermediate Spoken Chinese Practice Essentials*, so

- that you can learn of all the relevant information regarding Chinese culture and gain practice in Chinese pronunciation and grammar.
- The characters in *Intermediate Written Chinese* were chosen from those used in the Basic Conversation of the corresponding lesson in *Intermediate Spoken Chinese*, based on frequency of occurrence. Thus, when you begin a new lesson of *Intermediate Written Chinese*, you already know the pronunciation, meaning, and usage of the new words. You now need only to learn their written representations. This considerably lightens your learning load!
- Both simplified and traditional characters are taught in the same volume. This means students can learn either or both without having to purchase another book. Instructors have the flexibility to teach a combined class where some students read and write one type of character and other students the other type.
- Intermediate Written Chinese is designed to be used both in a class with an instructor and by independent learners working on their own.
- The course includes an audio CD of the new vocabulary and reading exercises, recorded by native speakers, to help with pronunciation, phrasing, and comprehension.
- The on-line **Instructor's Guide** (available gratis from the publisher) contains detailed suggestions for using these materials as well as a wealth of exercises for use by instructors in class or by tutors during practice sessions.

出版和使用说明

《进阶中文:读与写》专供读写课使用。这本教材通过各种练习有系统地介绍336个高频字(简体及繁体)和1,200多个高频词。这本教材另外还介绍199个补充生字及700多个补充生词,所以总共介绍823个生字和2,600多个生词。学习者宜与配套的《进阶中文:读与写》练习册、《进阶中文:听与说》及《进阶中文:听与说》练习册一起使用。

出版和使用說明

《進階中文:讀與寫》專供讀寫課使用。這本教材通過各種練習有系統地介紹336個高頻字(簡體及繁體)和1,200多個高頻詞。這本教材另外還介紹199個補充生字及700多個補充生詞,所以總共介紹823個生字和2,600多個生詞。學習者宜與配套的《進階中文:讀與寫》練習冊、《進階中文:聽與說》及《進階中文:聽與說》練習冊一起使用。

Contents

A Note to the Learner	Part 3: The Peking Duck Banquet (cont.) 144
Acknowledgments 6	Part 4: Making Dumplings
About This Course	UNIT 16: EATING AND DRINKING (III) 159 Part 1: Eating with a Colleague in a Restaurant 160
Abbreviations13	Part 2: A Dinner Party at Home
UNIT 11: GETTING AROUND TAIPEI	Part 3: A Dinner Party at Home (cont.)
Part 1: By Taxi to the Bank of Taiwan	Part 4: A Dinner Party at Home (cont.)
Part 2: "Which Bus Do I Take to Muzha?"23	UNIT 17: ON THE TELEPHONE
Part 3: Asking Directions to a Friend's House 30	Part 1: "Want to Go to the Show?"191
Part 4: Filling Up at a Gas Station	Part 2: Telephone Tag
UNIT 12: SHOPPING (I)	Part 3: Calling About an Advertisement for an Apartment
Part 1: Buying Ice Pops	Part 4: Calling About an Advertisement for
Part 2: Purchasing Pens	an Apartment (cont.)
Part 3: Shopping for Vegetables	UNIT 18: VISITING PEOPLE (I)
Part 4: At a Fruit Stand	Part 1: Visiting a Friend at Home
UNIT 13: SHOPPING (II)	Part 2: Visiting a Friend at Home (cont.)230
Part 1: Buying Meat at a Traditional Market 72	Part 3: Calling on Someone to Request a Favor 236
Part 2: In a Supermarket78	Part 4: Calling on Someone to Request a Favor (cont.) . 243
Part 3: Purchasing New Shoes	
Part 4: Buying Pants	UNIT 19: VISITING PEOPLE (II)
	Part 1: Visiting a Sick Classmate
UNIT 14: EATING AND DRINKING (I) 100	Part 2: Visiting a Sick Classmate (cont.) 259
Part 1: Ordering a Meal in a Restaurant 101	Part 3: A Farewell Call on a Favorite Teacher267
Part 2: Ordering a Meal in a Restaurant (cont.) 108	Part 4: A Farewell Call on a Favorite Teacher (cont.) 275
Part 3: Arranging a Banquet	LIMIT OO, I FIGURE TIME ACTIVITIES (I)
Part 4: Arranging a Banquet (cont.)	UNIT 20: LEISURE TIME ACTIVITIES (I) 283
LINUT 45 FATING AND DRINKING (II)	Part 1: Hobbies
UNIT 15: EATING AND DRINKING (II) 130	Part 2: Hobbies (cont.)
Part 1: The Peking Duck Banquet131	Part 3: Going to the Movies
Part 2: The Peking Duck Banquet (cont.) 137	Part 4: Going to the Movies (cont.)304

UNIT 21: LEISURE TIME ACTIVITIES (II) 313	UNIT 24: SINGAPORE AND MALAYSIA on disc
Part 1: Talking About Sports	Part 1: Conversation at Singapore
Part 2: Talking About Sports (cont.)	Botanic Gardens
Part 3: Watching a Soccer Game on Television 329	Part 2: A Visit to Singapore Zoo
Part 4: An Excursion to the Great Wall	Part 3: A Day at a Penang High Schoolon disc
UNIT 22: EMERGENCIES	Part 4: Purchasing a Laptop in a Penang Mallon disc
Part 1: Illnesses	A. Characters With Multiple Pronunciations on disc
Part 2: The Pickpocket	B. Simplified-Traditional Character Conversion Table 379
Part 3: A Lost Bag	C. New Characters and Words By Unit and Part (on disc)
Part 4: The Accident	D. Character Index
UNIT 23: HONG KONG AND MACAO on disc	E. Chinese-English Glossary
Part 1: A Walking Tour of Hong Kong on disc	F. English-Chinese Glossaryon disc
Part 2: A Walking Tour of Hong Kong (cont.) on disc	
Part 3: The Linguistic Situation of Hong Kongon disc	
Part 4: A Trip to Macao	



How to Download the Bonus Material of this Book.

- 1. You must have an internet connection.
- 2. Click the link below or copy paste the URL to your web browser.

http://www.tuttlepublishing.com/intermediate-writtenchinese-downloadable-cd-content

For support email us at <u>info@tuttlepublishing.com</u>.

Acknowledgments

I am indebted to a number of people for their assistance in the preparation of this volume. It's not possible to mention everyone who participated, but special thanks are due the following for their contributions:

For assistance in drafting an earlier version of some of the reading exercises, parts of which survive in the present version, my good friend Qunhu Li, formerly my colleague in the Chinese Program at Williams College and now Director of New Century Language and Culture Center in Tianjin. Student research assistants Jenny Chen and Tron Wang also contributed to the reading exercises.

For corrections to the manuscript and helpful comments of all kinds, Jerling Guo Kubler, Eric Pelzl, and Shaopeng Zhang; and my colleagues in the Chinese Program at Williams College, present and past, Cecilia Chang, I-Ting Chao, Yu-yin Hsu, Nini Li, Christopher M. B. Nugent, Cathy Silber, Hsin-I Tseng, Weibing Ye, Zhang Mo, Wei Zhang and, especially, Hao-hsiang Liao and Li Yu. Yang Wang, my coauthor for *Basic Spoken Chinese Practice Essentials*, went over the entire manuscript with a fine-toothed comb, for which I am deeply grateful. I would also like to thank my colleague and friend Professor Shengli Feng, formerly of Harvard University and now with the Chinese University of Hong Kong, for his valuable insights concerning register and prosody in written Chinese.

For making the accompanying audio recordings, Jerling Guo Kubler.

For advice and assistance with computer-related work, Adam Jianjun Wang, Senior Instructional Technology specialist at Williams College, and Peter Leimbigler of Asia Communications Québec Inc. All of the Chinese-language content in this volume was processed using the KEY 5.1 Chinese language software that Dr. Leimbigler and his colleagues developed.

For their careful editing and helpful suggestions during the production of this course, my editors June Chong and Sandra Korinchak. I also wish to express my appreciation for their enthusiastic support of the project and its development, and for their patience, to Tuttle's Publisher Eric Oey and Vice President Christina Ong; and to Nancy Goh, Ngo Su Yin, and the Tuttle Sales and Marketing Team for their expertise and assistance.

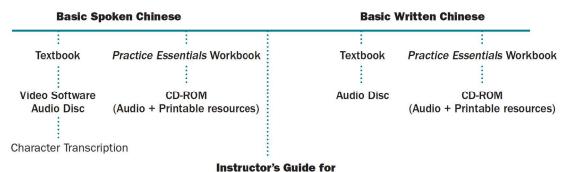
Last but not least, I wish to thank the students in the Basic Chinese classes at Williams College from 1993 through 2014 for their comments and suggestions. I should also state here that though many have helped me bring this volume to completion, I alone am responsible for the final form of the content and any mistakes or imperfections.

Cornelius C. Kubler Department of Asian Studies Williams College Williamstown, Massachusetts, USA

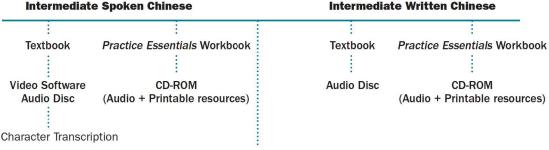
About This Course

Intermediate Spoken Chinese and Intermediate Written Chinese constitute the second level of a comprehensive course in modern Chinese (Mandarin), the language with the largest number of native speakers in the world, the official language of mainland China and Taiwan and one of the official languages of Singapore. The focus of this course, which is designed for adult English-speaking learners, is on communicating in Chinese in practical, everyday situations. We have tried to keep in mind the needs of a wide range of users, from college and university students to business people and government personnel. With some adjustments in the rate of progress, high school students may also be able to use these materials to their advantage. By availing themselves of the detailed usage notes and making good use of the Practice Essentials books, the video, and the audio, it is even possible for motivated self-learners to work through these materials on their own, though it would be desirable for them to meet with a teacher or native speaker for an hour or two per week, if possible. Although users with specialized needs will, in the later stages of their study, require supplementary materials, we believe this course provides a solid general foundation or "base" (hence the title of the course) that all learners of Chinese need, on which they may build for future mastery.

The course is divided into spoken and written tracks, each with various types of ancillary materials. The following diagram will clarify the organization of the whole course:







Instructor's Guide for Intermediate Spoken Chinese and Intermediate Written Chinese

Several modes of study are possible for these materials: (1) the spoken series only; (2) a lesson in the spoken series followed a few days, weeks, or months later by the corresponding lesson in the written series; and (3) a lesson in the spoken and written series studied simultaneously. What is not possible is to study the written series first or only, since the written series assumes knowledge of the pronunciation system and relevant grammatical and cultural information, which are introduced in the spoken series.

Students embarking upon the study of Chinese should be aware that, along with Japanese, Korean, and Arabic, Chinese is one of the most difficult languages for native English speakers. This course makes no pretensions of being an "easy" introduction to the language. However, students can be assured that if they make the effort to master thoroughly the material presented here, they will acquire a solid foundation in Chinese.

The proficiency goals in speaking and reading by completion of the *Intermediate Spoken Chinese* and *Intermediate Written Chinese* portions of the course are Intermediate-High on the American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages (ACTFL) Chinese Proficiency Guidelines, which correlates with S-1+/R-1+ on the U.S. government Interagency Language Roundtable (ILR) Language Skill Level Descriptions. By the time they attain this level, learners will be able to conduct simple, practical conversations with Chinese speakers on a variety of everyday topics. They will also be able to read simple, connected texts printed in simplified or traditional Chinese characters and recognize about 600 high-frequency characters and common words written with them. Of course, they will not yet be able to conduct conversations on professional topics or read newspapers or novels, skills that in the case of Chinese take a considerably longer time to develop.

Some of the special features of this course include:

Separate but integrated tracks in spoken and written Chinese. Most textbooks for teaching basic Chinese teach oral and written skills from the same materials, which are covered at a single rate of progress. Students typically study a dialog, learn how to use in their speech the words and grammar contained in the dialog, and also learn how to read and write every character used to write the dialog. But the fact is that, due to the inherent difficulty of Chinese characters, native English speakers can learn spoken Chinese words much faster than they can learn the characters used to write those words. As East Asian language pedagogues Eleanor H. Jorden and A. Ronald Walton have argued,* why must the rate of progress in spoken Chinese be slowed down to the maximum possible rate of progress in written Chinese? Moreover, in Chinese, more than in most languages, there are substantial differences between standard spoken style and standard written style, with many words and grammar patterns that are common in speech being rare in writing or vice versa. For all these reasons, this course uses separate but related materials for training in spoken and written Chinese. However, reflecting the fact that written Chinese is based on spoken Chinese, and so as to mutually reinforce the four skills (listening, speaking, reading, and writing), the written track is closely integrated with the spoken track. A day's spoken lesson is based on a conversation typically introducing one to three new grammar patterns and 15 to 20 new spoken words, while the corresponding written lesson introduces six new high-frequency characters and a number of words that are written using them, chosen from among (but not including all of) the characters used to write the basic conversation of the corresponding lesson. Experience shows that the learning of written skills in Chinese proceeds more efficiently if learners study for reading and writing the characters for words they have previously learned for speaking and comprehension. Under this approach, when students take up a new lesson in written Chinese, they already know the pronunciations, meanings, and usages of the new words, needing only to learn their written representations—which considerably lightens the learning load. Such an approach also allows students and instructors maximum flexibility concerning at which point, how, and even whether, to introduce reading and writing.

Graduated approach. There is so much to learn to become proficient in Chinese that Chinese language learning can easily become overwhelming. By dividing large tasks into a series of many smaller ones, the learning of Chinese becomes more manageable. Therefore, each spoken lesson consists of only one fairly short (five-to twelve-line) conversation, while each written lesson introduces only six new characters. An added bonus to this approach is the sense of accomplishment learners feel through frequent completion of small tasks, rather than getting bogged down in long lessons that seem never-ending.

Naturalness of the language. A special effort has been made to present natural, idiomatic, up-to-date Chinese as opposed to stilted "textbook style." This will be evident, for example, in the use of interjections, pause fillers,

^{*} Cf. Eleanor H. Jorden and A. Ronald Walton, "Truly Foreign Languages: Instructional Challenges" in *The Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, March 1987.

and final particles, which occur more frequently in this text than in most other Chinese language textbooks. Occasionally, for comprehension practice, we have included recordings of slightly accented Mandarin speech, so as to familiarize learners with some of the more common variations in pronunciation they are likely to encounter.

Authenticity of the language. Chinese, like English, is a language spoken in a number of different societies, with multiple standards and varying usages. Although the emphasis of this course is on the core that is common to Mandarin Chinese wherever it is spoken, linguistic differences among the major Chinese speech communities as well as recent innovations are taken up where appropriate. Of the 96 basic conversations in *Basic Spoken Chinese* and *Intermediate Spoken Chinese*, the audio and video for 56 of them were recorded in Beijing, with another 31 recorded in Taipei, 3 in Hong Kong, one in Macao, 2 in Singapore, 2 in Malaysia, and one in the U.S. The relatively small number of terms that are restricted in use to a particular speech area are so indicated.

Emphasis on the practical and immediately useful. We have tried to present material that is high in frequency and has the most immediate "pay-off value" possible. An effort has been made to include the most useful words, characters, grammar patterns, situations, and functions, based on several published frequency studies as well as research by the author. The units of this course have been arranged in order of general usefulness and practical importance. Although the course is designed to be studied from beginning to end, learners with time for only, say, the first five or ten units will at least be exposed to many of the most useful characters, vocabulary items, and structural patterns.

Eclecticism of approach. We believe that language is so complex and the personalities of learners so different, that no single approach or method can possibly meet the needs of all learners at all times. For this reason, the pedagogical approach we have chosen is purposefully eclectic. This course is proficiency-oriented and situational in approach with a carefully ordered underlying grammatical foundation. We have borrowed freely from the audio-lingual, communicative, functional-notional, and grammar-translation approaches.

Maximum flexibility of use. Student and teacher needs and personalities vary widely, as do the types of programs in which Chinese is taught. We have tried to leave options open whenever possible. This is true, for example, in the question of how to teach pronunciation; whether to teach the spoken skills only or also the written skills; when to introduce reading and writing; whether to teach simplified or traditional characters or both; and which of the exercises to do and in which order to do them. There is detailed discussion of all these and other questions in the Instructor's Guide for *Basic Spoken Chinese* and *Basic Written Chinese*.

Attention to sociolinguistic and cultural features. Knowing how to say something with correct grammar and pronunciation is not sufficient for effective communication. Learners must know what to say and what not to say, when to say it, and how to adjust what they say for the occasion. How do the gender, age, and social position of the speaker and listener affect language? Finally, language does not exist apart from the culture of its speakers. What are the cultural assumptions of Chinese speakers? These are some of the matters to which we have tried to pay attention.

Extensive built-in review. In order to promote long-term retention of the material learned, a great effort has been made to recycle vocabulary and grammar periodically in later units in the textbook and *Practice Essentials* after they have been introduced.

Attention to the needs of learners with prior knowledge of Chinese. While the course is designed for beginners and assumes no prior knowledge of Chinese, it tries to take into account the special situation and needs of learners who possess some prior knowledge of the language acquired from home or residence overseas. Consequently, there are special notes on features of standard Mandarin pronunciation and usage that differ from the Cantonese or Taiwanese-influenced Mandarin to which some learners may have been exposed.

Organization and Use

Intermediate Written Chinese consists of fourteen units that parallel the fourteen units in Intermediate Spoken Chinese. Each of these units in turn consists of four parts, with each part presenting six characters, common words written with them, and reading exercises to help you master the new material.

The fourteen units of *Intermediate Written Chinese* systematically introduce 336 of the highest-frequency characters (in both their simplified and traditional forms) and over 1,200 common words and expressions written with them in context in sentences and a variety of reading passages, so as to help you master Chinese reading and writing. Together with the 288 characters and over 700 words introduced in *Basic Written Chinese*, this makes a total of 624 characters and about 1,900 words formally taught in the two-volume written Chinese course. In addition, *Intermediate Written Chinese* introduces another 199 new characters and over 700 new words for supplemental learning, making a grand total of 823 characters and over 2,600 words that students will have encountered by the end of the course.

The six characters in each lesson were chosen, based on frequency of occurrence, from the characters used to write the Basic Conversation of the corresponding lesson in *Intermediate Spoken Chinese**. Since each lesson of *Intermediate Written Chinese* was designed to be studied after the corresponding lesson of *Intermediate Spoken Chinese* and *Intermediate Spoken Chinese Practice Essentials*, when you begin a new lesson of *Intermediate Written Chinese*, you already know the pronunciations, meanings, and usages of the new words, so you need only learn their written representations. This considerably lightens your learning load!

NEW CHARACTERS AND WORDS

The first section of each part or lesson in *Intermediate Written Chinese* is called "New Characters and Words." It introduces the six new characters of the lesson as well as common words written with them. For each new character, the following information is provided:

- 1. Number. The blue-colored number at the beginning of the section for each new character is the number of the character in this course. Later in the course, characters are sometimes referred to by their number.
- 2. Simplified form. If only one large, blue-colored character is given, then the simplified form is the same as the traditional form.
- 3. Traditional form. If the traditional form of a character is different from the simplified form, it is given next, also in large, blue-colored font, but *enclosed in parentheses*. So that learners are always clear about which characters are simplified and which are traditional, whenever simplified and traditional characters occur together, simplified characters always come first, with traditional characters following, enclosed in parentheses.
- **4.** Pinyin. The Pinyin transcription follows on the same line after the character.
- 5. English. The last item on the first line of each new character section is an English translation of the basic meaning of the character. The translation here is for reference only and does not need to be learned. The meaning of the individual character may be different from the meanings of words containing the character. Moreover, the English translation is not meant to be complete and includes only those meanings that are judged to be pedagogically useful for learners at this point in their study of Chinese.

^{*} When there were no appropriate characters in the Basic Conversation of the corresponding lesson, characters from the Supplementary Vocabulary of the corresponding lesson were chosen, or characters from previous lessons where there had been an excess of appropriate characters were chosen.

- **6.** Radical. Beginning on the second line of each new character section, the radical for the new character is given. If the character differs in its simplified and traditional forms, and if those two forms have different radicals, then both radicals are indicated. If the radical has a common colloquial name, that also is given.
- 7. Phonetic. If there is a pedagogically useful phonetic, it is indicated. If the character itself is a common phonetic, examples are given of characters in which the phonetic occurs.
- 8. Other components. Any other components of the character are mentioned and discussed.
- 9. Structural explanation. When something pedagogically useful can be said about the history and development of the character, it is included. Our primary consideration is helping students remember the character, so some explanations that have mnemonic value are mentioned even if they may not be historically accurate. On the other hand, explanations that are excessively complex and would not be helpful to the average learner have been omitted.
- **10. Similar characters.** At the end of the new character section are listed any "look-alike" characters with which the new character should be contrasted.
- 11. New words written with the character. After each new character is a list of new words that can be written with that character. Sometimes related new words that have not previously occurred in the spoken materials are also listed here for supplemental learning; these are indicated with the symbol ⊙. All the new words are given in simplified characters, traditional characters (if different from simplified), Pinyin transcription, and English translation. The new words are also recorded on the accompanying audio disc.
- **12.** New words written with characters you already know. This section presents new words from the corresponding lesson of *Intermediate Spoken Chinese* that are written with characters that have already been introduced in previous lessons of the course. These words are also recorded on the accompanying audio disc.

IMPORTANT NOTE TO LEARNERS: Before beginning the Reading Exercises and proceeding to the next lesson, you need only learn the *new words in sections (11) and (12) above that are followed by word class abbreviations in bolded brackets.* Everything else is for reference only.

READING EXERCISES

The next section of each lesson is the Reading Exercises. These should be the focus of study and practice, since they present the new characters, words, and other features of written Chinese in context. When doing the Reading Exercises, you should read the materials both orally and silently. Be sure to make frequent use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation. The Reading Exercises are presented twice: first in simplified characters in horizontal format, and then again in traditional characters in vertical format. This is done to provide learners with practice in reading both types of characters and both formats. Of course, learners may choose to read only one version of the Reading Exercises, or they may read one version first and the other version later.

The Reading Exercises for Units 11 to 24 consist of the following components:

- Sentences. These illustrate the use of the new characters and words in context. There are always ten sentences in this section, and they exemplify all the new characters and most of the new words of the lesson.
- 2. Conversations. The conversations are in spoken style. The first conversation is often similar to the Basic Conversation in the corresponding lesson of *Intermediate Spoken Chinese*. The name or role of each person speaking is included and should be studied along with the conversation itself. During class or practice sessions, you should find a partner or partners, and each of you should take a role. Then switch roles, so you can practice reading all of the lines.
- 3. Narratives. The purpose of the narratives is to give you practice in reading connected prose, which is different in a number of ways from a series of independent sentences. A few of the narratives include some elements of written-style Chinese. The first time you read a narrative, you should read it out loud; the second time, read silently and with gradually increased reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.
- 4. Notes. These are miscellaneous comments to help you understand the meaning, structure, and cultural background of the material in the Reading Exercises. Be sure to study the notes carefully as you work your way through the Reading Exercises. No attempt is made to provide a systematic treatment of grammar, since that is provided in Basic Spoken Chinese and Intermediate Spoken Chinese. To allow the use of more interesting reading materials, some supplemental characters and words have been introduced in this volume, with the majority of these occurring in the later lessons. They are all fully explained in the notes, with the symbol ◆ indicating vocabulary written with new characters and the symbol indicating new vocabulary written with familiar characters.

Abbreviations

[PV]

Postverb

Word Classes*		[PW]	Place Word	
	[A]	Adverb	[QW]	Question Word
	[AT]	Attributive	[RC]	Resultative Compound
	[AV]	Auxiliary Verb	[RE]	Resultative Ending
	[BF]	Bound Form	[SN]	Surname
	[CJ]	Conjunction	[SP]	Specifier
	[CV]	Coverb	[SV]	Stative Verb
	[EV]	Equative Verb	[TW]	Time Word
	[EX]	Expression	[V]	Verb
	[I]	Interjection	[VO]	Verb-Object Compound
	[IE]	Idiomatic Expression	Other Abbreviations and Symbols	
	[L]	Localizer		
	[M]	Measure	(B)	Beijing
	[MA]	Moveable Adverb	(T)	Taipei
	[N]	Noun	lit.	literally
	[NU]	Number	/	(separates alternate forms)
	[P]	Particle	•	(supplemental vocabulary written
	[PH]	Phrase	•	with new characters)
	[PR]	Pronoun	•	(supplemental vocabulary written with familiar characters)
	[PT]	Pattern		

^{*} For explanations of these word classes, see the section "Word Classes of Spoken Chinese" on pages 354–364 of Basic Spoken Chinese (Tuttle Publishing, 2011).



知道的那些事

美国音乐



The above are titles, headlines, and other snippets of printed Chinese taken from newspapers and magazines published in mainland China, Hong Kong, and Taiwan. All of the characters in them are introduced in Intermediate Written Chinese and Basic Written Chinese. (See page 384 for English translations.)

Getting Around Taipei

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Getting around the city of Taipei.
- 2. Hailing a taxi and telling the driver your destination.
- 3. Complaining that the driver is driving too fast and telling him or her to slow down.
- 4. Paying the driver and telling him or her to keep the change.
- 5. Inquiring about taking a bus.
- 6. Asking directions to a friend's home.
- 7. Filling up at a gas station.
- 8. A Chinese joke involving arithmetic.



By Taxi to the Bank of Taiwan



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

289 kuài fast, quick; soon, quickly; happy

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字旁 **xīnzìpáng** "side made up of the character 心" and is written as \P . Phonetic is 夬 **kuài**. The "heart" 心 beats "fast" 快. Distinguish 快 from simplified 块 **kuài** (112).

快 kuài be fast, quick [sv]; soon, quickly [A]

290 ′<mark>漠 màn</mark> slow; haughty, rude

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字旁 **xīnzìpáng** "side made up of the character 心" and is written as \dagger . Phonetic is 曼 **màn**, which is used in the city name 曼谷 **Màngǔ** "Bangkok."

慢 màn be slow [sv] 慢走 màn zǒu "take care" [ɪɛ]

291 题 (題) tí topic; problem

Radical is $\overline{\mathbb{D}}$ (頁) **yè** "leaf," "page." The other component is 是 **shì** (76). Note how the bottom stroke in the 是 is elongated to make room for the $\overline{\mathbb{D}}$ (頁). Distinguish 题 (題) from 是.

问题 (問題) wèntí question; problem [N] 没问题 (没問題) méi wèntí "no problem" [IE]

292 放 **fàng** put; let go, set free

Radical is $5 \not\equiv 0$ "rap," "tap." As a radical on the right-hand side of a character, it is usually written $5 \not\equiv 0$. Phonetic is $5 \not\equiv 0$ fang (158). Distinguish $5 \not\equiv 0$ from $5 \not\equiv 0$.

放心 fàngxīn relax [vo]

293 解 (解) jiě loosen

Radical is 角 jiǎo "horn." The whole character 解 itself serves as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in the character 蟹 xiè which is used in the word 螃蟹 pángxie "crab." The character 解 has an alternate form 解.

●解放 (解放) jiěfàng liberate, emancipate [v]¹

●解放前 (解放前) jiĕfàng qián before liberation, pre-liberation (i.e., before 1949 Chinese

Communist revolution) [РН]

.....

●解放后 (解放後) jiĕfàng hòu after liberation (i.e., after 1949) [PH]

Note that the difference between the official simplified form and the official traditional form of this character does not show up in all fonts; in some fonts, they both look the same.

294 决(決) jué decide

Radical of the simplified form is 〉 **bīng** "ice," which is referred to colloquially as 两点水 (兩點水) **liǎngdiǎn shuǐ** "two drops of water." Radical of the traditional form is 水 **shuǐ** "water," which is written 〉 and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點水) **sāndiǎn shuǐ** "three drops of water" when it occurs at the left-hand side of a character. Phonetic is 夬 **kuài**, which you saw earlier in this lesson in 快 **kuài** (289). Distinguish 决 (決) from 快 and simplified 块 **kuài** (112).

解决 (解決) jiějué solve, resolve [v]

决定 (決定) juédìng decide, determine [v]; decision [N]

New Words in ISC 11-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

le (indicates action continuing up to present) [P]

-si to the point of death [RE]

zuò sit in/on; take; by (car, boat, train, airplane, etc.) [cv]

Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字²

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

^{1.} Here and in the rest of this volume, the symbol ② indicates a new and useful word or expression that has not previously been introduced in the spoken course but that is written with characters you have already learned or are learning in the current lesson. You should learn this new word or expression at this time, since if it reoccurs later in this book, it will not be annotated again.

^{2.} 简体字 (簡體字) jiǎntǐzì means "simplified character."

A. SENTENCES 句子3

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、高老师, 我能问您一个问题吗?
- 二、我觉得我们一定要快一点儿解决这个问题。
- 三、你的同屋没什么问题,你可以放心了。
- 四、解放前我表哥是一位小学老师,解放后他换了工作。
- 五、刚刚是谁开的门?请你快一点儿关上门,好不好?
- 六、校长,请您放心,这个问题很快就会解决的。
- 七、这么多的问题, 你太慢了, 快一点儿, 我忙死了!
- 八、这家公司的东西贵死了, 我们快去别家吧!
- 九、小何很喜欢中国, 所以决定以后要到中国去住。
- 十、王大海气死了,他有很多问题,朋友也不给他解决。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话4

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国学生:请您到天津街五十三号,谢谢。

中国司机: 你的中国话说得不错! 是在哪儿学的?

美国学生: 我在美国跟香港都学过。

中国司机: 你来了多长时间了?

美国学生:来了半年多了。司机先生,您开得太快了!可不可以开慢一占儿?

中国司机:没问题,你放心吧……前面就到了。

美国学生: 多少钱?

中国司机:九十五块。

美国学生: 好, 给您钱。

中国司机:谢谢。

二、

金太太: 李太太, 我走了。今天真谢谢您了!

李太太: 没事儿, 没事儿, 您慢走!

三、

小李: 老张, 你开得太快了! 开慢一点儿, 好吗?

^{3.} 句子 jùzi means "sentence."

^{4.} 对话 (對話) duìhuà means "dialog" or "conversation."

老张:好,没问题。

(过了一会儿)

小李:老张,对不起,现在你开得太慢了。请你开快一点儿,好吗?

四、

方先生: 老林, 你决定什么时候去成都了吗? 林先生: 我还没决定, 但是我大概下个月去。

方先生: 你去四川一定得小心一点儿!

林先生: 放心, 不会有问题的。

五、

边美生: 金金, 你能给我解决一个问题吗?

王金金: 那我得先知道是什么样儿的问题, 对不对?

边美生: 我表妹明天晚上要从上海来。她叫我去机场等她, 但是我明

天有事。你能不能到机场去等她呢?

王金金: 没问题, 你放心好了, 我一定去。她明天几点到?

边美生: 六点三刻。

王金金:那么,我就六点半到机场等她吧。

边美生: 金金, 真谢谢你了!

王金金: 没事儿。

C. NARRATIVE 短文5

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我姐姐快要三十岁了,我也已经二十五岁了。时间实在过得太快了!还记得小的时候,我觉得三十岁一定很老,但是现在觉得三十岁不一定那么老。其实,有很多事我还不太清楚,也有很多问题我还没解决。不过我已经长大了,要决定的事,还是早一点决定吧。

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字⁶

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

^{5.} 短文 duǎnwén means "short narrative."

^{6.} 繁体字 (繁體字) fántǐzì means "complex character" or "traditional character."

五 三 九 セ 六 四 • 去這 點這 關剛 這我 高 朋王 要小 就校 解解 心你 兒麼 了的 到何 別家 會長 上剛 個覺 友大 放放 老 ,多 門是 問得 師 也海 中很 家公 解, 後前 。同 國喜 吧司 我的 ,誰 屋 題我 不氣 決請 他我 , 去歡 忙問 的您 。們 我 給死 ! 的 好開 換表 沒 東 。放 不的 能 他了 住中 死題 什 了哥 工是 了 定 問 解 或 西 , ジ 好門 麼 0 , 決他 ? 要 您 貴 ! 你 , 5 作 問 太 快 死 這 請 所 題 位 有 了 慢 個 以 個 你 , 很 11 點 問 決 了 問 快 你 多 學 定 我 題 兒 題 可 問 老 們 點 嗎 以 快 很 解 以 題 師 後 快 快 兒 放 決 5

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

李 金 中 美 中 美 中 美 中 美 中 美 太 太 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 太 太 學 學 學 司 學 學 司 司 司 司 生 機 生 機 生 生 : 機 生 : 機 機 沒 您李 : : : : : : : : : 了太 事 多 就沒 慢您來 我 謝請 謝 好 九 你 哪你 兒 到問 ! + 沙 一開 來 在 兒的 您 太 謝 7 , 點得半 了題 了 學 美 給 五 錢 中 到 兒太年 多 沒 我 您 塊 5 或 的 或 天 ? 快 事 長 5 錢 跟 走 你 話 津 0 多 兒 了 放 了 時 香 街 說 了 間 港 , ! 得 N. 五 您 可 了 都 PP + 不 司 慢 學 天 不 錯 三 機 走 可 過 真 號 ! 先 ! 謝 前 以 是 , 生 謝 開 在 面 謝

三

五

四

小 李 : 老 張 , 你 題開 得 太 快 了 ! 開 慢 點 兒 , 好

嗎

5

老 張 : 好 , 沒 問

小 過 李 了 老 會 張 兒 , 對 不 起 , 現 在 你 開 得 太 慢 了 0

請

你

開

快

點

兒

好

嗎

?

林方 先 生 : 我 老 還林 , 你 定決 定 但什 麼 我時 大 候 去 成 個都 了 嗎

林方 先 先 先 生 生 : 放你 心去 四 川決 定 得 小 is 點 兒

:

沒

,

是

概

下

月

去

生 : , 不 會 有 問 題 的

邊王邊 美 生 : 金 金 , 能 給 我 解 決 個 問

美 金 金 生 • : 到我 那 機表 我 場妹得 去明 先你 等天 知 她晚道 呢上 是 ?要什 從麼 上樣 海 兒 來的 問 0 她 題 111 , 我 對

去不

機對

場

等

她

,

但 是

我

明

天 有 事 0 你 能 不 能

王 金 金 : 沒 問 題 , 你 放 じ 好 了 , 我 定 去 0 她 明 天 幾 點 到 5

美 生 : 六 點 三 0

到

金 金 : 沒 事 兒

王邊 王邊 美 金 金 生 : : 金 那 金 麼 , , 我刻 真 謝 就 謝 六 你 點 了 半

!

機

場

等

她

PP

題 嗎

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

早一點決定吧。 是沒不太清楚,也 是沒不太清楚,有很多事我 是不太清楚,有很多事我 是不太清楚,有很多事我 是不太清楚,也 是沒不太清楚,也 是沒不太清楚,也

Notes 注解7

- A5. 关上门 (關上門) "close the door"
- A6. 这个问题很快就会解决的 (這個問題很快就會解決的) "This problem will be solved soon." The pattern 会…的 (會…的) means "be likely to" or "will" and expresses the writer's conviction that something will most likely be a certain way (BSC 10-1: 2B, ISC 13-2: 7C).
- A8. 别家(別家) here stands for 别家公司(別家公司) "another company."
- A10. 气死 (氣死) qìsǐ "become extremely angry" [RC]
- B1. 司机先生 (司機先生) "Mr. Chauffeur" is a polite way to refer to a male chauffeur or driver. Referring to him simply as 先生 would also be acceptable.
- **B4.** 不会有问题的 (不會有問題的) "There won't be (any) problems." See note A6 above on 会…的 (會…的).
- C1. You learned 过 (過) "pass," "go by" in BWC 8-3. The sentence 时间实在过得太快了 (時間實在過得太快了) means "Time really passes too quickly."
- C2. 要决定的事,还是早一点决定吧(要决定的事,還是早一點决定吧) lit. "The matters that should be decided, on reflection it would be better to decide them a little earlier." A more idiomatic translation might be "I'd better decide the things that need to be decided as soon as possible." Note that 要 here means "need to," "should" (BWC 8-3).



Store Sign in Taipei

"Which Bus Do I Take to Muzha?"





Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

295 / jiŭ for a long time

Radical is \int **piě** left curving stroke. The character \bigtriangleup depicts a "person" \biggr trying to walk but being impeded by an obstacle \int , so it takes the person "a long time" \bigtriangleup to get anywhere. \bigtriangleup can itself serve as a phonetic, e.g., in \image **jiǔ**, the more complex form of the number \beth **jiǔ** (10). The character \image is used on checks instead of \beth to avoid mistakes and alterations. Distinguish \bigtriangleup from \diagdown **rén** (30) and \textdegree **cì** (134).

久jiǔbe long (of time) [sv]好久hǎo jiǔfor a very long time [PH]多久duō jiǔfor how long? [PH]

296 wán finish, complete

Radical is 中 mián "roof." This radical is referred to colloquially as 宝盖头 (寶蓋頭) bǎogàitóu "top made up of a canopy." Phonetic is 元 yuán "dollar" (377). Distinguish 完 from 定 dìng (270) and simplified 园 yuán (252).

完 wán finish, complete [v/RE] 卖完 (賣完) màiwán finish selling, be sold out 吃完 chīwán finish eating 说完话 (說完話) shuōwán huà finish talking

297 或

huò or

Radical is 文 gē "spear." This is the element inside the enclosure in the traditional character for "country" 國 guó (74). Distinguish 或 from 成 chéng (31), 感 gǎn (399), and traditional 國.

或	huò	or [CJ]	
或是	huòshi	or [CJ]	

298 者

zhě person who does something

Radical is 老 lǎo "old" (61). The character 者 itself serves as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in traditional 著 **zhe** (verb aspect particle). Distinguish 者 from 都 **dōu** (32) and 老 lǎo (61).

或者	huòzhĕ	or [CJ]
●记者(記者)	jìzhě	reporter, journalist [N]
●作者	zuòzhě	author, writer [N]

299 再

zài again, further

Radical is \square jiŏng "limit." The number "two" \square written inside Ξ indicates the idea of repetition or "again." Note that, generally speaking, Ξ is used for "again" in the future while Ξ yòu (210) is used for "again" in the past. Distinguish Ξ from Ξ tóng (80) and simplified Ξ liǎng (99).

300 见(見) jiàn se

This character is both a radical and a phonetic. You have seen it used as a phonetic in 现 (現) **xiàn** (198). The traditional character 見 is composed of 目 **mù** "eye" (543) and 人 **rén** "person" (30). If there is an "eye" 目 on a "person" 人, he or she normally can "see" 見. Distinguish 见 (見) from 天 **tiān** (33) and 儿 (兒) **ér** (156).

见 (見)	jiàn	see [v]
再见 (再見)	zàijiàn	"good-bye" [IE]
好久不见 (好久不見)	hăo jiŭ bú jiàn	"long time no see" [IE]
明天见 (明天見)	míngtiān jiàn	"see you tomorrow" [IE]

New Words in ISC 11-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

好	hăo	very [A]
对面(對面)	duìmiàn	across, across from [PW]
公车(公車)	gōngchē	bus [N]
老外	lăowài	foreigner [N]
要不然	yàoburán	otherwise, or [MA]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我弟弟很久没说日本话了,大概已经忘了很多了。
- 二、老张那个人说一是一,说二是二,你别再问了。
- 三、我和我的小学六年级同学说了再见以后,就很久没再见到他们了。
- 四、原来你说还有很多公车票,怎么现在都卖完了?
- 五、你大概已经忘了我了吧?我们已经好久没见了。
- 六、你从公司给我打电话或者找一个公共电话给我打都可以。
- 七、饭也吃完了, 东西也买完了, 我们可以回家了。
- 八、你要是需要换钱的话,可以去机场或者比较大的饭店换。
- 九、这个地方天天下大雨或是毛毛雨,我们已经好久没见到太阳了。
- 十、我们等王大海已经等了好久了,但是他还没吃完晚饭,叫我们再等他一会儿。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

一、(在台北)

老外: 请问,到台北动物园去要坐几号?

第一个台北人: 我好久没坐公车了,不太清楚。你到对面的7-ELEVEN

去问问看。要不然,你也可以坐MRT去动物园。

老外: 请问,到台北动物园去要坐几号?

第二个台北人: 236或是237都可以到。

老外: 大概多久一班?

第二个台北人: 237比较久。236好像五分钟一班, 很快的。

老外: 谢谢。我买一张车票。

第二个台北人:对不起,车票已经卖完了。你上了车再买吧。

二、

老师: 我叫你写的字你都写完了吗?

学生: 都写完了。

老师:这个字写错了,请你再写一次。

三、

中国同学: 你来这个学校多久了? 老外: 已经很久了, 快一年了。

中国同学: 你吃过饭了吗? 老外: 我刚刚吃完。

中国同学: 我还没吃呢, 现在就去吃。再见!

老外: 再见!

四、

张老师:老李,好久不见了!

李老师: 是, 好久不见!

张老师: 你准备什么时候去香港?

李老师: 我下个星期六或者星期天就要走了。

张老师: 你要去多久呢?

李老师:还不知道,因为去了香港以后,还要去广州。

张老师: 是吗?时间不早了, 我得先走了。明天见!

李老师: 再见!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、小学五年级的时候,我有一个同学住在我们家对面。他是美国人,但是中国话说得比中国人还好!小学六年级的时候,他和他家人回美国去了,听说他们现在住在美国的西岸。我已经好久没见到他了。不知道他最近怎么样,也不知道什么时候会再见到他。

二、老温

我有一个朋友姓温,名字叫温安然。他现在是记者,住在我们家对面,不过我很久没见到他了。老温是我以前上大学时候的同屋,很喜欢买东西。有一次,他买了一个大钟。我问他:"你为什么要买那个钟?你家里不是已经有好几个钟了吗?"老温说他很需要那个钟,别人家里都没有,买了以后只有他一个人有,所以一定要买。还有一次,老温买了一个很贵的汽车。我问他:"你为什么要买那么贵的汽车?你真的需要吗?"老温说因为别人都有这样的车,所以他不能不买。我真不知道说什么好。

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

三 九 七 六 五 四 1 1 到了我 去你 一你 我飯 們你 怎原 們也 已大麼來 他再和 陽雨個 機要 個從 可吃 場是 現你 們但等 了 , 地 公公 經概 們見我 在說 以完 共司 好已 再是王 我方 或需 了以的 你個 電給 久經 他大 回了 都 們天 者要 還 別人 忘 後小 賣 比换 話我 沒 了 還海 家, 再 已天 ,學 說 有 沒 給打 完 見 較錢 了東 很 了 經下 就六 沒 很 說 我電 大的 了 多 。西 了 我 很年 好大 日 打 了 的 話 了 本 飯 買 都 沒或 了 沒同 話 可 店 見是 可 者 5 好 再學 說 了 以 了 到毛 找 以 見說

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

老 老 師 生 外 外 師 : 個 個 個 : : 北 這 都 我 台 謝 台 大 台 號請 台 請 ? 問 5 個 寫 177 北 謝 北 概 北 北 問 字 多 完 你 0 人 人 寫 了 寫 我 : 久 到 到 買 五分 錯 的 吧完對 以看的不我 台 台 字 分 班 坐。 了 了不 7太好 6 北 北 鐘比 張 你 或 清久 起 動 動 R不 一較 車 請 都 EV 你 是 物 物 班久 寫 你 上車 去然 袁 再 完 0 了票 動 去 很 236 寫 了 物你去到 車已 要 嗎 快 園也問 可 坐 再經 次 買賣 以 可問面

張

老

師

:

你

要

去

多

久

呢

5

老

師

•

廣不

州知

因

為

去

了

香

港

以

後

, 還

要

0 道 李

老

師 師

我

下

個

星 什

者

天

就

要

期麼

六 時

或候

星香

期港

去

張

老

:

你

準

備

李

老

師

:

是

好

久

不

見

!

好

久

不

見

了

張

老

師

見嗎

! ?

時

間

不

了

我

得

先

走

了

明

天是 去還

李

老

師

再

四

張 老 外 老 師 : 再 老 見

或 同 學 : 我 還 沒 吃 呢 , 現 在 就 去 吃

再

見

中 老 外 : 我 剛 剛 吃 完

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我這要要的還有別嗎你他一候他們安我 老 真樣嗎買汽有他人?家:次的了家然有 溫 候最經們和還人學學 不的?那車一一家一裡「,同。對。一知車」麼。次個裡老不你他屋老面他個 道,老貴我,人都溫是為買,溫,現朋 說所溫的問老有沒說已什了很是不在友

時他已他他人國同小 會近好現他好, 住五 再怎久在家!但在年 見麼沒住人小是我級 到樣見在回學中們的 他,到美美六國家時 。也他國國年話對候 不了的去细說面, 知。西了的得。我 道不岸,時候此他有一個 麼道我說, 國美個

三

老

夕

:

己

經

久

了 這

快

年

了

很你

或

同

學

:

你

吃

過

飯

了

嗎

中

或

同

:

來

個

校

多

久

了

Notes 注解

- A2. 说一是一,说二是二 (說一是一,說二是二) lit. "Say one and it's one, say two and it's two" or, in idiomatic English, "Mean what you say" or "Stand by your word."
- A3. In this sentence, notice that the two 再见 (再見) have very different meanings. The first occurs in 说再见 (說再見), and means "Say goodbye." The second occurs in 很久没再见到他们(很久沒再見到他們), and means "(I) didn't see them again for a long time."
- **B1.** In Taiwan, 公车 (公車) is the word for "bus." In mainland China, 公交车 (公交車) is usually used instead.
- B2. You've learned 叫 in the sense of "be called" or "call." 叫 can also mean "tell" (someone to do something). Therefore, 我叫你写的字 (我叫你寫的字) means "the characters that I told you to write."
- C1. 比中国人还好 (比中國人還好) means "even better than Chinese people."
- **C2.** 你家里不是已经有好几个钟了吗?(你家裏不是已經有好幾個鐘了嗎?) "Don't you already have quite a few clocks at your home?" This is a rhetorical question, in other words, the speaker believes that the person he or she is speaking to does have a lot of clocks at their home. 好几个 (好幾個) means "quite a few," "several," or "a lot of."



Street Sign in Hong Kong

Asking Directions to a Friend's House



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

301 转 (轉) zhuǎn/zhuàn turn, revolve

转 (轉) zhuǎn/zhuàn turn; go around; revolve [v]

左转 (左轉) zuǒ zhuǎn turn left

往右转 (往右轉) wàng yòu zhuǎn turn toward the right

转进来 (轉進來) zhuǎnjìnlai turn in [RC]

转来转去 (轉來轉去) zhuànlái zhuànqù turn back and forth

302 F gen with, and; heel

Radical is 足 **zú** "foot" (546), which at the left side of a character is referred to colloquially as 足字旁 **zúzìpáng** "side made up of the character 足." When this character is written as a radical, its last two strokes are different, with the last stroke angling up to make room for the component on the right. Phonetic is 艮 **gèn**, which is one of the Eight Trigrams in the *Book of Changes*. Distinguish 跟 from 很 **hěn** (58).

......

跟 gēn and [cv]; with [cJ]

我跟你 wǒ gēn nǐ you and I

我跟你走 wǒ gēn nǐ zǒu l'll go with you

跟…说(跟…說) gēn...shuō say to, tell (someone something); repeat after someone [PT]

我跟你说 (我跟你說) wǒ gēn nǐ shuō I say to you; let me tell you

你跟我说 (你跟我說) nǐ gēn wǒ shuō repeat after me

303 讲(講) jiǎng speak, say, explain

Radical is 讠(言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzipáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic of the simplified form is 井 jǐng "a well." Distinguish 讲 (講) from 清 qīng (245) and 请 (請) qǐng (67), and distinguish simplified 讲 from simplified 进 jìn (278).

讲 (講) jiǎng speak, say, talk about, explain [v]

讲话 (講話) jiǎnghuà speak [vo]

跟…讲(跟…講) gēn...jiǎng say to, tell (someone something) [PT]

我跟你讲 (我跟你講) wǒ gēn nǐ jiǎng I say to you; let me tell you

讲中国话 (講中國話) jiǎng Zhōngguo huà speak Chinese

304 Jù implement, tool

Radical is 八 bā "eight" (9). Distinguish 具 from 真 zhēn (173) and simplified 县 xiàn (194).

家具 jiājù furniture [ɴ]

家具店 jiājù diàn furniture store [PH]

305 手 shǒu hand

This character is itself a common radical. When \pm is at the left side of a character, it is written as \pm and is referred to colloquially as \pm **tíshŏu** "raised hand." \pm is a pictograph, being a side view of a person's hand with the fingers stretched out. Be sure to distinguish \pm from \pm **máo** (258).

手	shŏu	hand [N]
左手	zuŏshŏu	left hand [N/PW]
右手	yòushŏu	right hand [N/PW]
左手边 (左手邊)	zuŏshŏubiān	left-hand side [PW]
右手边 (右手邊)	yòushŏubiān	right-hand side [PW]

306 房 fáng house; room

Radical is 戶 hù "door." Phonetic is 方 fāng "square" (158), which you already encountered in 放 fàng (292). "Houses" 房 have "doors" 戶 and are often "square" 方 in shape. Distinguish 房 from 方.

房	Fáng	Fang [sɴ]
房子	fángzi	house [N]
房间 (房間)	fángjiān	room [N]

New Words in ISC 11-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

错过(错调) cuòquo miss (a bus, an opportunity, etc.) [v] 店 diàn shop, store [PW] 过 (调) -guò (indicates motion past or by) [RE] 看到 kàndào see [RC] 一会儿见(一會兒見) yìhuĭr jiàn "see you in a while" [IE] 来…去(來…去) VERB lái VERB qù VERB all over [PT] 找来找去(找來找去) zhăolái zhăoqù look all over 怎么…也不 zĕnme...yĕ bù no matter how hard...don't [PT] (怎麼…也不) 怎么…也没 zěnme...yě méi no matter how hard...didn't [РТ] (怎麼…也沒)

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、这个事儿我已经跟你讲过很多次了, 你怎么不听?
- 二、在那个中文中心里面一定得讲中国话,不可以讲外国话。
- 三、林先生在房间里走来走去, 好像有很多问题还没解决的样子。
- 四、那个地方离这儿不远, 你先往左转, 再往右转, 很快就到了。
- 五、我们这儿十月的天气最好, 你来得正是时候, 别错过!
- 六、我今天得去家具店买几件家具,你要不要跟我一起去?
- 七、我不小心, 错过了三点钟的那班公共汽车, 只好等三点半的了。
- 八、弟弟, 别那样动你的手, 实在太难看了, 我跟你讲过很多次了!
- 九、你的房间是几号?在左手边,在右手边?我找来找去,怎么找也找不着!
- 十、王大海说他有一个问题,就是:"没有家具的房子怎么能住呢?"

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

何大安:小谢,我是小何。我跟你讲,我转来转去怎么找也找不到你说的那条路。

谢百里: 你现在在哪里?

何大安: 我在你说的那个小学门口打电话给你。

谢百里:好,你听我讲。你往"中美公司"那边走,就会看到一家家具

店。店不太大,不要错过。从那条路转进来左手边就是我们

住的房子。

何大安: 好,知道了。一会儿见!

二、

房先生: 钱小姐, 你家里的家具都很好看。是在哪儿买的?

钱小姐: 我们是在和平家具店买的。

房先生:和平家具店在哪儿?离这儿远吗?

钱小姐:不太远,很近。要是从这里走的话,一直往前走,到了公共汽

车站往左转,然后一直往前走就到了。

房先生: 那好。有时间我一定去看看。谢谢你了, 再见!

钱小姐: 不谢。明天见!



"Xĭshŏujiān" (sign in Beijing)

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我要跟你们讲一讲我小时候的房子。这已经是很久以前的事了,但是我到现在还记得很清楚。那时候我跟我家里人住在北京城外头一个叫房山的地方。我们住的房子不大,只有两个小房间,不过我那时候还很小,所以对我来说那个房子好像很大!房子里家具也不多,但是我们也不需要那么多东西。房子的左手边有一个中学,右手边有一家小店。我们后来在对面买了一个大一点的房子,可是我觉得那个房子住起来没有以前的房子那么好。我真喜欢我小时候的房子!

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

你我 得我 轉那 : 大不手的看弟 共不 要今 正們 , 個 很先 話那 「海 著邊房了, 汽小不天是這再地 往方問在 ! ?間 ,別 車心 要得 時兒 不中 有 跟去候十右離題房 找幾 跟樣 只錯 我家 , 月 轉這 還間 以中 來號 你動 好過 一具 別的 , 兒 沒裡 講心 具有 起店錯天很不解走外裡 的一 找?講你等了 去在 過的 三三 去 過氣 快遠 決來 國面 買 , 左 很手 點點 ! 最就, 的走 話 怎手 多, 半鐘 好 到你 樣去 過 麼邊 次實 的的 很 能, 了在 了那 。往 。好 找, 多 住就 也在!太 左 次

說

住具

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

錢 房 錢 房 錢 房 何 謝 何 謝 何 先 先 先 大 小 小 小 大 百 大 百 生 里 安 姐 生 姐 姐 生 安 里 安 : : : : : : : : : 車不 我 好 的店好 我 你 不 那 和 錢 的小 房。 那謝 好站太 平 在 現 謝 們 小 , 往遠 是 子店你 在條, 家 姐 知 你 明 左, 具 道 。不聽 說 在 路我 有 在 轉很 太我 時 店 和 了 的 哪 你 是 見 間 在 平 家 大講 ,近 那 裡 小 ! 我 然。 哪 家 裡 個 何 後要 兒 具 不你 小 的 會 0 定 5 一是 店 家 兒 要往 學 我 去 門 直從 離 買 具 見 錯 跟 往這 過中 看 這 的 都 口 你 看 前裡 兒 打 很 。美 講 走走 遠 好 從公 電 就的 謝 嗎 看 那司 話 我 到話 謝 條一 給 0 轉 了 你 是 路那 你 來 3 在 轉邊 轉 哪 去 直 進走 兒 再 來, 怎 往 見 買 左就 前 麼 的 ! 走 手會 找 邊看 也 到 就到 找 了 是一 不 我家 到 共 們家 你

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

子書、

一次

一次

Notes 注解

- A3. 好像有很多问题还没解决的样子 (好像有很多問題還沒解決的樣子) "It appeared that he had a lot of problems that he hadn't yet solved." Review the pattern 好像…的样子 (好像…的樣子) "it appears that, it seems that" (BSC 10-3: 1C, BWC 10-3).

- B3. 讲一会儿话 (講一會兒話) jiǎng yìhuǐr huà means "talk for a little while." Some in the younger generation now pronounce 一会儿 (一會兒) as yíhuìr.
- C1. 很久以前的事 means "a matter from a long time ago."

Filling Up at a Gas Station



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

307 Ju jiā add

Radical is \mathcal{H} lì "strength" (478). The other element is \square kǒu "mouth" (140). "Strength" \mathcal{H} is "added" to the "mouth" \square to make \mathbb{H} . Distinguish \mathbb{H} from \mathbb{H} jiào (78).

加 jiā add [v] 加州 **Jiāzhōu** California [**pw**]

308 油 yóu oil; gasoline

Radical is 水 **shuǐ** "water" (333), since oil is a liquid like water. This radical is written ? and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點水) **sāndiǎn shuǐ** "three drops of water" when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. Phonetic is 由 **yóu** "from."

.....

油 yóu oil; gasoline [N]
加油 jiāyóu add gasoline, refuel, tank up [Vo]; "All power to you!", "Hang in there!" (said

when rooting for someone or to encourage them) [IE]

加油站 jiāyóuzhàn gas station [PW]
●汽油 qìyóu gasoline [N]

309 满(滿) mǎn full; fill

Radical is 水 **shuǐ** "water" (333), which is written 文 and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點水) **sāndiǎn shuǐ** "three drops of water" when it occurs at the left-hand side of a character. A container is "full" 满 (滿) of "water" 文. Distinguish 满 (滿) from 兩 (两) **liǎng** (99).

满 (滿)	măn	be full [sv]; full [RE]
加满(加滿)	jiāmăn	add to the point where something is full [RC]
满人 (滿人)	Mănrén	Manchu (Chinese minority people) เท า

310 井 tè especially

Radical is 牛 niú "ox" (339). The radical 牛 when at the left side of a character is written as 牛 and is referred to colloquially as 牛字旁 niúzìpáng "side made up of the character 牛." Be careful not to confuse the radical 牛 with the somewhat similar radical 扌(提手 tíshǒu "raised hand"). The "ox" is regarded as an "especially" 特 valuable animal. The phonetic in the character 特 is 亨 sì "temple." Distinguish 特 from traditional 時 shí (206)

特	te	especially [A]
特别 (特別)	tèbié	especially [A]

311 价(價) jià price

Radical is \bigwedge **rén** "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is \bigwedge 字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character \bigwedge ." The phonetic of the simplified character \bigwedge is \bigwedge as in \bigwedge 绍 (\bigwedge 紹) **jièshao** "introduce." The phonetic of the traditional character 價 is 賈 **jiǎ** "seller." Distinguish simplified \bigwedge from simplified \bigwedge ge (87).

价钱(價錢)	jiàqián	price [N]
油价 (油價)	yóujià	price of gasoline [N]
半价 (半價)	bànjià	half price [N]
讲价钱 (講價錢)	jiăng jiàqián	discuss a price, bargain [РН]
讲价 (講價)	jiăngjià	discuss a price, bargain [vo]

312 停 tíng stop

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written f when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character f." Phonetic is f **Dīng [sN]**. The right half of the character is f as in f **Lingzi** "pavilion." When a "person" f comes to a "pavilion" f, he or she will "stop" f to take a rest. Distinguish f from f **gāo** (62).

停	tíng	stop [v]
停车 (停車)	tíngchē	stop a car; park [vo]
停车场 (停車場)	tíngchēchăng	parking lot rewi

New Words in ISC 11-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

从…起(從…起) cóng...qǐ starting from..., beginning from... [PT] 好了 hǎole "all right," "O.K." [IE] 看 kàn consider, think [v] 又要…了 yòu yào...le will...again [PT]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、汽车加满了油比较好。
- 二、你前天刚加了油,怎么今天又要加油了?
- 三、我的汽车快没有油了, 我需要找一个加油站加油。
- 四、上班的人得买全票,不过学生和老人可以买半价票。
- 五、我们的公司只有一个小停车场, 所以停车就成了一个很大的问题。
- 六、从下个星期一起,油价要贵很多,我看我得开始走路或是坐公车了。
- 七、美国很多地方不能讲价, 只有买房子或者买汽车的时候可以讲价。
- 八、满人原来住在中国的东北,可是现在北京市和河北省也有不少满人住 在那里。
- 九、听说最近加州和美国西岸其他的州, 汽油的价钱特贵。
- 十、到现在你们大概都已经知道了, 王大海特别喜欢到动物园去看动物。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

加油站的人:请问,你加什么油?

加油的人: 95. 我看还是加满好了。

加油站的人:好的。请看,现在从0开始。……好了,一共四百七十五块。

加油的人: 这是五百块。

加油站的人: 好, 找你二十五块。谢谢! 加油的人: 好像油价最近越来越贵了?

加油站的人:对。从明天起油价加三块钱,所以今天加油的车特别多。

二、(at a sports competition)

中国人:中国加油! 中国加油! 美国人:美国加油! 美国加油!

三、

姐姐:妹妹,你喜欢你的老师吗?

妹妹:我不喜欢她。

姐姐: 你为什么不喜欢她呢?

妹妹:因为她讲话很不清楚。第一次她说三加三是六,后来她又说二

加四也是六……

四、

小李: 小王, 你去过加州吗?

小王: 我就是加州人。我是在加州出生的, 也是在那儿长大的。

小李: 加州怎么样? 听说西岸的天气不错。

小王:对,那儿的气候特别好,不冷也不热,但是加州买东西比较贵。

小李: 听说最近加州的油价特贵, 是真的吗?

小王: 是的。以前还好, 可是从今年起, 汽油和其他东西的价钱都越来越贵了, 所以现在不少人需要加油的时候就到别的州去加, 不在加州加油。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我们家住在美国西岸的加州。这是一个汽车特别多的州,所以很多路口都有加油站。前天我的车子快没有油了,所以我就停在一个加油站准备要加油,但是那里的油价实在太贵了,所以我决定再去别家看看。还好,对面就有一个加油站,但是那里的油价比第一家还要贵。然后我转来转去,去了十几家加油站,价钱都很贵,最后我的车子没有油了!最近油价越来越贵,我看以后车子就停在家里,坐公车或者走路去上班比较好。
- 二、东山大学很小,有汽车的人也不太多,但是这个大学有一个特别大的停车场。离那儿不远还有一个大学叫西山大学。西山大学很大,开车的人也特别多,但是西山大学的停车场特别小,天天都会停满,还有很多人怎么找也找不到停车的位子。听说西山大学的林校长今天要去见东山大学的高校长。不知道两位大学校长能不能解决停车的问题?

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

三 九 七 六 五 四 1 1 有可滿 可有美 是很從 大場我 要我 坐多下 去,現 的說 不是人 以買國 的,們 和班 找的 看王在 州最 少現原 講房很 公,個 問所的 老的 動大你 ,近滿在來價子多 車我星 題以公 人人 個車 油剛 滿 人北任 了看期 。停司 可得 了加 物海們 汽加 。或地 加快 了 油州 住京在 。我一 者方 車只 以買 油沒 了 油 。特大 的和在市 買不 就有 買全 tt 別概 得起 站有 油 中 半票 那和 汽能 較 喜都 價美 加油 或 錢國 車講 始油 了個 價, 好 歡已 裡河 油了 怎 票不 到經 特西 一小 麼 。此 的價 走價 貴岸 個停 。 過 動知 省 時, 路要 我 今 物道 。其 候只 很重 學 天 或貴 需

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

三 (at a 中 妹 姐妹 姐 美 加 加 加 加 加 加 加 或 姐 妹 姐 或 油 油 油 油 油 油 油 sports : 的 的 站 的 : : 站 站 站 四說因 你 我 妹 : 的 人 的 人 的 的 也三為 為 中 : : 不 妹 美 人 competition 是加她 或 喜 或 好 : 這 : 六三講 麼 歡 加 別錢對 像 謝好 是 四開好 你 加 請 多 油 , ! 五 百 是話 不 她 喜 油 始的 油 , 我 問 七 所從 喜 ! 六很 歡 ! 價 百 0 看 , 找 + 中 塊 ,不 歡 你 美 以明 最 還 你 你 五 後清 或 她 的 或 今天 近 是 加 塊 看 天起 甚 來楚 呢 老 加 越 力口 + 。好 5 她。 師 來 油 油 加油 麼 滿 五 了現 又第 嗎 ! 越 ! 油價 好 油 塊 5 貴 5 說一 的加 了 二次 了 車三 加她 特塊 謝

小 小 小 王 李 王 · · · 王李 不候不來其是是 特聽 是好對 岸加 在在我 在就少越他從的 貴說 加,,的州 那加就 在加州加油。 在加州加油。 在加州加油。 是真的原子,所以前還好,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,那兒的氣候特別,是真的嗎? 在一个人需要加油的油價。 以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以前還好,可以可以不過加州嗎?

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

的雨見說麼天但大有別太東 比家來的加然是好所但就我以這我 問位東西找天是學一大多山 較裡越車油後那,以是停的很是們 題大山山也都西很個的,大好,貴子站我裡對我那在車多一家

四

Notes 注解

- A4. 全票 (全票) means "full-price ticket" while 半价票 (半價票) means "half-price ticket."
- A5. 成 here means "become" (BWC 10-1).
- A6. 油价要贵很多 (油價要貴很多) "The price of oil is going to become much more expensive."
- A10. 到现在(到現在) here means "by now."
- C1a. 州 zhōu "district," "prefecture," "state," or "canton" [N]. You first encountered this word in BWC B-1 in the city name 广州 (廣州) "Guangzhou". When the context is the United States, 州 means "state," for example, one could say 美国有五十个州 (美國有五十個州) "The U.S. has 50 states." In the word 加州 "California," the syllable 加 jiā represents the "Ca-" sound in "California" and 州 means "state," so 加州 literally means "the state of California."

C1b. 还好 (還好) lit. means "still good." When followed by a statement, as here, it means "luckily" or "fortunately" and implies the situation could have been worse (i.e., there might not have been another gas station nearby).

- C1c. 对面就有一个加油站 (對面就有一個加油站) "Right on the other side there was a gas station" or "There was a gas station right across from where I was." The 就 here implies "as close as that; that close," so in this context 就 could be translated as "right."
- C1d. 十几家加油站 (十幾家加油站) lit. means "ten plus a few gas stations," which in good English we could render as "over a dozen gas stations." The actual number is at least 11 and at most 19. 几 (幾) is used here to mean "few," "several," or "some" (BSC 7-2: 7B, BWC 7-2).
- C2a. 停满 (停滿) lit. "park to the point where it (the parking lot) is full."
- C2b. 停车的位子 (停車的位子) means "a place for parking" or "a parking spot" (BSC 5-2, BWC 5-2).
- C2c. 不知道 here means 我不知道. In contexts like this, the pronoun 我 is frequently omitted. It would be acceptable to translate this 不知道 as "I don't know," but an even better translation would be "I wonder if..."



Street Sign in Taipei



COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Purchasing various items in a department store.
- 2. Buying different kinds of vegetables and fruit.
- 3. Alternatives: This one or that one? Big ones or small ones? etc.
- 4. The names of common academic fields and majors.
- 5. Reading books and newspapers and visiting bookstores.
- 6. A simple discussion of Chinese languages and dialects.

Buying Ice Pops



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

313 Representation gen gen root; (measure for long, thin things)

Radical is the pictograph 木 mù "tree." This radical is referred to colloquially as 木字旁 mùzìpáng "side made up of the character 木." When 木 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't touch the component to its right. Phonetic is 艮 gèn (one of the Eight Trigrams in the Book of Changes). Distinguish 根 from 很 hěn (58) and 跟 gēn (302).

根	gēn	(measure for long, thin things) [M]
一根毛	yìgēn máo	a hair (on the body)
根本	gēnbĕn	basically, fundamentally [A]
根本 + NEGATIVE	gēnbĕn	not at all, completely not [PT]

ná take; hold

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which is usually at the left side of a character and written as ‡ and referred to colloquially as 提手 **tíshǒu** "raised hand" but is here at the bottom of the character. Phonetic is 合 **hé** "merge" or "combine." In order to "take" 拿 something, one's "hand" 手 must "merge" 合 with the object. Distinguish 拿 from 手.

拿 **ná** take, hold [v]

拿好 náhǎo hold on to well, hold firmly [RC]

加拿大 Jiā'nádà Canada [PW]

加拿大人 Jiā'nádà rén Canadian person [PH]

315 专(專) zhuān special; expert

Radical is 寸 **cùn** "inch." 专 (專) can serve as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., 转 (轉) **zhuǎn** (301). Distinguish 专 (專) from 转 (轉).

专家 (專家) **zhuānjiā** specialist, expert [N]

外国专家 (外國專家) wàiguo zhuānjiā foreign expert [PH]

316 业(業) yè business, industry; course of study; undertaking

Radical of the simplified form is \longrightarrow yī "one" (1). Radical of the traditional form is \bigwedge mù "tree." Distinguish simplified \bigvee from simplified \bigwedge ge (87), simplified \oiint kāi (122), and \bigvee xiǎo (24).

专业 (專業) zhuānyè major (in college) [N]

●作业 (作業) zuòyè homework [N]

317 办 (辨) bàn do; handle, take care of

Radical of the simplified form is 力 li "strength" (478). Radical of the traditional form is 辛 **xīn** "arduous." In the traditional form, note the character 力 li "strength" (478) in between the two 辛. Distinguish simplified 力 from 力 **jiǔ** (10) and simplified 为 **wèi** (182).

.....

办 (辦) bàn do, handle, take care of [v] 办事 (辦事) bànshì take care of matters [vo] 怎么办?(怎麼辦?) Zěnme bàn? "What should be done?" [IE]

318 法 **fǎ/fá** way, method

Radical is 水 **shuǐ** "water" (333), which is written $\stackrel{>}{>}$ and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點水) **sāndiǎn shuǐ** "three drops of water" when it occurs at the left-hand side of a character. The other component is 去 **qù** (53). Distinguish 法 from 去.

法子 **fázi** way, method [N] (Note that 法 is here pronounced **fá**,

not **fă**.)

办法 (辦法) bànfǎ way of managing or handling something [N]

●想法 xiǎngfǎ way of thinking, idea, opinion [N]

●做法 zuòfǎ way of doing something [N]

法国 (法國) Făguo France [PW]

法国人 (法國人) Făguo rén French person [PH] 法文 Făwén written French [N]

New Words in ISC 12-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

还是(還是) háishi or [CJ] 好 -hăo so that something is good [RE] 生物 shēngwù biology [N] 天文 tiānwén astronomy [N] 文学(文學) wénxué literature [N] 比较文学(比較文學) bĭjiào wénxué comparative literature [РН] 样(樣) kind, variety [M]1 yàng(r)

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、你说得不对,我根本没有说过这样儿的话!
- 二、在中国,大一的学生就已经决定了要学什么专业。
- 三、我的表哥姓高,是一位天文专家,你可能听说过他。
- 四、你不可以拿我的东西,以后请你不要拿我这里的东西!
- 五、这个大学有生物和比较文学专业,但是没有天文。
- 六、对不起,我还得去办点儿事,先走了,明天见!
- 七、你没有钱买车票我也没有办法,因为我也没带钱。
- 八、我上个星期到加拿大去了,但是天气不好,根本没办法出门。
- 九、中国有很多"美国专家",美国也有很多"中国专家",但是有的问题专家也没法子解决。
- 十、王大海好高兴,他今天早上在他家外头的地上找到了一百块钱。

^{1.} In this volume, to simplify the presentation and save space, if a word can occur with an optional (r) suffix, this is indicated in the Pinyin column by (r) at the end of the word, but the (r) suffix is not indicated in the Chinese character column. This actually corresponds to Chinese writing practice, since the (r) suffix is seldom indicated in standard Chinese writing. For more information on the (r) suffix, see pp. 40–42 in Basic Spoken Chinese.

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-

加拿大人:多少钱?

中国人 : 五毛钱一根儿。

加拿大人: 买两根。

中国人 : 你要这样儿的还是要那样儿的?

加拿大人:一样一根吧。 中国人 :一共一块。 加拿大人:给您五块。

中国人 :找您四块。您拿好!

二、

男生:要学法文的话,去法国好还是去加拿大好?

女生: 我们的老师是法国人, 她说法国的法文听起来比较好听。

男生: 听说小何下个月要去法国。

女生: 小何最近太忙了, 我看他根本还没决定去还是不去。

三、

小文:小李、我有个大问题,真不知道怎么办。

小李: 你有什么问题?

小文: 这个月我们不是要决定专业了吗? 家里要我学生物专业, 可是我要学的是比较文学专业。

小李: 那, 你能不能学两个专业? 也学生物, 也学比较文学。这样你家里人高兴, 你也能学你喜欢的专业。

小文:对,这是一个好办法。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、刚刚走的那个人是我一个大学同学。他是一个比较文学专家。他刚刚来我家拿一点儿东西。因为他还有一点儿事得办,所以先走了。他可能明天还要再来我家找我。
- 二、我在高中的时候很喜欢生物,后来也喜欢天文。可是到了大学,我越来越喜欢文学,特别是法国文学。现在我的专业是法文,明年我要到法国或是加拿大去多学一点法文。我真的很喜欢法文,不过以后要找什么样儿的工作,我现在根本不知道。

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 Ξ 六 五 四 走對 天我 因你 但這 不你 你我 了在 為沒 是個 問有國 氣上 了不 要不 可的 要中 我有 ,起 沒大 拿可 能表 學國 題很有 不個 有學 的好 專多很 也錢 明, 我以 聽 甚 好星 話不 天有 地高 ,期 沒買 天我 這拿 說姓 麼大 對 _ 多 文生 带車 上興 也中一 見還 裡我 過高 專 根到 錢票 。物 找, 沒國美 本加 ! 得 的的 他 業 的 我 法專國 和 東東 到他 沒拿 去 根 我 了今 子 辨大 辨 西西 生 本 家專 位 一天 解二 法 點 1 就 沒 百早 決, T 兒 己 有 塊上 。但, 事 經 說 是美 。但 錢在 請 決 過 , 。他 有國 是 先 定 這

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

男 男 加 力口 加 女 女 生 生 生 生 或 或 或 或 大 大 大 大 國聽 比她我好要 人 不他小 人 人 還學 . : . 去根何 說 較說們 • 要你 好法的 是法 找 買 五 多 本最 小 去文 毛 小 兩 樣 還近 或 五 加 四 樣 根 錢 錢 沒太 的 的 下 師 塊 塊 塊 根 兒 5 決忙 個 的 吧 根 定了 月 您 好 兒 去, 去 的 還我 起 去 法 還 好 是看 法 或 是 !

小文:小李,我有個大問題, 小李:你有甚麼問題? 小李:你有甚麼問題? 小李:這個月我們不是要決 我學生物專業,可是 我學生物專業,可是 我學生物專業,可是 學比較文學。這樣你 學比較文學。這樣你 學比較文學。這樣你 學的是比較文學 專業?也學生物,也 學的人為與,你也能

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

三

Notes 注解

- A2. The adverb 就 here implies "as early as then" or "that early."
- A7. 你没有钱买车票我也没有办法 (你沒有錢買車票我也沒有辦法) "If you don't have money to buy a bus ticket, there's nothing I can do about it" or "There's nothing I can do about your not having money to buy a bus ticket."
- A9. 有的问题专家也没法子解决 (有的問題專家也沒法子解決) "Some problems even specialists have no way to solve." The 也 here implies "even."
- A10. 地上, composed of the noun 地 and the localizer上, means "on the ground."
- **B3.** 也学生物,也学比较文学 (也學生物,也學比較文學) "Study both biology and comparative literature." 也,…也 is a pattern meaning "both...and."

Purchasing Pens



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

319 **xiăng** think; want

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). This radical is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzìdǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Phonetic is 相 **xiāng** "mutually" (459).

想 xiǎng think [v]; want to, would like to [Av]

想想看 xiángxiang kàn try and think

●想要 xiǎngyào want to, would like to [AV]

320 种(種) zhǒng seed; kind

Radical is 禾 hé "growing grain." Phonetic of the simplified form is 中 zhōng "middle" (23). Phonetic of the traditional form is 重 zhòng "heavy" (462). The "heavy" 重 end of the "growing grain" 禾 is laden with "seeds" (種). Distinguish simplified 种 from simplified 钟 zhōng "clock" (119) and distinguish traditional 種 from traditional 動 dòng "move" (250).

种 (種)	zhŏng	kind [M]
这种 (這種)	zhèizhŏng	this kind
那种 (那種)	nèizhŏng	that kind

哪种 (哪種)	něizhŏng	which kind?
一种 (一種)	yìzhŏng	a kind of

321 书(書) shū book

Radical of the simplified form is 「gǔn, called 一竖 (一豎) yíshù "vertical line." Radical of the traditional form is 日 yuē "speak." The rest of the traditional form consists of 聿 yù, an archaic word for "pen." A "book" (書) is the product of a "pen" 聿 that "speaks" 日. Distinguish simplified 书 from 中 zhōng (23), simplified 为 wèi (182), and simplified 东 dōng (29).

书 (書)	shū	book [N]
一本书 (一本書)	yìběn shū	one book
书店(書店)	shūdiàn	bookstore [PW]
书房(書房)	shūfáng	study [PW]
看书 (看書)	kànshū	read a book [vo]

322 xiē some

Radical is \square èr "two" (2). The other component is $\not\sqsubseteq$ cǐ "this," or "here" (605). If there are "two" \square of some item "here" $\not\sqsubseteq$, then it can be said that there are "some" $\not\sqsubseteq$. Distinguish $\not\sqsubseteq$ from $\not\sqsubseteq$ bǐ (143) and $\not\sqsubseteq$ běi (16).

些	xiē	some [M]
有些人	yŏu xiē rén	(there are) some people (who)
这些 (這些)	zhèixiē	these
那些	nèixiē	those
哪些	nĕixiē	which ones?
一些	yìxiē	some

323 报(報) bào newspaper

Radical of the simplified form is 手 shǒu "hand" (305), which at the left side of a character is written as ‡ and is referred to colloquially as 提手 tíshǒu "raised hand." Radical of the traditional form is ± tǔ "earth."

报 (報)	bào	newspaper [N]
报上 (報上)	bàoshang	in the newspaper
看报 (看報)	kànbào	read a newspaper [vo]

324 纸(紙) **zhǐ** paper

Radical is 丝 (絲) **sī** "silk." When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 绞丝旁 (絞絲旁) **jiǎosīpáng** "side made up of twisted silk" and is written as 纟(糹). Phonetic is 氏 **shì** "family name." Distinguish 纸 (紙) from 级 (級) **jí** (174).

纸 (紙)	zhĭ	paper [N]
一张纸 (一張紙)	yìzhāng zhĭ	a piece of paper
报纸 (報紙)	bàozhĭ	newspaper [N]

New Words in ISC 12-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

běn(r) (measure for books, dictionaries) [M]

本子 běnzi notebook [N]

shì city, municipality [BF]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、你想买什么样的钟?这种还是那种?
- 二、我天天早上第一件事就是看报, 你呢?
- 三、这些东西是谁的?请你快一点从地上拿走。
- 四、那张纸上是不是有我的名字?
- 五、我想加个油, 你说哪种汽油比较好?
- 六、我记得那家书店的左手边好像有一个家具店。
- 七、我在报上看到,你们有一些家具想卖,是不是?
- 八、《百家姓》是一本书的名字,这本书里头都是中国人的姓。
- 九、这种本子好像有两百张纸,那种好像只有一百五十张。
- 十、王大海去书店买了书和报纸, 所以现在没有钱买饭了。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

老外:我想买书和报纸。

卖东西的:对不起,我们这儿不卖这些东西,您可以到对面的书店去买。

老外:好,谢谢您。

卖东西的: 不谢。

-

房国书: 你在想什么呢?

李国林: 我正在想我上个星期看过的一本书。

房国书: 你还记得那本书叫什么名字吗?

李国林: 我想想看……书好像叫……对不起, 我忘了!

三、

李明:今天的报纸你拿到了吗?

林文子:没有。你呢?

李明 : 我也没拿到。是不是今天没有报纸呢?

林文子: 不可能的!天天都有报纸,今天怎么会没有呢?

四、

边小姐: 你去过和平街上的书店吗?

万先生:还没有时间去。你呢?

边小姐: 我已经去过几次了。我觉得那家书店还不错。 万先生: 我很想去看看。那儿都卖一些什么样儿的东西?

边小姐:书、报、本子、纸都有,价钱也不贵。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我因为小的时候没有朋友,所以特别喜欢看书跟报纸。我最喜欢去的地方就是书店。我去一回书店,就一定会买几本书,所以我的书房里书特别多!那个时候,我已经决定长大以后要在书店里工作。我觉得我一定会很喜欢这种工作的。
- 二、我早上看了报纸,报上说今天台北市又要下雨。没错,真的下了很大的雨。我现在很想到书店去给女儿买些本子,但是外面还在下雨。我 只好坐在这儿看看书、写写东西。现在已经四点半了,我看今天大概

出不去了。最近天天都下雨,这种天气根

本没办法出门!

三、我们学校一共有两个书店,一个在东门,一个在西门。这两个书店一个比较大,里边卖的东西很多,可是离我家很远;还有一个比较小,里边卖的东西比较少,可是离我家很近。上个星期日我去这个小书店买一本书,书名是《为什么中国人会这样,外国人会那样?》,作者是王定和先生。可是小书店没有我要的这本书,所以我只好明天到大书店去找找看。



Store Sign in Harbin

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 四 三 有我 較我 從這 那你 \wedge 那 本百 想在 一記 好想 地些 以大 好種 張 種想 像本 賣報 個得 ? 加 紙 上東 買 現海 你天 裡姓 家那 只子 個 上 拿西 呢早 什 上 在去 , 走是 有好 頭 是看 具家 油 是 麼 沒書 E 不 一像 都是 不到 店書 , 誰 樣 你 是 百有 是一 是, 店 的 的 的 說 有 5 五兩 中本 ? 你 鐘 買 5 左 哪 我 請 飯書 十百 或 手 種 的 這 你 張張 了和 人 的 就 邊 汽 名 快 。紙 的 種 報 此 字 是 好 油 還 姓 紙 比 像 點 看 是

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

林 林 李 房 李 房 賣 老 東 文 明 文 明 或 或 或 或 東 外 子 子 林 書 林 書 西 西 : : 的 : 的 沒我 沒 我 字你 的我 你 : 嗎還 天可 有也 的這對 有 天 IE 在 不 好 我 想 報沒 怎能 對 書些不 想 想 0 的 謝 記 在 想 麼的 不 店東 紙 甚 謝 買 你 報 拿 想 耙 起看 去西 會 謝 書 呢 紙 麼 到 我 那 沒天 買 你 呢 您 和 上 有天 我 您 報 個 呢都 到 紙 星 3 了 好 甚 期 到兒 嗎 報 像 對不 麼 看 紙 PH 名 過 面賣

邊小姐:你去過和平街上 邊小姐:我已經去過幾次 一方。我覺得那家 書店還不錯。 一方。我覺得那家 一方。我覺得那家 一些什 一麼樣兒的東西。 一些什 一麼樣兒的東西。 一些什 一個:書、報、本子、 一個:書、報、本子、



Sign in Singapore

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

四

表表表表表。 書特別多!那個時候沒有朋友,所以特 書特別多!那個時候沒有朋友,所以我 一定會買幾本書,所以我已經決定 表大以後要在書店。我去一回書店, 一定會買幾本書,所以我已經決定 是於此後要在書店裡工作的。 明在已經四點半了,我看今天大 明在已經四點半了,我看今天台 出不去了。最近天天都下雨,這種 是離我家很遠;還有一個出校,,可是離我家很遠 實一本書,書名是《為什麼中國人 會這樣,外國人會那樣?》,作者 是正定和先生。可是小書店沒有 是正定和先生。可是小書店沒有 要的這本書,所以我只好明天到大 書店去找找看。



"Xiǎoxīn Pèng Tóu" (Be Careful About Hitting Your Head; sign in Harbin)

Notes 注解

- A3. 请你快一点从地上拿走 (請你快一點從地上拿走) lit. "Please you more quickly take them away from the ground" or, in idiomatic English, "Please pick them up off the ground as fast as you can." The resultative verb compound 拿走 means "take away."
- A5. 加个油 (加個油) lit. "add a gasoline" is a more relaxed and casual way to say 加油 "add gas," "fill up," or "tank up." If you're talking about having a meal, instead of saying 吃饭 (吃飯) you could also say 吃个饭 (吃個飯), with essentially the same meaning.
- A7a. Note that in English one says "in the newspaper," but in Chinese one says 报上 (報上) lit. "on the newspaper."
- A7b. 你们有一些家具想卖 (你們有一些家具想賣) "You have some furniture that you want to sell."
- A8. ●《百家姓》 Bǎi Jiā Xìng The Book of One Hundred Family Names [N]. This book, which would more accurately be translated as "Surnames of the General Population," is a well-known Classical Chinese text composed during the Song Dynasty. It lists all the Chinese surnames that existed at the time, most of which are still in use today. The work is a long poem in lines of eight characters with a rhyme at the end of each line. Children used to have to memorize this poem as part of their basic education. The brackets 《》 are called 书名号 (書名號) and indicate book and article titles (BWC 7-2: E1).
- **B2.** 你在想什么呢?(你在想什麼呢?) "What are you thinking about?" Note the use of 在 as an auxiliary verb to indicate progressive aspect (BSC 10-3: 2A). Similarly, in the next line, 我正在想我上个星期看过的一本书 (我正在想我上個星期看過的一本書) "I'm just thinking about a book that I read last week." The addition of the adverb 正 "just" strengthens the progressive sense (ISC 17-2: 7A).
- **B3a.** 拿到 is a resultative compound verb that means "get," so 你拿到了吗?(你拿到了嗎?) means "Did you get it?"
- B3b. 不可能的! is an exclamation meaning "Impossible!" The final 的 is optional; one could also say just 不可能!
- C2. 出不去 is a negative potential resultative compound meaning "can't go out."
- C3. ●书名 (書名) shūmíng "book title" [N]



"Yíngyè Zhōng" (lit. "in the midst of doing business"; sign in Taipei)

Shopping for Vegetables



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

325 才

cái not until, then and only then, just

Radical is yī "one" (1). The character is a common phonetic within other characters, e.g., in as in the cáiliào "material." Distinguish from fāng (158) and simplified wàn (142).

.....

才 cái not until, then and only then, just [A]

326 jīn catty (unit of weight, about 11/3 lbs.)

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. For example, it serves as a phonetic in \mathcal{L} jin "be close" (221). Distinguish \mathcal{L} from \mathcal{L} and simplified \mathcal{L} ting (215).

斤 jīn catty (unit of weight, about 1½ lbs.) [M]

半斤 **bànjīn** half a catty 公斤 **gōngjīn** kilogram [M]

327 cài vegetable; dish of food

Radical is 艸 cǎo "grass," which is written as 草 when it occurs as an independent word (456). When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, the "grass" radical is written as $^{++}$, and is then known as 草字头 (草字頭) cǎozìtóu "top made up of the character 草." The phonetic within 菜 is 釆 cǎi "gather." As a mnemonic, remember this: "gather" 釆 "grass" $^{++}$ and end up with "vegetables" 菜.

菜	cài	vegetable; dish of food [N]
中国菜(中國菜)	Zhōngguo cài	Chinese food
生菜	shēngcài	lettuce [N]
菜场 (菜場)	càichăng	food market, greenmarket, marketplace [N]
●菜市场 (菜市場)	càishìchăng	food market, greenmarket, marketplace [N]

328 bái white

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic, e.g., it is used in \exists **băi** "hundred" (113). Distinguish \boxminus from \exists and \exists **rì** (132).

白	Bái	Ваі [ѕи]
白	bái	be white [sv]
白菜	bálcài	cabbage [N]
白天	báitiān	during the day, daytime [TW]
●白人	Báirén	White (person), Caucasian [ท]
●长白山 (長白山)	Chángbái Shān	Changbai Mountains (on the border between China
		and North Korea) [PW]

329 K bǎo protect; guarantee

330 证(證) zhèng evidence; prove

Radical is 讠(言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic of the simplified form is 正 zhèng "just" (276). Phonetic of the traditional form is 登 dēng "ascend." The idea is to "climb" 登 to a high place and "speak" 言 to give "evidence" 证 (證). Distinguish simplified 证 from 正.

保证 (保證) bǎozhèng guarantee [v/N]

New Words in ISC 12-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

进口(進口) jìnkŏu import [V/N] 出口 chūkŏu export [V/N] 多谢(多謝) duō xiè "thanks" [IE] 怎么这么… zĕnme zhème... how come so ...? [PT] (怎麼這麼…) 怎么那么… zĕnme nàme... how come so ... ? [PT] (怎麼那麼…)

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我同屋保证这次一定会早到,但是他最后还是很晚才到。
- 二、我今天白天在外面特别忙,晚上只想在家里看报,不想再出门了。
- 三、我们在机场等了快两个钟头,小白才到。
- 四、从前中国人不太喜欢吃生菜,可是最近几年他们好像越来越喜欢吃了
- 五、到了加拿大我才知道这个比中国还大的地方人口比北京还少。
- 六、这本书写得特别好, 我保证你会喜欢!
- 七、这种车子是从外国进口的, 又好看又好开。
- 八、日本往外国出口很多汽车, 从外国进口很多吃的东西,
- 九、有些美国人觉得美国汽车没有从外国进口的汽车那么好。
- 十、王大海到菜场给他的动物买了十公斤的白菜, 但是动物不吃。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

张太太: 白菜怎么卖?

卖菜的: 白菜……半斤二十五块。

张太太: 半斤二十五块? 怎么这么贵?

卖菜的:太太,这种白菜是从日本进口的,今天才到的。比台湾的好,

保证好吃。

张太太:好,给我一斤好了。这是五十块。

卖菜的:好,多谢。你拿好!再来!

二、

李安: 小白, 你怎么这么晚才来?

白喜: 我都忘了今天我是要来找你的。

李安: 下次你得记得, 别再忘了!

白喜: 放心吧。我下次一定很早就来。

李安: 好吧, 你可不能忘了你今天说的话。

白喜: 没有问题, 我可以保证!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我跟你讲,我以前是什么菜都吃,只有白菜不吃。后来因为听朋友说从日本进口的白菜特别好吃,所以就决定买一些吃吃看。今天早上我就买了差不多三斤。很贵,但是真好吃!我先生也喜欢,他问我:"这种白菜特别好吃,你在哪里买的?"朋友,你也去买一点儿从日本进口的白菜吧。我保证你一定会喜欢吃!

二、我们家住在湖北省老河口市。离我们家不远有两个菜市场。一个



"Zhuānmén Diàn" (Specialty Store; sign in Taipei)

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 五 三 七 六 四 小我 還中到 再晚我 但我 從日 又這 你這 越可從 喜是前 從些 外本 會本 沙 白們 出上今是同 好種 國了 歡最中 喜書 才在 門只天 國往 看車 還加 他屋 進外 吃近國 又子 到機 了 歡寫 最保 國 國 大拿 想 白 斤到 了幾人 。場 在天 好 後證 進人 口 ! 得 的菜 或 的大 年不 很 開 家在 口覺 還這 白場 特 地我 出 從 他太 的得 是次 菜給 方才 裡外 别 口 吃 汽美 快 很一 他 人知 好 很 面 的 晚定 車 兩 好 但的 或 報特 口道 個 像 是動 比這 我 西汽 别 口 到早 鐘 動物 車 越 保 北個 車 的 忙 頭 0 到 京比 物買 想 沒 證

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

李 白 白 白 賣 張 張 賣 張 喜 安 安 安 菜 太 太 菜 太 菜 : 的 太 的 太 的 太 沒 天好 就放 下 你我 小 • 是好 比本太 半 說吧 來心 次 的都 來好 白 有 白 白 五, 台進太 的, 問 呷 你 菜 忘 你 十給 灣口 題 話你 得 多 怎 了 怎 的的這 塊 我 記 我 謝 可 麼 我 五 下 種 不 天 0 這 可 塊 斤 能 次 我 你 别 麼 以 忘 好 是 晚 再 保 了 了 定 要 好 忘 才 五 好到 證 你 來 來 ! 0 了 ! 早 找 今 ! 再

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

、我跟你講,我以前是甚麼菜都吃,我跟你講,我以前是甚麼菜都吃,我跟你講,我以前是甚麼菜都吃,我跟你講,我以前是甚麼菜都吃,我跟你講,我以前是甚麼菜都吃,也沒有一些吃吃看。今天中上我就買了差不多三斤。很貴,一個是真好吃!我先生也喜歡,他問我:「這種白菜特別好吃,你也去買了差不多都是在地菜中,你也去買你一定會喜歡吃! 根證你一定會喜歡吃! 好們家住在湖北省老河口市。 我們家住在湖北省老河口市。 我們家在達有兩個菜市場。一個在路的左手邊,叫「四號路菜市場」。 「四號路菜市場」會 的差不多都是本地菜,比進口的 ,又 一點兒從日本進口的白菜吧。我 我們家在透有兩個菜市場。一個 在路的左手邊,叫「四號路菜市場」 要是我們家的人去買菜的話,我 要是我們家的人去買菜的話,我 不會去「四號路菜市場」。

Notes 注解

- A5a. 这个比中国还大的地方人口比北京还少(這個比中國還大的地方人口比北京還少) "This place that is even bigger than China has a population even smaller than Beijing." This is a topic-comment structure. A literal translation would be "This compared to China even bigger place, population compared to Beijing even fewer."
- A7. ●从…进口 (從…進口) cóng... jìnkǒu "import from" [PT]
- A8. ●往…出口 wǎng...chūkǒu "export to" [PT]
- **B2a.** 我都忘了今天我是要来找你的(我都忘了今天我是要來找你的)"I completely forgot that I was going to come looking for you today." The 都 here functions as an intensifier.
- **B2b.** 你可不能忘了 "You really can't forget." The adverb 可 here is also an intensifier and could be translated as "really" or "indeed."
- C1. 我以前是什么菜都吃 (我以前是甚麼菜都吃) lit. "I used to be a situation of eating any vegetable" or, in idiomatic English, "It used to be that I would eat any vegetable."

At a Fruit Stand



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

331 之 (総) zŏng collect; unite; sum up; always

Radical of the simplified form is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). This radical when occurring at the bottom of a character, as here, is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzidǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Radical of the traditional form is 丝 (絲) **sī** "silk." When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 绞丝旁 (絞絲旁) **jiǎosīpáng** "side made up of twisted silk" and is written as 纟(糹). Phonetic of the traditional character is 悤 **cōng**. One can "collect" various things and "unite" (總) them with a strand of "silk" (絲). Distinguish simplified 总 from 只 **zhǐ** (238).

总共 (總共) zǒnggòng altogether, in all [A]

332 🗓 bāo wrap

Radical is 勺 bāo. The whole character is itself a common phonetic, e.g., in 饱 (飽) bǎo "full, satiated," 抱bào "embrace," and 跑 pǎo "run" (484). Distinguish 包 from 呢 ne (54).

包 Bāo Bao [sN]
包 bāo wrap [v]
包起来 (包起來) bāoqilai wrap up [RC]
公事包 gōngshìbāo briefcase, attaché case [N]

333 % shuĭ water

This character is itself a radical. At the left-hand side of a character, it is written ? and is then referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點水) sāndiǎn shuǐ "three drops of water." Distinguish 水 from 小 xiǎo (24) and 家 jiā (191).

水	shuĭ	water [N]
冷水	lěng shuĭ	cold water
热水 (熱水)	rè shuĭ	hot water
●香水	xiāngshuĭ(r)	perfume (lit. "fragrant water") [N]
●□水	kŏushuĭ	saliva (lit. "mouth water") [ท]

334 R guŏ fruit

Radical is the pictograph 木 mù "tree." The other component is 田 tián "field." "Fruit" 果 often grows on "trees" 木 and in "fields" 田. The character 果 occurs as a phonetic in a number of other characters, e.g., in the character 裹 which is used in 包裹 bāoguǒ "package", and in the character 课 (課) kè "class" (428). Distinguish 果 from 早 zǎo "early" (259).

水果	shuĭguŏ	fruit [N]	

335 语(語) yǔ language

国语 (國語)	Guóyŭ	Mandarin (language) [ท]
日语 (日語)	Rìyŭ	Japanese (language) [N]
法语 (法語)	Făyŭ	French (language) [N]
越南语 (越南語)	Yuènányŭ	Vietnamese (language) [ท]
●美语 (美語)	Mĕiyŭ	American English [N]
外国语 (外國語)	wàiguoyŭ	foreign language [ท]
北京外国语大学	Běijīng Wàiguoyŭ Dàxué	Beijing Foreign Studies University [PW]
(北京外國語大學)		

336 **j** yán speech, word

This character is itself a radical. It frequently occurs at the left side of a character and is then referred to as 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character 言 is a picture of a 口 kǒu "mouth" (140) with "words" issuing forth above it. Distinguish 言 from traditional 這 zhè (96) and 高 gāo (62).

语言 (語言)	yŭyán	language [N]
语言学 (語言學)	yŭyánxué	linguistics [N]
方言	fāngyán	dialect [N]
北京语言大学	Běijīng Yŭyán Dàxué	Beijing Language & Culture University [PW]
(北京語言大學)		

New Words in ISC 12-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

A比B…得多	A bĭ Bde duō	A is/are much morethan B [PT]
点(點)	diăn	count, check [v]
来 (來)	lái	bring (e.g., a dish to the table) [v]
见 (見)	-jiàn	see, perceive [RE]
看见(看見)	kànjian	see [RC]
听见(聽見)	tīngjian	hear [RC]
听到(聽到)	tīngdào	hear [RC]
起来(起來)	-qĭlái	(general resultative ending) [RE]
有钱(有錢)	yŏuqián	be rich [sv]

🧿 Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我总共只去过中国两回, 你去过几回了?
- 二、他会讲国语、日语和越南语,不知道他会不会讲其他的语言?
- 三、手里拿着公事包的那位老师叫包美生, 是学语言学的。
- 四、李校长总共会说三种外国语:日语、法语跟美语。
- 五、我前天好像在菜场看见李老师在买水果。
- 六、为什么有钱的人越来越有钱, 没钱的人越来越没钱?
- 七、我大哥说因为很久没下雨,所以现在很多种水果跟菜都比以前贵得多。
- 八、北京语言大学叫"北语",北京外国语大学叫"北外",现在清楚了吧?
- 九、老毛刚刚生气了,要是我是你的话,会离他远一点儿!
- 十、王大海很难过,他给他的女朋友买了从法国进口的香水,可是她不喜欢。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-

法国女生: 这种水果, 您给我来两斤吧。

卖水果的: 您要一块一斤的还是要一块五一斤的?

法国女生: 我要一块五的。

卖水果的:一块五的比一块的大得多!还要别的吗?

法国女生: 不要了, 就这些了吧。一共多少钱?

卖水果的: 总共是七块四。

法国女生:给您十块。请您给我包起来。

卖水果的:没问题。找您两块六,请您点一下儿。

法国女生:谢谢,再见! 卖水果的:您拿好。再见!

二、

老师:明天要听写,同学们都听到了吗?

学生:知道了!

Ξ.

张老师: 校长的话, 你听得见吗?

白老师:太远了,听不见。

四、

小何: 今天我们家没有热水, 只有冷水。

老班: 有冷水就不错了。我们家停水了, 根本没有水!

五、

哥哥: 我买的车比你的车好看得多!

弟弟: 可是我的车比你的车快得多!

哥哥: 我的车比你的车大得多!

弟弟:对,可是你的车比我的车贵得多!

哥哥:对,那是因为我的钱比你的钱多得多!



"Nán Xĭshŏujiān" (Male Restroom; sign in Harbin)

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我以后要是有钱,一定天天开进口的车子去公司上班,晚上吃进口的菜和进口的水果。我以后总共要七个房子,这样我可以一天住一个。星期六的房子得比其他的房子大得多,因为那一天我可能要请朋友来我家住。有钱多好!

二、中国的方言

中国总共有几百种方言,但是大方言只有七、八种。北京话、上海话、广东话、台湾话和湖南话都是这些大方言的一种。大方言还分成很多小方言,要是你学过语言学你就知道这些小方言也叫"次方言"。有几位西方的语言学专家说,其实中国的大方言就是语言,不是方言,因为要是你只会北京话,没学过其他方言的话,你根本不可能知道一个说那种方言的人在讲什么。不过因为中国是一个大国,不是好几个小国,所以中国人很少这么说,他们还是觉得说这都是"方言"比较好。

🤦 Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

1 不買王 話老 楚外北 得現我 錢為 買我 語李 美手 知他 喜了大 , 毛 了國京 多在大 的什 水前 、校 生裡 道會 。很哥 人麼 果天 法長 ,拿 歡從海 會剛 吧語語 他講 。好 語總 是著 會國 ? 大言 多說 越有 。 法很 離剛 國難 他生 像 跟共 學公 不語 種因 來錢 學大 水為 越的 在美會語事會、 過 進過 遠氣 叫學 口, 菜語說言包講日 中 果很 沒人 的他點, 場。三學的其語 跟久錢越 或 北一 香給 兒要 種 的那 他和 菜沒 看 兩 外北 水他 ! 是 都下 越 見 外 。位 的越 回 ,語 老語南 李 ,的 我 比雨 有 或 0 師言語 現, 可女 是 老 語 以, 錢 你 ? DY 是朋 在北 前所 師 : 去 你 清京 她友 貴以 在 不 的 沒 H 包 過

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

學 老 法 賣 法 法 法 賣 法 生 師 水 或 水 或 水 或 或 水 或 果 果 女 果 女 果 女 女 女 果 生 了明 知 的 生 的 的 生 的 生 生 的 道 嗎天 : : : : : : : : : 5 不 多 我 了 請沒 總 悠 斤這 要 您 謝 起給 ! 塊 您問 來您 共 共 要 要 塊要 拿 謝 吧種 ! 聽 多 是 好 點 了 還五 五 水 寫 , 題 再 小 要的 七 塊 塊 塊 果 錢 別比 見 五 再 下 塊 同 0 就 找 兒 的一 的 見 的 ! 四 您 學 請 您 這 嗎塊 ! 您 的 給 們 此 兩 ? 給 的 我 都 還 了 塊 是 來 聽 大 吧 六 得 包 要 到 兩

> 五 四 哥 哥 老 小 弟 哥 何 班 可 我 今 是 沒冷 買 天 有水 我

> > 水就

不

錯

了

我

們

家

停水

了

根

們

家

沒

有

熱

水

只

有

冷

哥 弟 弟 哥 哥 我 對 對 的 那 可 車 我 的 是 是 的 比 車 因 你 你 車 比 為 的 的 比 你 我 車 車 你 的 的 比 大 的 車 錢 得 我 車 好 比 多 的 快 看 你 車 得 得 的錢多得多 貴 多 多 ! !

特介 首次推拿原名 (Only First Time Custone) \$35/m \$15/5000 11 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/5000 0100 15/500 010

"Tèjià" (Special Price; sign in Singapore)

張老師:校長的話,你聽得見嗎?

三、

白

老

師

太

遠

了

聽

不

見

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

中國

的

方

好可他住共口口我 !能的一要的的以 要房個七菜車後請子。個和子要 朋大星房進去是 加友來我家住。 大得多,因為那 生期六的房子得 多子,這樣我可以 近口的水果。我以 公司上班,晚,

Notes 注解

- 手里拿着公事包的那位老师 (手裏拿著公事包的那位老師) "That teacher who is holding A3. a briefcase in his/her hand."
- 听写 (聽寫) means "take a dictation quiz" (cf. BWC p. 26, Classroom Expression 1). B2a.
- 同学们都听到了吗?(同學們都聽到了嗎?) "Did you all hear?" 同学 (同學) literally means B2b. "classmate," but when a teacher or school principal addresses students as 同学们 (同學們), he or she means "students". 同学 (同學) is one of a fairly small group of nouns referring to humans that can add an optional plural suffix 们 (們). Another common example is 朋友们 (朋友們) "friends."
- **B4**. • 停水 tíngshuǐ "stop the water; suffer a disruption of the water supply" [vo]
- 有钱多好!(有錢多好!) lit. "To have money how good it is!" or, in more idiomatic English, "How C1. wonderful it is to be rich!" The character 多 is used in exclamations to mean "How...!"
- 都是这些大方言的一种 (都是這些大方言的一種) "Are all a variety of these major dialects."
- ●次方言 cìfāngyán "subdialect" [N] C2b.
- C2c. 中国是一个大国不是好几个小国 (中國是一個大國不是好幾個小國) "China is one large country, not a whole bunch of little countries."
- C2d. In this passage, the discussion of Chinese languages and dialects—a fascinating but complex topic—has had to be greatly simplified so as to remain within the limitations of the vocabulary, grammar, and characters we have studied so far.

Shopping (II)

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Buying meat at a traditional market.
- 2. Buying groceries at a supermarket.
- 3. Purchasing shoes in a shoe store
- 4. Buying pants in a clothing store.
- 5. Inquiring whether you can exchange something.
- 6. Requesting a better price.
- 7. Expressing similarity and dissimilarity.
- 8. Emphasizing your main point while conceding minor points.
- 9. A well-known Chinese joke.



Buying Meat at a Traditional Market



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

337 type qiē cut, slice

The radical, on the right side, is 刀 dāo "knife." The phonetic, on the left side, is 七 qī "seven." Distinguish 切 from 地 dì (157) and 加 jiā (307).

338 内 ròu meat

This character is itself a common radical. It is a picture of two strips of "meat" 人人 hanging on a drying rack \square . As a radical, 肉 is usually written 月. For example, this character appears as a radical in 能 **néng** (186). Distinguish 肉 from simplified 从 **cóng** (211).

This character is itself a common radical. At the left side of a character it is written as \ddagger and is referred to colloquially as 牛字旁 niúzìpáng "side made up of the character \ddagger ." It appears as a radical in 物 wù (251) and in 特 tè (310). Distinguish 牛 from \mp gān (275), \ddagger bàn (117), \mp píng (241), and \ddagger nián (104).

牛	niú	ox, cow [N]
牛肉	niúròu	beef [N]
●牛油	niúyóu	butter [N]

340 极(極) jí utmost, very, extremely

Radical is the pictograph 木 **mù** "tree." This radical is referred to colloquially as 木字旁 **mùzìpáng** "side made up of the character 木." When 木 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Phonetic of the simplified form is \mathcal{D} jí "reach" or "come up to," while the phonetic of the traditional version is 煎 jí. "Trees" 木 can "reach" \mathcal{D} an "extreme" \mathcal{W} (極) height.

…极了(…極了)	-jíle	extremely [PT]
近极了(近極了)	jìnjíle	extremely close
好极了 (好極了)	hăojíle	"Great!" "Fantastic!" [IE]



This character is itself a very common radical meaning "eat," which is written as (食) when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. The colloquial name for this radical is 食字旁 **shízìpáng** "side made up of the character 食." The radical 食 often indicates food, e.g., 饭(飯) **fàn** (152). Distinguish 食 from traditional 會 **huì** (199).

342 PP přn goods, product

Radical is the pictograph \square kŏu "mouth" (140). The character \square is here written three times as \square , representing the idea of "a multitude of goods or products." Distinguish \square from \square .

食品 shípǐn food product, groceries [N] 食品店 shípǐn diàn grocery store [РН]

New Words in ISC 13-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

差不多(差不多)	chàbuduō	be about the same [РН]
面包(麵包)	miànbāo	bread [N]
面包店(麵包店)	miànbāo diàn	bakery [PH]
一点…也不	yìdiăn(r) yĕ bù	not at all, not the least bit [РТ]
(一點…也不)		

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、请放心,在上海的菜场买从美国进口的食品一点儿都不难。
- 二、这种进口的面包真是好吃极了, 比美国的白面包好吃得多。
- 三、今天温州出太阳了,但是又冷又干,报上说最高温度8度,最低温度3度。
- 四、那个人说机场离这儿近极了,但是他不是本地人,我觉得他可能讲错了。
- 五、小牛是我大学时候的同屋,我今天能有机会再见到他,真是高兴极了!
- 六、食品店的牛肉都是进口的, 贵极了, 还是到市场去买本地的牛肉吧。
- 七、有的中国人不吃牛肉,还有的人只吃菜根本不吃肉。
- 八、那家食品店早上几点开门,晚上几点关门?他们卖什么样的食品?
- 九、弟弟, 准备好了没有?你要记得, 切肉的时候一定得小心!
- 十、因为王大海喜欢动物, 所以他只吃菜, 一点儿肉也不吃。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

外国学生:请给我切十块钱的牛肉。那边儿的好一点儿,您给我切那

边儿的吧。

卖肉的 :其实都差不多。还要别的吗?

外国学生: 不要了, 就这些吧, 给您钱, 请问, 哪儿卖面包?

卖肉的 :面包店、食品店都卖。

外国学生: 远不远?

卖肉的 : 近极了, 一点儿也不远。就在这条路的路口儿。

外国学生:谢谢

二、

何美美:请问和平小学在哪里?

谢天行: 和平小学就在林家食品店的右边。

何美美: 那么, 林家食品店在哪儿呢?

谢天行: 你看见前面那条大街了吗? 就在那条大街的左手边, 近极了。

何美美: 我看到了, 谢谢你。

谢天行:不谢,不谢。

三、

王太太: 李太太, 您到哪儿去?

李太太: 我先生的两个朋友刚从南京来。我去菜场买点儿东西。

王太太: 我刚从市场回来, 今天那儿的牛肉真是好极了。

李太太: 是吗? 那我快去买几斤。

四、

李太太:请问,您这儿的牛肉多少钱一斤?

卖肉的: 三块八、保证肉好。

李太太: 好, 我要五斤……可是, 对不起, 我不要这块。您给我切那块,

好不好?

卖肉的: 这块看起来也不错, 其实哪块都差不多。

李太太:请您包起来,谢谢。 卖肉的:好。一共是十九块。

李太太: 这是二十块。

卖肉的: 找您一块, 您拿好。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、小李原来在一家食品店工作。可是,他后来又找到了别的工作。他现在这个工作是在一个市场里,天天都在那儿卖肉,忙极了。他早上很早就得去上班,晚上很晚才下班回家。他跟我们说,有的时候一天得切一千多斤的牛肉!
- 二、我小学三年级的时候,有一次切肉,不 小心切到了我小妹的手。从那之后,她 有一年没跟我讲话!现在我已经长大 了,切肉、切菜根本不会切到人。不过 我切肉、切菜的时候,我小妹还是离我 很远!



"Tèjiàpĭn" (Specially Priced Items; sign in Taipei)

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 セ 六 五 四 三 食上那 人有 可但那 只因 牛極食 高今小 最又今 比這 國請 興天牛 品幾家 只的 肉 了品 能是個 低乾天 美種 吃中 點食 吧 店 極能是 講他人 温,温 國進 切, 口心 , ,大 菜國 了有我 的口 肉準 關品 。還的 錯不說 度報州 的, 白的 了是機 一海 的備 門店 根人 是牛 ! 機大 S 上出 食在 麵麵 時好 ? 早 本不 會學 度說太 點喜 到肉 品上 包 兒歡 候了 他上 不吃 市都 再時 地離 陽 最 好真 們幾 吃牛 點的 肉動 一沒 場是 見候 人這 高 是 也物 定有 肉肉 兒菜 賣點 去進 到的 得好 不, 得? 什開 都場 買口 他同 度 吃 是 吃所 小你 麼門 ,屋 不買 還 本的 極 00 極 又 難從 以 心要 有 真, 得 樣, 地, 度 了 他 ! 記 的晚 他 美 的 的貴

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

謝 何 謝 何 何 外 謝 夕 賣 夕 天 美 天 美 天 美 或 肉 或 肉 或 肉 或 美 學 學 學 學 行 美 行 行 美 的 的 的 生 生 生 生 : : : : : : : : 其 我 極就你 那 在近 : : 不 右和 請 麵 這極 實 邊平 遠 請不 謝 看 了在看 麼 問 謝 包 條 不 店 問要 都 切邊給 到 那見 和 謝 了 小 那兒我 林 不 了 平 路 遠 了 差 學 條前 邊的切 哪 謝 的 食 不 小 就 大面 兒 多 學 品 謝 兒 點 在 街那 品 賣 D 店 0 的 在 謝 林 的條 還 店 麵 哪 兒 都 吧 你 點錢 家 也 在 要 包 裡 手街 食 不 哪 别 兒的 邊 品品 了 兒 遠 的 您 嗎 店 0 呢 肉 近 5 的 就

三 四 李 王 太 太肉 肉 太肉 太的 太 的 的 的 太 太 找 這好請塊這切不好 的我 牛剛 是 您 都塊 那起, 塊 斤問 嗎 差看塊,我八 ? 肉從 包 + 起 不起 塊 共 , 我要 那真市去的 您 多來 好不五 保 是來 這 我是場 菜兩您 您 。也 不要斤 快好回場個 證 兒 不 好這: 去極來買朋 九 謝 肉 的 ? 塊: 好 了, 點友 好 謝 錯 買 。今兒剛 。可 。 肉 天東從 您是 其 那西南 實 少 哪 兒

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我小妹還是離我很遠! 在我已經長大了,切肉、 在我已經長大了,切肉、 是就們說,有的時候一天 跟我們說,有的時候一天 跟我們說,有的時候一天 是我一年沒跟我講話!現 她有一年沒跟我講話!現 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了 一次切內,不小心切到了

Notes 注解

- A6. ●市场 (市場) shìchăng "market" or "marketplace" [PW]
- C2. 从那之后 (從那之後) lit. "from after that" or, in idiomatic English, "after that" or "since then"

In a Supermarket



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

343 ± tǔ earth

The character \pm is a pictograph, with the top horizontal line representing the surface of the earth and the bottom horizontal line representing the substratum. The vertical line represents the products that the earth produces. Notice that the top horizontal line of \pm is shorter than the bottom line. \pm is itself a common radical. The colloquial name for \pm when written at the side of a character as a radical is \pm ? **芳 tǔzìpáng** "side made up of the character \pm ." The radical \pm appears, for example, in \pm dì (157) and \pm chéng (195). Distinguish \pm from \pm shí (11), \pm gōng (154), \pm shàng (25), \pm wáng (6), and \pm shēng (22).

土司	tŭsī	white bread [N]
●土地	tŭdì	soil, earth, land, territory [N]

344 节(節) jié restrict, control; economize

Radical of the simplified form is 艸 cǎo "grass," which is written 草 when occurring as an independent word (456). When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, the "grass" radical is written as ++ and is then known as 草字头 (草字頭) cǎozìtóu "top made up of the character 草." Radical of the traditional form is 竹 zhú "bamboo," the colloquial name for which is 竹字头 (竹字頭) zhúzìtóu "top made up of the character 竹." When it is a radical, the third and sixth strokes of 竹 are shortened. Phonetic of the simplified character is 卩 jié "seal," the phonetic of the traditional character being 即 ji "precisely."

节省 (節省) jiéshěng save [v]; be frugal, thrifty [sv]

345 rù ent

This character is itself a radical. It is a pictograph of a root "entering" \bigwedge the ground. Distinguish \bigwedge from \bigwedge bā (9), \bigwedge rén (30), and simplified \bigwedge ge (87).

入口	rùkŏu	entrance [PW]
●进入(進入)	jìnrù	enter, come in [v

346 **±** zhǔ master, host, lord; main

Radical is \wedge diǎn "point." \pm is itself a common phonetic, e.g., in \pm zhù (138). Originally, this character was a picture of a lamp with a flame rising over it. In ancient China, the keeper of such a lamp was the "master" of the family. Distinguish \pm from \pm wáng (6), \pm shēng (22), \pm zhù (138), and \pm wǎng (218).

●主张 (主張)	zhŭzhāng	advocate, be in favor of [v]	
----------	----------	------------------------------	--

347 🕏 yì meaning, intention

Radical is 心 xīn "heart" (262). When at the bottom of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字底 xīnzìdǐ "bottom made up of the character 心." The "sound" 音 yīn (436) in one's "heart" 心 is one's "intention" 意. This character can serve as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in the traditional form of (億) yì "hundred million", and in the traditional form of (憶), which is used in (回憶) huíyì "recall."

主意	zhŭyì	idea, plan [n]	

348 Sī think

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). This radical is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzìdǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Although the top part of 思 now looks like 田 **tián** "field," it actually used to be a pictograph representing the word for "brain." Distinguish 思 from 四 **sì** (4).

意思	yìsi	meaning [N]
有意思	yŏu yìsi	be interesting [PH]
没意思(沒意思)	méi yìsi	be uninteresting [РН]
不好意思	bù hăo yìsi	be embarrassing, be embarrassed [РН]

New Words in ISC 13-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

比起来(比起來)	bíqilai	compare [RC]
A跟B比起来 (A跟B比起來)	A gēn B bíqilai	comparing A and B [PT]
出口	chūkŏu	exit [PW]
会…的(會…的)	huìde	be likely to, would, will [PT]
和	hàn (T)	with [cv]
和…一起	hànyìqĭ (T)	together with [PT]

慢慢来 (慢慢來) mànmàn lái "take your time" [IE] …什么的 (…什麼的) ...shénmede ...and so on [PT] 为了(爲了) wèile in order to, for [PT] xiàng resemble, be like [v] 一…此一… yī...bĭ yī... one...more...than the next [PT] 一年比一年贵 yìnián bĩ yìnián guì more expensive year by year (一年比一年貴)

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、中文难极了,可是我觉得学起来很有意思。
- 二、中文跟日文比起来, 你觉得哪种比较难学?
- 三、小姐, 你走错了, 这儿是出口, 入口在那边。
- 四、牛先生看起来像一头牛,可是高先生不高,白先生也不白。
- 五、我弟弟、妹妹都主张卖我们家的那块土地,可是我哥哥不想卖。
- 六、你节省一点儿,先别买汽车。你还年轻,慢慢来,以后还有机会买。
- 七、我们的中文老师好极了, 所以我们班上的同学, 中文一天比一天好。
- 八、不好意思, 我的中文不好, 请问, "禁止携犬进入"这六个字是什么意思?
- 九、他们家土地不少但是没钱,所以那次他们需要钱的时候,没有别的办法,只好卖了一些土地,这样才解决了问题。
- 十、有一天早上,王大海跟他的同屋说:"我有一个好主意,星期六早上我们都去动物园,你们觉得怎么样?"



"Niúròu Miàn" (Beef Noodles)

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

_,

台湾同学: 我要去食品店买点东西。你要不要和我一起去?

美国同学:好。我也正想买点水果、土司什么的。

台湾同学: 这样好了, 为了节省时间, 你买你的, 我买我的。我们五分钟

以后在出口见, 怎么样?

美国同学: 好主意。

台湾同学: 你觉得台湾的食品店跟美国的食品店比起来怎么样?

美国同学: 都差不多。大概比美国的小一点, 也不像在美国那么多。

台湾同学: 可能要慢慢来吧。我想以后会一年比一年多吧。

二、

小牛: 八点一刻了, 我们吃早饭吧!

小白: 好主意。你准备吃什么?

小牛: 我早饭喜欢吃土司。

小白: 你吃干土司?

小牛:不,土司加一点牛油就很好吃了。你呢?你准备吃什么?

小白: 我吃一点水果就行了。

三、

太太: 为了节省时间, 你进市场买你的牛肉、白菜什么的, 我开车去加油站加油, 我们差不多半个小时以后在市场的入口见, 怎么样?

先生: 好主意。市场看起来好像人很多, 所以你慢慢加你的油吧。如果

半个小时以后我还没出来的话, 你等我一会儿, 好吗?

太太:好,没问题。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、上大学真是没意思。我天天为了上学很早就得起来。我和我的同学都忙得要死,得准备第二天的中文听写,还有很多很多其他的作业, 根本没时间出去。大学跟高中比起来,我觉得还是高中有意思。
- 二、我有两个哥哥、一个弟弟。我长得比较像大哥,弟弟长得比较像二哥。大哥比我大四岁,可是看起来我的年纪比他大,所以有的人不太清楚谁是哥哥,谁是弟弟。你看得出来吗?

三、星期天我出去买报纸,在书店看见了我的老朋友张国林。他说正想去我家里找我呢。我们两个人好久没见了,我觉得他好像一年比一年老了。从书店出来,他就和我一起回家了。我太太看到我的老朋友来了,也很高兴。她一定要张国林在我们家吃中饭。为了买到最好的牛肉和白菜,她去了离我们家比较远的市场,然后给我们准备了很好吃的中饭。

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 四 Ξ 哥我 也牛 中 中 解時他 這不 文我 以你 小 樣主有 後節 哥弟 不先 姐 文文 決候們 六好 一們 了,家個意天的還省 不弟 白生 ,天 星早 問沒土 字思 比中 有一 想、 。看 極 你 日 期上 題有地 是, 一文機點 起走 文 了 賣妹 來 錯 比 , 。別不 甚我 天老 。妹 六, 會兒 了 可 起 早王 麼的好師 的少 買, 都 來是 上大 辦但 意中 。好 主 牛 我 法是 思文 這 , 我海 極 張 頭 别 ? 不 牛 兒 你 覺 ,沒 們跟 了 賣 買 覺 得 是 都他 只錢 好 我 汽 出 得 學 可 去的 好, , 所 車 哪 起 口 是 動同 賣所 請 以 0 種 來 高 物屋 問 我 的 了以 你 比很 入 園說 一那 們 還 較 有 口 生 些次 班 塊 年 禁 在難意 不 你一 土他 上 土 輕 止 學 那 高 們我 地們 的 地 邊 覺有 ,需 同 , , 慢 犬 得一 可 白 這要 進 慢 怎個 樣錢 先 麼好 才的 生

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小

牛

1

點

刻

了

我

們

吃

早

飯

吧

!

台

灣

同

學

•

可

能

要

慢

慢

來

吧

0

我

想

以

後

會

年

比

年

多

吧

,

:

台 灣 百 學 . : 你 覺 得 台 灣 的 食 品品 店 跟 美 或 的 食 品 店

美 或 同 學 好 主 意

美 或 同 學 都 差 不 多 0 大 概 比 美 或 的 小 點 也 不 比 像 起 在 來 美 怎 或 麼 那 樣 麼 多

白 我 好 早 主 飯 意 喜 0 歡 你 吃 準 土 備 吃 司 甚 麼

白 你 吃 乾 土 司 5

小 牛 不 , 土 司 加 點 牛 油 就 很 好 吃 了 0 你 呢 5 你 準 備 吃 甚 麼

小 白 我 吃 點 水 果 就 行 了

三

先 太 生 太 • 以好 我為 後主 們了 我意 差節 還。 不省 多時 沒市 出場 半間 來看 個, 的起 小你 話來 時進 好 以市 你像 後場 等人 在買 我很 市你 場的 多 的牛 兒所 入肉 '以 口 好你 見白 嗎慢 ,菜 怎什 慢 麼麼 加 樣的 你 的 我 油 開 吧 車 去 如 加 油 半 站

會

個

小

時

加

油

太 太 好 , 沒 問 題

美

或

百

學

:

好

我

也

正

想

買

點

水 東

果

1

土

司

什

麼

的

台

灣

同

出這

口樣

見好

麼為

樣了

節

省

時

間

你

買

你

的

,

我

買

我

的

我

們

五

分

鐘

以

後

在

了

,

怎

台 灣 百 學 :

我

要 去

食

品品

店

買

點

西

0

你

要

不

要

和

我

起

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

準家的我也我出好兩說看星 誰所可較長我 得去多二的了上

Notes 注解

A8a. ◆ 禁止 jìnzhǐ "forbid," "prohibit," or "ban" [v]¹

◆ 犬 quăn "canine, dog" [вг]. 犬, to be differentiated carefully from the character \pm , is a formal, written-style Chinese word for colloquial 狗 gŏu "dog". The street sign 禁止携犬进入 (禁止攜 犬進入) Jìnzhǐ xié quǎn jìnrù means lit. "Forbid bring dogs enter", or in more idiomatic English, "It is not permitted to enter if you are bringing a dog." Many Chinese street signs begin with the word 禁 止. Like most street signs, this sign is in 书面语 (書面語), or formal, written-style Chinese (BWC 4-2: note A1). The verb 携 (攜) xié is a more formal, written-style equivalent of 带 (帶)(93). In fact, these two syllables can be used together to create the word 携带 (攜帶), which still means "carry" or "bring."



(cf. Note A8b. to left)

^{1.} Here and in the rest of this volume, the symbol ♦ indicates a vocabulary item written with one or more characters that you have not previously learned. You need to be able to read the item in order to understand the exercise in which it occurs, but the item is for optional, supplemental learning and is not expected to be mastered at this time (unless your instructor indicates otherwise). If the item should reoccur in later lessons, it will be annotated again.

Purchasing New Shoes



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

349 双(雙) shuāng pair

Radical of the simplified form is X yòu (210). The simplified form X represents the idea of "pair" with two X. Radical of the traditional form is E zhuī "short-tailed bird." The explanation of the traditional form is that two "birds" E held in one "hand" X make a "pair" E. Note that X is an ancient form of X shou (305). Distinguish simplified X from X.

双 (雙)	shuāng	pair [M]
一双 (一雙)	yìshuāng	a pair
●双号 (雙號)	shuānghào	even number [N] (cf. 388 for "odd number")
●双人房 (雙人房)	shuāngrénfáng	double room (as in a hotel) [N]

350 鞋 xié shoe

鞋	xié	shoe [N]
一双鞋 (一雙鞋)	yìshuāng xié	a pair of shoes
雨鞋	yŭxié	rain shoes [N]

高跟鞋	gāogēnxié	high-heel shoes [N]
鞋店	xiédiàn	shoe store [PH]
鞋厂(鞋廠)	xiéchăng	shoe factory [РН]

351 黑

hēi black

This character is itself a radical. Distinguish 黑 from 星 xīng (125) and traditional 點 diǎn (115).

黑 hēi be black [sv]
●黑人 Hēirén Black (person) [N]

352 É sè color

This character is itself a radical. Distinguish 色 from 包 bāo (332), 爸 bà (365), and 吧 ba (89).

黑色 hēisè the color black [N] 白色 báisè the color white [N]

353 穿 chuān wea

Radical is \mathcal{T} xué "hole," or "cave." The other component is \mathcal{F} yá "tooth."

穿 **chuān** put on, wear (shoes, clothes) [v]

354 🗜 suàn reckon, calculate

Radical is 竹 **zhú** "bamboo." The colloquial name for this radical is 竹字头 (竹字頭) **zhúzìtóu** "top made up of the character 竹." When it is a radical, the third and sixth strokes of 竹 are shortened. The 算盘 (算盤) **suànpán** "abacus," which is in China often used for "calculating" 算, is frequently made of "bamboo" 竹.

算 suàn reckon, calculate [v]

●算钱 (算錢) suànqián calculate money, figure a price [vo]

New Words in ISC 13-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

A是A, 但是… A shi A, dànshi... A is A alright, but... [PT] 不知道… bù zhīdào... I wonder whether... [A+V] dàxiăo size [N] gēn heel [N] shàngshì come on the market [vo] wánquán completely [A] 一样(一樣) yíyàng one kind; the same [NU+M] A跟B一样 A gēn B yíyàng A is the same as B; A and B are the same [PT] (A跟B一樣)

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、你看, 我的票跟你的票不一样; 我的是黑色的, 你的是白色的。
- 二、这双白色的鞋太小了, 我能不能换一双大一号的?
- 三、那双黑鞋是从法国进口的, 所以价钱才这么贵。
- 四、那家鞋厂一个月出口五万双雨鞋到美国去。
- 五、你看!你这双手看起来跟你哥哥的完全一样。
- 六、穿高跟鞋走路不好走,我得找一双别的鞋。
- 七、白菜刚上市,一斤五十块。不贵,买一点儿吧!
- 八、我们决定买二十斤白菜,请您算一算一共多少钱。
- 九、中文跟日文原来是两种完全不一样的语言。
- 十、你们大概已经知道, 王大海这个人跟你、跟我都很不一样。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国太太: 我需要一双黑色的高跟鞋。

卖鞋的 : 你穿几号的?

美国太太: 我在美国穿七号的。不知道美国的七号跟台湾的七号一样

不一样?

卖鞋的 : 不一样。这双大小怎么样?

美国太太:好像太小了。有没有大一号的?

卖鞋的 :这双大一号, 你穿穿看。

美国太太: 这双刚好。这双卖多少钱?

卖鞋的:一千八

美国太太: 好看是好看, 但是一千八太贵了。少算一点, 好不好?

卖鞋的 :刚上市的,没有办法。

美国太太: 那我再看看。

卖鞋的 :好的。

=,

万老师: 何山明, 听说你下星期要去张家口, 是吗?

何山明:对,我要到那儿去看我的表哥。

万老师: 什么时候回来?

何山明: 我星期四或者星期五就回来了。

万老师: 张家口是个很有意思的地方。你表哥住在张家口市还是张家口县?

何山明:他住在万全县,离张家口市很近。

万老师: 你去那儿一定要多穿一点儿, 听说现在冷得要死!

何山明:好,那我一定多穿一点儿。谢谢老师!

万老师: 别忘了写你的作业!

何山明:请老师放心,我不会忘的。

三、

买鞋的:请问,你们有没有七号半的鞋?

卖鞋的:七号半?我找找看。对不起,七号半的刚卖完。

买鞋的:问题不大,我也能穿八号的。有八号的吧?

卖鞋的: 你等一下, 我看看。对不起, 八号的也卖完了。九、十、十一、十二号的也都卖完了。

买鞋的: 你们这是什么样儿的鞋店?你们根本没有鞋!

卖鞋的: 我们最近雨鞋和高跟鞋特别多。你多买几双, 我可以少算你一点。 怎么样, 你要几双?

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我跟姐姐住在一起。明天我要开始在一家进出口公司上班了。在台北,上班的小姐差不多都穿高跟鞋,可是我只有一双高跟鞋,姐姐也只有一双高跟鞋,怎么办呢?我穿八号的鞋子,姐姐跟我一样也穿八号的鞋子。所以为了节省一点钱,我们一个人买黑色的高跟鞋,一个人买白色的高跟鞋。她可以穿我的鞋,我也可以穿她的鞋。这样问题就解决了,我们好像多了好几双鞋一样!
- 二、"您好!我是万国语言中心的白老师。您可以在我们中心学中文、日文、越南文和法文,白天或者晚上都可以。我们也有老师可以到您家去。我们中心的电话是65158263。万国语言中心在北京市新街口东街小学的对面,不难找,很多公车都到,所以交通根本不是问题。您有时间,可以先来看看。您先拿一张我们中心的名片吧。以后您有时间一定来看看!"

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 四 三 1 鞋那 以那 買 白 一穿 哥你 能這 菜 雙 的看 樣文 高 到家 價雙 換雙 的看 完 點剛 別跟 美鞋 的跟 算決 ! 錢 里 是, 兒上 的鞋 全你 你概 語日 國廠 才 鞋 定 吧市 買 鞋 走 這 去一 是 文 E 樣雙 麼 的票 原 路 個 從 號 ,跟 月 法 太 不 都 你你 的 看 好 或 五 的的 很 兩 白 走 起 口 進 來 種 五 口 大 我 的 請 全 你 。海 您 這 不 找 雨 所

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美 美 美 美 鞋 或 鞋 或 鞋 或 鞋 或 鞋 或 鞋 或 太 太 太 太 的 的 太 的 太 的 的 的 太 太 太 太 太 太 : : : : 那 剛 少 這 看這 大好 麼不 樣台不我 好 你 ?灣知在 一像 我 上 錢 雙 雙 樣 的 穿 號太 市 再 大 的道美 剛 的 的 看 小 七美 或 不 , 號國 了 這 雙 0 沒 好 一的七 黑 0 有 色 你 有 樣七 辦 不號 沒 小 的 法 多 算是 高 有 怎

萬 何 萬 何 萬 何 萬 何 萬 老 老 老 老 山 山 山 山 老 明 師 明 師 明 師 師 明 師 : : : : : : : : : 別 好 你 他 張 我 什 對 何 忘 去 住 家 星 , 麼 山 了 那 在 那 口 期 時 我 明 是 我 兒 萬 四 候 要 , 或 你 全 個 回 到 聽 定 定 的 縣 很 者 來 那 說 多 要 有 星 兒 你 , 多 穿 業 意 期 去 離 下 思 穿 ! 張 五 看 星 _ 點 家 的 就 我期 _ 兒 點 口 地 回 的 要 兒 市 方 來 表 去 0 謝 , 很 0 了 哥 張 謝 聽 近 你 O 家

0

!

表

哥

住

在

張

家

口

市

還

是

張

家

口 縣 口

是

買 何 賣 買 鞋 鞋 鞋 山 的 的 的 明 : : : : 問 七 請 請 題 號 老 問 半 師 不 , 5 你 大 放寫 我 們 i 我 找 有 , 也 找 我作 沒 能 看 有 不 七 穿 會 0 對 號 忘 1 號 不 半 的 的 起 的 0 0 , 鞋 有 七 說 1 號 老 半 現 號 師 在 的 的 ! 吧 冷 剛 ? 得 賣 完 要 死

買 賣 賣 鞋 鞋 鞋 的 的 的 : • 你我 你都你 要們 賣等 們 完一 幾最 這 雙近 是 了下 ? 雨 什 我 鞋 麼 和 樣 看 高 兒 看 的 跟 0 鞋 對 鞋 店 不 特 5 起 别 多 你 , 0 們 1 根 號 你 本 多 的 買 沒 也 賣 幾 有 完 鞋 雙 了 ! , 0 我 九 可 以 + 少 算 + 你 點 + 0 二 怎 號

麼

樣

的

也

三

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

片吧。以後您有時間一定來看看!」 片吧。以後您有時間一定來看看!」 本看看。您先拿一張我們中心的名 心在北京市新街口東街小學的對面, 心在北京市新街口東街小學的對面, 心在北京市新街口東街小學的對面, 不難找,很多公車都到,所以交通 來看看。您先拿一張我們中心的 。这可以在我們中心學中文、日文、越 您可以在我們中心學中文、日文、越

我們好像多了好幾雙鞋一樣! 可以穿她的鞋。這樣問題就解決了的高跟鞋。她可以穿我的鞋,我他 一家進出口公司上雖?我穿八號的鞋 我只有一雙高跟鞋,怎麼辦呢?我穿八號的 我只有一雙高跟鞋,個人買白色 不多,姐姐跟我一樣也穿八號的鞋 是高跟鞋,怎麼辦呢?我穿八號的 我只有一雙高跟鞋,姐姐也只有一 班的小姐差不多都穿高跟鞋,可是 我跟姐姐住在一起。明天我要開始在

Notes 注解

- A3. 所以价钱才这么贵 (所以價錢才這麼貴) "that's why the price is so expensive." The adverb 才 here emphasizes the reason why the black shoes are so expensive.
- A6. 不好走 lit. "not easy to walk" or "hard to walk (in)." The stative verb 好 here means "easy to."
- B3. 问题不大 (問題不大) lit. "Problem is not big" is the equivalent of English "No problem." Another way to express this, of course, would be 没问题 (沒問題).
- C1. 我们好像多了好几双鞋一样 (我們好像多了好幾雙鞋一樣) "It's as though we have quite a few more pairs of shoes." 多 here functions not as a stative verb, as it normally does, but as a regular verb meaning "become many; increase."



A License Plate
(the character !!! here stands for the province Heilongjiang)

Buying Pants



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

355 应(應) yīng should

Radical of the simplified form is 广 yǎn "eaves." This radical is referred to colloquially as 广字头 (廣字頭) guǎngzìtóu "top made up of the character 广." Radical of the traditional form is 心 xīn "heart." This radical, when at the bottom of a character, is referred to colloquially as 心字底 xīnzìdǐ "bottom made up of the character 心." The feeling of obligation that one "should" (應) do something comes from the "heart" 心. Distinguish simplified 应 from simplified chǎng (197) and simplified 广 guǎng (270).

356 该(該) gāi should, ought

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic is 亥 hài, which is the last of the twelve earthly branches. Distinguish 该 (該) from 刻 kè (116).

该(該)	gāi	should, ought [AV]
应该(應該)	yīnggāi	should [AV]
●该你了(該你了)	gāi nĭ le	"it's your turn" [IE]

357 $\hat{\mathcal{K}}$ yī

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. When at the side of a character as a radical, it is written $\vec{\lambda}$. As a phonetic, it occurs in $\vec{\kappa}$ yī "rely on." Distinguish $\vec{\kappa}$ from $\vec{\delta}$ biǎo (193).

衣	Υī	Yi [sn]
毛衣	máoyī	sweater [N]
大衣	dàyī	overcoat [N]
雨衣	yŭyī	raincoat [N]

Radical is 月 yuè "moon" (130). The colloquial name for this radical is 月字旁 yuèzìpáng "side made up of the character 月." Distinguish 服 from 报 (報) bào (323).

衣服	yīfu	clothes [N]	

359 rú if; be like, equa

Radical is 女 nu "woman" (101). This radical is referred to colloquially as 女字旁 nuzipáng "side made up of the character 女." Note that when 女 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Phonetic is □ kǒu "mouth" (140). The traditional explanation of this character is to speak with one's "mouth" □ "like" 如 a "woman" 女. Distinguish 如 from 加 jiā (307) and 始 shǐ (208).

如果	rúguŏ	if [A]
如果…的话 (如果…的話)	rúguŏde huà	if [PT]

360 内(內) nèl inside, within

Radical is \square jiōng "space." The simplified character has a \bigwedge rén "person" (30) "inside" \bowtie the "space" \square , while the traditional character has the character \bigwedge rù "enter" (345) "inside" \bowtie the "space" \square . Distinguish \bowtie (\bowtie) from \bowtie yīn (181) and \bowtie ròu (338).

…以内 (…以内)	yĭnèi	within [PT]
…之内 (…之內)	zhīnèi	within [PT]
三天之内(三天之内)	sāntiān zhīnèi	within three days
内衣 (內衣)	nèiyī	underwear [N]

New Words in ISC 13-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

本来(本來)	bĕnlái	originally [MA]
表 (錶)	biăo	watch (for telling time) [N]
手表 (手錶)	shŏubiăo	wristwatch [N]
刚好(剛好)	gānghǎo	it just happens that [ма]

guòlai	come over [RC]
-guòlai	(indicates movement from there to here) [RE]
guòqu	go over, pass by [RC]
-guòqu	(indicates movement from here to there) [RE]
nálai	bring over [RC]
náqu	take over [RC]
náguoqu	take over [RC]
xiànjīn	cash [N]
xiăo nánshēng	little boy [PH]
xiăo nüshēng	little girl [РН]
	-guòlai guòqu -guòqu nálai náqu náguoqu xiànjīn

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、如果下雨的话,应该穿雨衣跟雨鞋。
- 二、下一站就是动物园儿了, 您该准备下车了!
- 三、那个女的好像在叫我, 你看我应该不应该过去?
- 四、我下星期六刚好有时间, 到你家去应该没有问题。
- 五、地上本来没有路,走的人多了,也就有了路了。
- 六、这双鞋, 您如果不喜欢的话, 只要是五天之内都可以拿来换。
- 七、小何,这些牛肉和白菜你拿过去给对面的王老太太,好不好?
- 八、今天是老高的生日, 朋友准备送他大衣、毛衣、内衣什么的。
- 九、我知道我应该节省一点, 所以我决定从明年起不买贵的衣服了。
- 十、王大海因为没有钱买手表, 所以到哪儿去都带着一个小钟。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国太太: 小姐, 你们有没有小朋友穿的毛衣?

卖衣服的: 有, 请过来看看。小朋友几岁了?

美国太太: 六岁多, 快七岁了。

卖衣服的: 穿九号应该没有问题。看看这件。

美国太太:看起来不错,但是不知道会不会太大或太小?

卖衣服的: 你放心。如果有问题的话, 七天以内可以拿来换。

美国太太:这件多少钱?

卖衣服的:这种毛衣本来是一千二一件,这个星期刚好半价,只要六

百块。

美国太太:好,那我就买这件吧。我给你现金,这是一千块。

卖衣服的: 好的, 请等一下。……找您四百块。谢谢, 下次再来!

-,

小张: 你知道现在外头差不多多少度吗?

老万: 好像今天最高温度二十五度, 最低温度二十度。

小张: 你看我出去要不要穿大衣?

老万:如果我是你的话,不会穿大衣,可是一定会穿一件毛衣。

小张:好,那我就穿毛衣吧。

三、

美国人:房应国老先生死了,你觉得我应不应该到房家去看看房太太?

中国人: 我觉得你应该去。

美国人: 听说在中国, 人死了要穿白色的衣服, 是真的吗?

中国人:对,有时候是这样子,可是也不一定。你是外国人,你穿黑衣

服、黑鞋就可以了。

四、

年家平:李老师,不好意思,今天的作业我忘了。

李老师: 你忘了? 那你什么时候能给我呢?

年家平: 我两天之内一定给老师, 真对不起。

李老师:两天之内?不行!你最晚明天早上八点给我,要不然太晚了。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、广州在中国的南方。以前有不少朋友跟我讲过,那个地方热得要死, 所以去年一月我去那儿看我表哥的时候,我想天气一定很热吧。但是 我错了,刚好我去的那个星期广州的天气冷极了,还天天下大雨。我 应该带的很多衣服,像大衣、毛衣、雨衣、雨鞋什么的,都没有带。所 以我在那儿的那几天就觉得很冷。我保证下次如果还去广州的话,一 定会多带一点儿衣服,特别是一月去的话。 二、很久没看到白老师的儿子了。三年前他跟白老师一起来学校的时候还很小。今天看到他,好像不是以前的那个小男孩儿了。三年时间他就长这么大了!我想他应该上学了,可是白老师说他明年才可以上学。他长得那么高,看起来好像有六、七岁的样子,其实他还不到五岁。

D. SUPPLEMENT: A CHINESE JOKE

Read the following Chinese joke, which makes repeated use of the verb is that is introduced in this lesson.

以前有一个姓王的,人人都叫他老王。老王特别不会说话。有一天,他请了四个朋友到家里来吃饭,可是只来了三个人。他说:"该来的没来!"第一个人听到了,对老王说:"你说该来的没来,你的意思是不该来的来了!"第一个人很不高兴,走了。老王说:"不该走的走了!"第二个人说:"不该走的走了,你的意思是我该走!"所以他也走了。第三个人对老王说:"以后说话小心一点。"老王说:"我又没说他们!"第三个人老王说:"你没说他们,那你说的就是我了!"第三个人生气了,也走了。最后老王的朋友都走了,所以他只好一个人吃饭。

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 五 哪王 定我 大今 對小 是這 就地 應我 不那 下下 兒大 從知 衣天 面何 五雙 有上 該下 應個 車一 果 去海 明道 、是 的, 天鞋 了本 沒星 該女 了站 年我 毛老 王這 之, 路來 有期 都因 ! 就 雨 是的 帶為 起應 衣高 老些 內您 了沒 問六 去好 ?像 著沒 不該 、的 太牛 都如 。有 題剛 動話 買節 內生 太肉 可果 一有 物 在 應 個錢 貴省 衣日 ,和 以不 有 遠 該 的一什,好白拿喜 小買 兒 鐘手衣點麼朋不菜來歡 了 雨 。 錶 服 , 的友 好你 换的 人 你 了所。準?拿 衣 。話 您 到 看 跟 。以 所 備 過 你 我 該 雨 我 送 去 只 以 應 鞋 給 到 決 他 該

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

老

萬

好

像

今

天

最

高

溫

度

+

五

度

,

最

低

溫

度

十

度

小

張

:

你

知

道

現

在

外

頭

差

不

多

多

少

度

嗎

小

張

你

我

出

去

要

不

要

穿

大

衣

?

老

萬

如

果 看

我

是

你

的

話

,

不

會

穿

大

衣

可

是

定

會

穿

件

毛

衣

小

張

好

那

我

就

穿

毛

衣

吧

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 美 美 或 或 或 或 衣 衣 衣 服 太 服 太 太 服 太 太 的 太 的 太 的 太 : : : : : 這 你 看 穿 六 有 小 件 九 歲 放 起 姐 多 來 號 多 請 N. , 少 應 0 不 , 過 你 錢 如 錯 快 來 們 該 果 沒 七 看 有 有 但 有 歲 看 沒 問 了 有

> > 0

看

賣 衣 服 的 半這 價種 ,毛 只衣 要本 六來 百 是 塊 問 是 千 不 題 題 的 知 道 話 看 會 , 七 不 這 件 這 天 會 太 個 以 星 內 大

期

剛

好

可

以 拿

來

或

太

小

美 賣 或 衣 太 服 的 太 : 好 好 的 那 我 請 等 就 買 下 這 件 吧 0 找 我 您 給 四 你 百 現 塊 金 謝 這 謝 是 千 次 塊 再

换

小

朋

友

幾

歲

了

小

朋

友

穿

的

毛 衣

"Mother Zhang's Beef Noodles" (restaurant in Taipei)

四 三 美 中 美 老 國 或 或 或 師 師 人 人 人 對我 我你 晚天雨 作李 穿也對 色聽 我 太我房 業老 了早天 不兩 呢忘 的說 覺 太應應 ? 7 。上之 起天 我師 ? 不國 衣一有 衣在 忘, 八內 。之 服定時 服中 你 應老 了不 點? ` 。 候 那 ,或 應 該先 內 是, 黑你是 給不 你 。好 該 到生 鞋是這 真人 我行 房死 什 意 定 就外樣 的死 家了 , ! 給 麼 嗎了 可國子 時 去, 要你 老 ? 要 以人, 不最 今 師 候 看你 了,可 然晚 能 看覺 。你是 太明 給 房得 真

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

D. SUPPLEMENT: A CHINESE JOKE

Read the following Chinese joke, which makes repeated use of the verb 該 that is introduced in this lesson.

個人吃飯。

個人吃飯。

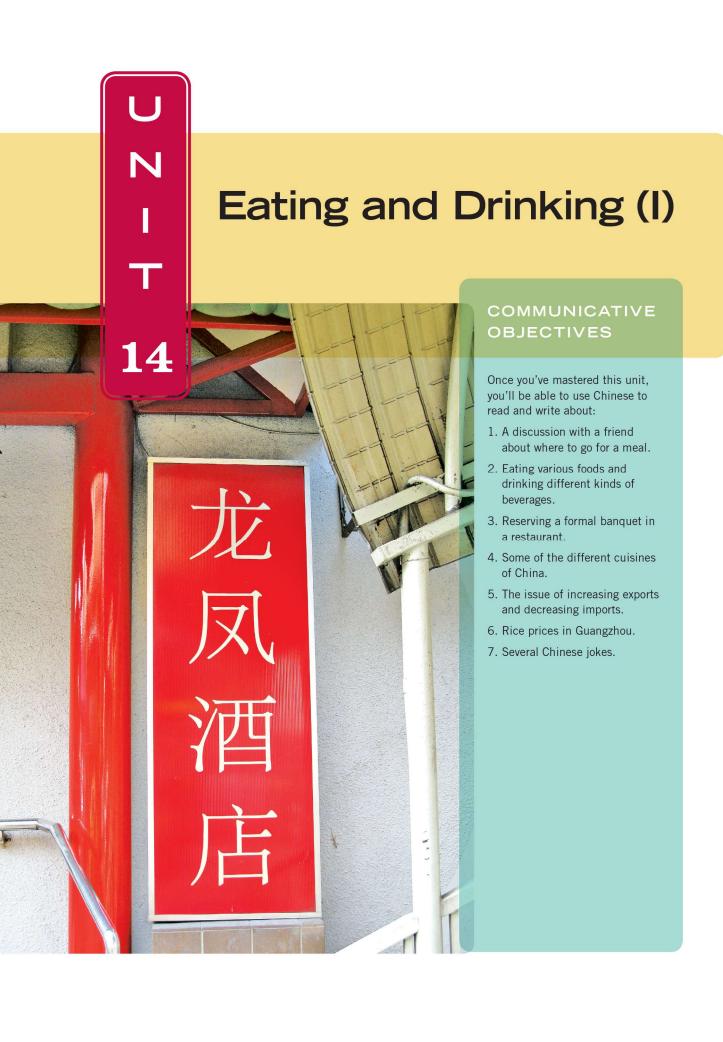
個人吃飯。有一天,他請了四個朋友到家裡來吃飯,可是只來,你的意思是不該來的沒了。一個人對老王說:「你說該來的沒了,個人對老王說:「你說該來的沒不。我說:「你沒說他們是不該來的。 一個人對老王說:「你說該來的沒不。我說:「你沒說他們!」第三個人說:「該來的沒別。」老王說:「以後說:「不該來的沒不意是了。我們們,那你說:「孩來的來來,你的意思是不該來的來來,你的意思是不該來的沒了。我們們!」第三個人說:「你沒說他們,那你說就不會說。

Notes 注解

- A3. 好像在叫我 "It seems she's calling me."
- B3. 人死了要穿白色的衣服 "When a person dies, you should wear white clothing."
- C2. 三年时间他就长这么大了!(三年時間他就長這麼大了!) "In three years' time he has grown to be so big!" or "In the space of three years he's gotten so big!" Be sure to pronounce 长 (長) here as **zhǎng** "grow."
- D1. 只来了三个人 (只來了三個人) lit. "There only came three people." In Chinese, indefinite subjects sometimes follow rather than precede the verb (ISC 19-3: 2).
- D2. 该来的没来(該來的沒來)lit. "(The) one who should have come didn't come."
- D3. 不该来的来了(不該來的來了) lit. "(The) one who shouldn't have come did come."
- D4. 我又没说他们!(我又沒說他們!) "I wasn't talking about them at all!" The verb 说 (說) here means "talk about" and the adverb 又 makes the negative 没说 (沒說) even more emphatic.



(bottom four characters are shougong shuijiao "hand-made dumplings")



Ordering a Meal in a Restaurant



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

361 随 () suí follow

Radical is 阜 **fù** "mound," which is written ${\mathbb F}$ when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as 左耳旁 **zuŏ'ĕrpáng** "side made up of a left ear." Phonetic of the traditional form is **{\tilde{g}} suí**.

随 (隨) Suí [SN]

362 使 biàn convenient

Radical is \bigwedge **rén** "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is \bigwedge \supsetneq **rénzipáng** "side made up of the character \bigwedge ." The other constituent of this character is \bigvee **gēng** "to change." The idea is that "people" \bigwedge "change" \bigvee matters so as to make them more "convenient" \bigvee for themselves.

随便 (隨便)	suíbiàn	"as you wish" [IE]; be casual, informal [sv]
便鞋	biànxié	slipper [N]
●大便	dàblàn	defecate (lit. "big convenience") [V]; feces [N]
◉小便	xiăobiàn	urinate (lit "small convenience") (V1: urine (N1

363 用 yé

yòng use; need to

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. For example, it occurs as a phonetic in the simplified character 拥, which is used in the word 拥挤 (擁擠) yōngjǐ "be crowded." Distinguish 用 from 同 tóng (80), 再 zài (299), and simplified 两 liǎng (99).

用	yòng	use [v]; using; with [cv]

用完 yòngwán finish using 不用 bú yòng don't need to

不用谢 (不用謝) bú yòng xiè "you don't need to thank me" [IE] 不用找了 bú yòng zhǎole "you don't need to give change" [IE]

公用 gōngyòng public [AT]

公用电话 (公用電話) gōngyòng diànhuà public telephone [PH]

364 够(夠) gòu

Radical is 9 xī "evening." Phonetic is 句 jù "sentence" (389). One "sentence" 句 in two "evenings" 99 is "enough" 够 (夠). Notice that the left and right components are reversed in the simplified 够 from the traditional 夠.

够 (夠)	gòu	be enough [sv]
-------	-----	----------------

enough

365 📂 bà dad, daddy

Radical is \bigcirc **fù** "father" (501). Phonetic is \boxminus **bā** "long for," which you saw previously in \boxminus **ba** (89). Distinguish $\stackrel{\textstyle \succeq}{\cong}$ from $\stackrel{\textstyle \leftarrow}{\cong}$ **sè** (352).

爸爸	bàba	dad, daddy [N]
●爸	bà	dad, daddy [N]

366 妈(媽) mā mom

Radical is 女 nǚ "woman" (101). This radical is referred to colloquially as 女字旁 nǚzìpáng "side made up of the character 女." When 女 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Phonetic is 马 (馬) mǎ "horse" (458). Distinguish 妈 (媽) from 吗 (嗎) ma (60).

妈妈 (媽媽)	māma	mom, mommy [N]
●妈 (媽)	mā	mom, mommy [N]

New Words in ISC 14-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

菜 cài dish of food [N] 点 (點) diǎn order [V] 点菜 (點菜) diǎncài order food [Vo]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、今天我们请你吃饭, 你就随便点吧。
- 二、那个东西怎么用?我不会。听说用起来不太好用。
- 三、你妈妈也在这家工厂工作,是吗?
- 四、我跟老林说他不用谢我,可是他不听,一定要谢。
- 五、你随便在哪儿等我都可以,要是能离车站近一点儿是最好。
- 六、他三岁的时候爸爸、妈妈都死了, 所以是在我们家长大的。
- 七、美国的菜市场不但卖吃的东西,也卖用的东西。
- 八、如果两双便鞋不够你们穿, 你要跟我讲, 我们家里还有几双。
- 九、我们一家五口点三个菜够吗?我们再多点几个菜吧!
- 十、真有意思, 王大海用右手写字, 但是用左手吃饭。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

中国人: 你看我们在哪儿吃?

美国人: 随便, 哪儿都行。

中国人:那家人少、我们就在那儿吃吧。……你想吃什么?

美国人:什么都可以。你点吧。中国人:好。那我就点菜好了。

-,

外国学生:公用电话您用完了吗?

本地人 : 我还没用完。

(过了一会儿)

外国学生: 您现在用完了吧? 本地人: 用完了。您可以用了。

外国学生:谢谢。 本地人:不用谢。 三、

张太太: 真谢谢您今天带我儿子去上学。我这几天真的是太忙了。

林太太: 不用谢, 应该的!您也带过我女儿去学校。

四、

女儿:爸爸,我上大学需要钱买书、买衣服什么的。

爸爸: 我上个月给了你一千块, 不够用吗? 你得节省一点!

五、

女儿: 妈妈, 我的男朋友不和我说话了!

妈妈: 你不用难过。你要是不给他打电话, 我保证他三天之内就会开

始想你了。

六、

妈妈: 儿子, 你晚上为什么睡不着觉? 儿子: 妈妈, 我在学校已经睡够了!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我爸爸、妈妈都是台湾人。我跟我哥哥是在台湾出生,在美国长大的,所以我们两个应该算是美国人吧。我跟哥哥都会讲国语,可是我们在一起的时候还是讲美国话的时间比较多。我爸爸的美国话不太好,所以我用国语跟爸爸讲话。我妈妈美国话讲得很好,有时候我用美国话跟妈妈讲话,但是她一定用国语跟我讲话。
- 二、在中国吃饭根本不成问题,哪儿都有吃饭的地方。如果你到大饭店,可以随便点菜,想吃什么就吃什么,像北京菜、广东菜、四川菜、上海菜差不多都有,保证好吃。你也可以到小吃店买一点小吃,又好吃又不贵,如果吃不完的话,还可以包起来带回家去吃。要不然你也可以到菜市场或食品店去买点儿水果拿回家去吃。在中国出去吃饭也不用带很多钱,带几十块现金就够了。
- 三、现在是晚上六点一刻。因为是下班时间,路上车子太多,所以交通特别不好。我转来转去,怎么也找不到停车的位子。我的朋友小李主张我们开到长安东路去找找看。到了那儿,第一个停车场已经停满了,可是还好,第二个停车场还有位子,所以我们就决定停在第二个停车场。我们停车的问题也就这样解决了。

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

Ξ 十 九 七 六 五 四 長都他 可我 東美 最要你 是你 有你如 好是隨 是跟 字有 嗎媽 們 幾要果 西國 大死三 說個 雙跟兩 的了歲 能便他老 ? 媽 用東 ,的 雙 也 起西 離在 不林 但思 。我 也菜 吧們 家 ,的 講便 車哪 來怎 賣市 在 是, 五 所時 請 說 再 鞋 這 不麼 用王 用場 站 以候 口 你 多 左大 不 的不 太用 是爸 近 吃 手海 工 定 東但 飯 幾個 廠 西賣 用我 吃用 我、 , 謝 們 工 飯右 個菜 裡 們媽 你 穿 作 0 。手 還 菜夠 的 家媽 就

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

外 夕 中 美 中 本 美 或 或 地 地 地 或 或 或 或 或 或 學 學 生 生 : 生 : 用 : 我 : 甚 吃那 不 好 隨 你 完 您 用 還 麼 吧家 謝 0 便 看 公 謝 謝 了 現 沒 用 都 那 我 在 我 可 小 哪 們 用 電 就 兒 您 用 話 以 在 , 完 您 你我 可 點 0 都 哪 想們 用 菜 你 行 兒 以 了 吃就 吃 用 吧 完 好 點 甚 了 ? 了 了 吧 在 嗎 0 麼 那 兒

三 六 五 四 媽 兒 女 林 張 子 兒 媽 媽 兒 太 太 太 : : : : 太 了媽 點不我 著兒 之他你 說媽 覺子 話媽 ! 媽 內打不 ! 夠上 帶不 是去真 ? , 就電用 了, 買 , 過用 太上謝 用個 衣我 ! 我 會話難 我謝 忙學謝 我 你 嗎月 服上 開,過 了。您 在 晚 始我。 兒應 大 學 上 我今 想保你 去該 校 朋 為 這天 已 友 幾帶 什 他是 不 天我 經 麼 三不 和 錢 睡 睡 真兒 夠 不 天給 我 買 也 的子

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

解在第兒李去上現 很水要果以菜吃地在 國時語較是該台我 决第二,主,車在 多果不吃到、甚方中 語候跟多我算灣爸 了二個第張怎子是 錢拿然不小上麼。國 跟我爸。們是出爸 。個停一我麼太晚 , 回你完吃海就如吃 我用爸我在美生、 停車個們也多上 帶家也的店菜吃果飯 講美講爸一國,媽 車場停開找, 六 幾去可話買差甚你根 話國話爸起人在媽 場還車到不所點 十吃以,一不麼到本 。話。的的吧美都 。有場長到以一塊。到還點多,大不 跟我美時。國是 我位已安停交刻 現在菜可小都像飯成 媽媽國候我長台 們子經東車通。 金中市以吃有北店問 媽媽話還跟大灣 停,停路的特因就國場包,,京,題 講美不是哥的人 話國太講哥,。,話好美都所我 車所滿去位別為 夠出或起又保菜可, 的以了找子不是 了去食來好證、以哪問我,找。好下。吃品帶吃好廣隨兒 但講,國會以跟

Notes 注解

- A2. 不太好用 "not very easy to use"
- **A5.** 要是能离机场近一点儿也好 (要是能離機場近一點兒也好) lit. "If it could be closer to the airport it would also be good" or "It would be great if it could be fairly close to the airport." The words 也好 describing one of several possible alternatives would seem to mean "is also good." However, in practice, they involve polite understatement and actually indicate the preferred alternative.
- A10. 用右手写字 (用右手寫字) lit. "Use right hand to write characters" or, in idiomatic English, "Write with his right hand." In Chinese, the coverb 用 is often used where in English we would use the preposition "with."
- **B3.** 应该的 (應該的) is a polite phrase, often said in response to "Thanks," that means "This is something that I ought to do." It is a little like "My pleasure" in English.
- B5. The verb 想 here means "miss" or "long for."
- B6a. ◆睡 shuì "sleep" [v]
- B6b. ◆睡不着 (睡不著) shuìbuzháo "can't fall asleep" [RC]
- C1. 我们两个应该算是美国人吧 (我們兩個應該算是美國人吧) "I suppose the two of us ought to be considered Americans."
- C2a. ●不成问题 (不成問題) bù chéng wèntí "not become a problem," "not present a problem," or "not be a problem" [IE]
- C2b. ●小吃店 xiǎochī diàn "snack shop" [PH]



"Jìnzhĭ Suídì Biànnì" (It is Prohibited to Urinate Everywhere; sign in Taipei park)

Ordering a Meal in a Restaurant (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.



shòu stand, endure, bear; receive

Radical is 又 yòu "again" (210). This character is itself a phonetic, e.g., in the character 授 as it is used in the word 教授 jiàoshòu "professor." Distinguish 受 from 要 yào (137) and 票 piào (255).

受	shòu	stand, endure, bear; receive [v]
受不了	shòubuliăo	can't stand, can't endure (is here pronounced liǎo)

368 mi uncooked rice

is itself both a radical and a phonetic. It is a pictograph showing four grains of uncooked rice separated by the character + **shí** "ten" (11). # serves as a phonetic in various characters, e.g., in # (#) **mí** "riddle" and # **mí** "lead astray." Distinguish # from # **bàn** (117), # **niú** (339), # **píng** (241), and simplified # **lái** (135).

米	Mĭ	Mi [sn]
米	mĭ	uncooked rice [N]
米饭 (米飯)	mĭfàn	cooked rice [N]
米	mĭ	meter [M]
一米八二	yī mĭ bā èr	one meter and eighty-two (centimeters)

369 系 (係) xì relate to

The radical of the simplified form of this character is ${\underline{\not\!\! u}}$ (絲) **sī** "silk." For the traditional character, the radical is ${\underline{\not\!\! h}}$ **rén** "person," which is written ${\underline{\not\!\! l}}$ when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is ${\underline{\not\!\! l}}$ **rénzipáng** "side made up of the character ${\underline{\not\!\! h}}$."

关系 (關係)	guānxi	relationship, relevance [N]
中美关系 (中美關係)	Zhōngmĕi guānxi	U.SChina relations [PH]
没关系 (沒關係)	méi guānxi	"it doesn't matter" [IE]
系	xì	department [N] (Note that in the sense of "department," the simplified and traditional forms are both written \lessgtr .)
法文系	Făwén xì	Department of French
●转系 (轉系)	zhuănxì	transfer to another department [vo]

370 🤰 jí nervous, excited

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262), since the emotions are involved. This radical, when occurring at the bottom of a character, is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzìdǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Distinguish 急 from 怎 **zěn** (217) and 意 **yi** (347).

急	jí	be nervous, excited; be in a hurry [sv]
急事	jíshì	urgent matter [N]
着急	zháojí	worry, get excited [vo/sv]
别着急 (別着急)	bié zháojí	"don't get excited" [IE]

371 喝 hē drink

Radical is \square kǒu "mouth" (140), since one drinks with one's mouth. This radical is referred to colloquially as \square 字旁 kǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character \square ." Phonetic is 曷 hé "why."

喝	hē	drink [v]
喝水	hēshuĭ	drink water

372 / jiǔ liquor, wine, spirits

酒	jiŭ	liquor, wine, spirits [N]
喝酒	hējiŭ	drink an alcoholic beverage
●米酒	mĭjiŭ	rice wine [N]
●白酒	báijiŭ	clear liquor or spirits; white wine [N]

New Words in ISC 14-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

放	fàng	put, place [v]
两 (兩)	liăng	ounce [M]
了	-liăo	be able to [RE] (Note that the character 🤾 is here pronounced -liǎo;
		e.g., 受不了 shòubuliǎo "can't stand".)
满 (滿)	măn	reach a certain age or time limit [v]
上菜	shàngcài	bring food to the table [vo]
主食	zhŭshí	staple food [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、喝一点儿酒没关系,但是不能多喝。
- 二、你现在吃不完没有关系,等一会儿再吃吧。
- 三、她们是不是有什么急事?怎么这么早就要走了?
- 四、小牛, 你看起来比我高。我一米七八。你有多高?
- 五、喝酒以后不可以开车!你长这么大,怎么还不知道呢?
- 六、米饭是中国南方人的主食,没有米饭他们会吃得很不高兴。
- 七、我真受不了生物专业, 所以决定明年从生物系转到比较文学系。
- 八、不好意思,可是我还是想问你:金小姐跟李先生是什么关系?
- 九、在美国年满二十一岁才可以喝酒, 在中国年满十八岁就可以喝了。
- 十、王大海不喜欢喝酒,白酒、米酒什么的,他都不喝。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

王先生:小姐,这些菜,请你们少放点儿油,我这位美国朋友可能受不了。

何小姐: 没问题, 您放心好了。主食要什么?

王先生:我看……四两米饭好了。

何小姐:行。两位喝点儿什么?喝不喝酒?

王先生: 我们不喝酒。就这些了吧。我们有急事,请您快点儿上菜。

二、

小文:小李,你先吃了饭再走吧。

小李:不行,我有一些急事得现在去办。

小文: 那没关系, 你先去办你的事吧。

小李:好。再见,明天见!

小文: 再见, 慢走。

三、

金老师: 小车, 你喜欢你们学校的饭吗?

车大山: 我一点儿都不喜欢。我吃了快一年了, 已经受不了了。

金老师: 真的吗? 为什么这么不喜欢呢?

车大山: 我也不太清楚。可能吃来吃去都是差不多一样的, 所以就不喜

欢了。

金老师:那,你最想吃什么?

车大山: 我就想吃我妈妈做的菜。我们家里的米饭也特别香。

四

美国人: 怎么这么久菜还没上来?

中国人: 你别急, 可能今天饭店很忙吧。

美国人:那我们先点一点儿酒,好不好?你喜欢喝什么样儿的酒?

中国人: 随便, 什么样儿的酒都行。

美国人: 你看, 我们点的菜好像来了!

中国人: 太好了, 我看你都快等得受不了了!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我大哥很喜欢吃米饭。他早饭、中饭、晚饭都吃米饭,每次都吃好几两呢,要是有一天没吃米饭他就受不了。有时候,他不吃菜也不吃肉,只吃米饭!我二哥跟大哥很不一样,他不是特别喜欢吃米饭,可是很喜欢喝酒。没有米饭、没有菜跟肉都没关系,但是一定要有酒,要不然他就不高兴。有时候我想:这么不一样的两个人,怎么会都是我的哥哥呢?

- 二、美国进口的东西太多,出口的东西太少,这已经成了一个很大的问题。今年美国的国会有人主张美国应该多出口一些东西到外国去,我觉得这个想法很对。不过今天我在报上看到,国会也有人主张少从外国进口东西,或者一、两年之后可能根本不进口外国的东西,特别是从中国来的东西,这个想法我觉得是不对的,不是解决问题的好办法。
- 三、"你们好!我姓张,叫张子文。很高兴今天有机会跟你们说说话。 我们先来看看最近几个星期广州的米价是多少。你们都知道,不 同的米,价钱也不一样。那么,如果到米店去买米的话,最近白米 一公斤要十二块钱左右,黑米一公斤大概要十三块五,香米一公斤 差不多十四块钱。不过如果你到米厂去买就不会那么贵了,白米一 公斤只要十块钱,黑米只要十一块,香米只要十二块。我这样讲你们都清楚了吧?有没有人有什么问题?"

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 七 六 五 四 Ξ 他王 年在 李不 物我 會米 還喝 走她 有小 多牛 了們 都大 滿美 先好 系真 吃飯 不酒 現 不海 十國 得是 知以 高, 在 生意 轉受 ? 是 點 不吃兒 喝不八年是思到不 很中道後 ? 你 是不酒 。喜 歲滿 甚, 比了 不國 呢不 看 完 沒 有 就二 麼可 較生 高南 ? 可 起 甚沒關 可十 關是 文物 興方 以 有 麼 以一係我 學專 開 比 。人 酒 觸 ? 還 我 急 喝歲 系 業 的 車 係但 事 是 主 ! 高 了才 白 想 所 你 0 可 食 酒 等 怎 問 不 以 長 以 麼 決 喝 你 沒 這 米 會 這 : 定 有 麼 米 酒 酒 兒 麼早 明 金 米 大 七 什 再吃 年 在 1 飯 1 就 中 姐 從 他 怎 的 跟 生 們 麽 或 你

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

金

車

金

老

師

•

小

車

,

你

喜

歡

你

們

學

校

的

飯

嗎

5

年

了

已

經

了

了

歡

了

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

:

小

文

.

那

沒

歸

係

,

你

先

去

辨

你

的

事

吧

在

去

辨

小 文 : : 小 李 , , 你 有 先 吃 了

小 李 不 行 我 此 急 飯 事 再 得 走 現 吧

小 小 李 文 : 再 好 見 0 再 慢 見 走 , 明 天 見 !

老 大 師 4 : 真 我 的 點 嗎 5 兒 為 都 什 不 喜 麼 這 歡 麼 0 不 我 喜 吃 歡 了 呢 快

車 車 老 大 大 山 師 山 : 我 那 我 就 也 想 你 不 吃 最 太 我 想 清 媽 吃 楚 甚 媽 可 麼 做 能 的 吃 菜 來吃 我 去 們 都 家 是 裡 差 的 不 米 多 飯 也 樣 特 的 别 香 所 以 就 不 喜

王

先

生

:

我

們

不

喝

酒

0

就

這

些

了

吧

0

我

們

有

急

事

,

請

您

快

點

兒

上

菜

何 王 先 小 姐 生 . . 行 我 看 0 兩 位

姐 : 沒 問 題 , 您 放 is 好 了 0 主 食 要 甚 麼

王

先

生

何 小

四 兩 米 飯 好 了

: 小 姐 , 這 喝 此 菜 點 兒 , 甚 請 麼 你 5 們 喝 小 不 放 喝 點 酒 兒 油 我 這 位 美 或 朋 友

可

能

受

不

了

中 或 或 或 或 或 人 很你 來你 行隨 樣好那 。便 兒不我 受好 了看 忙別 不了 !, 的好們 , 了, 酒?先 什 ? 你點 麼 ! 看 點 樣 兒 你 的 喝兒 還 都 的 天 菜 沒 什 快 好 酒 上 像 店

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

·「你們好!我姓張,叫張子文。很高興今天本人有甚麼問題?」

是中年會得主經美 個然沒別只米吃我 解國之也這張成國 人他有喜吃飯米大 決來後有個美了進 ,就菜歡米他飯哥 問的可人想國一口 怎不跟吃飯就,很 題東能主法應個的 麼高肉米!受每喜 的西根張很該很東 會興都飯我不次歡 好,本少對多大西都。沒,二了都吃 辦這不從。出的太 是有關可哥。吃米 法個進外不口問多 我時係是跟有好飯 的哥哥呢我看我想 。 想口國過一題, 法外進今些。出 我國口天東今口 :一喝不他 覺的東我西年的 這定酒一不要 得東西在到美東 麼要。樣 艺是中 。沒有一樣,他了 不一樣, 不一樣, 是西,報外國西 不,或上國的太 對特者看去國少 有 将 有 形 不 吃 肉 , 要 板 、 、 段 的 。 。 的別一到,會, 不從兩國覺人已

Notes 注解

- A5. 你长这么大 (你長這麼大) lit. "You've grown so big" or, in idiomatic English, "You're all so grown up." Be sure you pronounce 长 (長) as **zhǎng** "grow."
- A6. 他们会吃得很不高兴 (他們會吃得很不高興) lit. "They'll eat in such a way that they're very unhappy" or, in idiomatic English, "They won't enjoy their meal at all."
- **B2.** 你先吃了饭再走吧 (你先吃了飯再走吧) "Why don't you eat first before leaving?"
- **B4.** 我看你都快等得受不了了!lit. "It seems to me that you already soon will have waited to a point where you can't stand it anymore!" or, in idiomatic English, "I think you've been waiting so long you can't take it anymore!" In this sentence, 都 means "already." Notice that the two 了 at the end of this sentence function—and are pronounced—differently (i.e., **shòubuliǎole**).
- C1a. 好几两 (好幾兩) "quite a few ounces"
- C1b. 这么不一样的两个人 (這麼不一樣的兩個人) "two people who are so different"
- C3a. 最近几个星期 (最近幾個星期) "the last several weeks"
- C3b. In this passage, a number of specialized terms related to rice appear. You should be able to figure out what they mean from the meanings of the constituent syllables. These terms include: 米价 (米價) "the price of rice," 米店 "rice shop," 白米 "white rice," 黑米 "black rice" or "brown rice," 香米 "fragrant rice," and 米厂 (米廠) "rice factory." The order of the constituent syllables (i.e., which comes first and which comes second) and the relationship between them is key to understanding the whole word. As in English, the order in all of these is modifier + modified, or adjective + noun.
- C3c. ●不同 bùtóng "be different" [sv]. 不同的米,价钱也不一样 (不同的米,價錢也不一樣) lit. "Different rice, price is also different". This means, "The price differs depending on the type of rice."



"Jiéyuē Yòng Shuĭ" (sign in Beijing)

Arranging a Banquet



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

373 桌 zhuō table

Radical is the pictograph 木 **mù** "tree," since tables are usually made of wood. Phonetic is 卓 **zhuó** "eminent." Distinguish 桌 from 早 **zǎo** (259).

桌	zhuō	table [BF]; (for banquets) [M]
分成三桌	fēnchéng sānzhuō	divide into three tables
桌子	zhuōzi	table [N]
一张桌子(一張桌子)	yìzhāng zhuōzi	a table

374 席 xí feast, banquet

Radical is 巾 jīn "towel." Distinguish 席 from 度 dù (269) and traditional 麼 me (128).

席	Xí	Xi [sn]
酒席	jiŭxí	banquet, feast [ท]
一桌酒席	yìzhuō jiǔxí	a banquet
主席	zhŭxí	chairperson [N]
毛主席	Máo Zhŭxí	Chairman Mao

375 参(參)

cān participate

Radical is 厶 sī "private." The whole character can serve as a phonetic, e.g., in 惨 (慘) căn "pitiful" or "cruel." The character 参 (參) can be explained as "three persons" 乡 "participating" in something together.

参加	(參)	$J\Pi)$
2 1311	(=)	JH/

cānjiā

take part in, participate, join [v]

376 丑

měi every, each

Radical is 母 mǔ "mother" (502). Distinguish 每 from 海 hǎi (26).

měi
měitiān

every day

every, each [SP]

每位. měiwèi each person (polite) mĕirén each person

每一个人(每一個人) měiyíge rén each person

yuán yuan, dollar; (surname, name of dynasty)

Radical is 儿 ér "child" (156). In speech 块 (塊) kuài is often used to refer to money in the place of 元, but in writing usually only $\overrightarrow{\pi}$ is used. $\overrightarrow{\pi}$ serves as a phonetic in numerous characters, e.g., in simplified **yuán** $\overrightarrow{\Xi}$ (252) and simplified yuǎn $\overline{\mathbb{M}}$ (220). Distinguish $\overline{\mathbb{M}}$ from simplified \mathbb{M} ér (156), $\overline{\mathbb{M}}$ liù (7), simplified 个 ge (87), 天 tiān (33), and 完 wán (296).

元	Yuán	Yuan (also Won, a Korean surname) [รง]
元	Yuán	Yuan Dynasty (1271-1368) [тw]
元	yuán	yuan, dollar (monetary unit) [M]
五十元	wŭshíyuán	50 yuan
多少元	duōshăo yuán	how many dollars?
美元	Mĕiyuán	U.S. dollar [N]

378 做

zuò do; make

Radical is \bigwedge rén "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 rénzìpáng "side made up of the character 人." The other component is 故 gù "reason" (519). A "person" 人 "does something" 做 for a "reason" 故. In older writings, the homonym 作 (184) was often used for 做, but now the two characters are usually distinguished.

做	zuò	do; make [v]
做饭(做飯)	zuòfàn	cook, make food [vo]
做衣服	zuò yīfu	make clothes [PH]
做买卖(做買賣)	zuò măimài	do business [PH]
●做事	zuòshì	do things, work [vo]
●做菜	zuòcài	cook, make food [vo]
●做准备 (做準備)	zuò zhŭnbèi	make preparations [РН]

New Words in ISC 14-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

打算	dăsuan	plan [AV/V]
定	dìng	reserve, book [v] (Some writers prefer writing this word with the character $\mathring{\dagger} \mathring{\exists} (\mathring{\exists})$). Both characters are considered correct; cf.
		note A7.)
定桌子	dìng zhuōzi	reserve a table
分	fēn	divide, separate [v]
分成	fēnchéng	divide into [v+pv]
高级 (高級)	gāojí	be high-class [sv]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、他爸爸过百岁生日,他办了十桌酒席,请了一百多个人,我们都去参加了。
- 二、你跟你爸爸是两个人,他做什么,你不一定就得做什么。
- 三、你如果以后想做那种买卖的话,应该早一点做准备。
- 四、那个房间好是好, 但是家具还不够, 需要加一张桌子。
- 五、这家饭店看起来很高级,可是我们穿的衣服太随便了,带的钱可能也 不够,我看我们还是去别家好了。
- 六、她以前在一家外国公司做事, 现在在家里做一点儿小买卖。
- 七、定一桌酒席八百元, 你定两桌我算你一千五, 你觉得怎么样?
- 八、我觉得男人也应该会做饭、做衣服什么的, 你说呢?
- 九、毛主席是1893年在湖南省出生的, 1976年在北京市死的。
- 十、王大海记得他定过一桌酒席, 只是他忘了是哪天, 在哪里。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国人: 我想定桌酒席。

中国人:什么时候?多少人?

美国人: 十二号, 星期六, 晚上六点。差不多有二十个人参加。

中国人: 我看分成两桌好, 您觉得怎么样?

美国人:行。

中国人: 您打算定多少钱的?有每人五十元的、七十五元的。高级一点

儿的话,也有每人一百元的、两百元的。

美国人:每人……七十五元的吧。

二、

张小姐: 你明天要不要去参加那个酒席?

席先生: 我明天太忙了, 可能不去了。你打算去吗?

张小姐: 我打算去。听说那个饭店特别高级!

席先生: 我也听说了, 不过我实在没办法, 只好下次再去了。

三、

包明生: 桌子上的水果是你带来的吗?

车一文:对,是我带来的,不过你可以吃。

包明生: 小李也可以吃一个吧?

车一文:没有问题!你们随便拿吧。

包明生:谢谢! 车一文:不用谢!

四、

老师: 哪个月有二十八天? 学生: 每个月都有二十八天!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、汽车公司的张主席下个星期日要请我们工厂里的工人去饭店参加一个酒席。听说那家饭店很高级,不过也很贵,一桌好像要一千多元。我表姐几个月以前去过那家饭店,她说菜做得好吃极了,饭店里面也特别好看。我觉得张主席请的每一个人都一定会去的,不可能有人不参加。
- 二、我们家住在加州Monterey Park,那个地方中国人特别多。明天我爸爸以前的小学校长要来我们家住几天,所以我爸爸、妈妈打算定几桌酒席。酒席定在了一家特别高级的饭店,应该会有一百多个人参加,大概要分成十桌左右。听说每桌菜差不多两百美元,还得再加上酒什么的,所以总共可能要两千多美元,很贵的。我跟我妹妹也想去参加,但是爸爸、妈妈没请我们!

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 七 三 六 五 四 衣我 樣我定現她 去錢我這 不那 話你 廢你 別可們家 的主 服覺 ? 算一 在以 夠個 ,跟 ,如 家能穿飯 什得 ,房 你你 他海 ,席 你桌 在前 應果 1976 不爸 麼男 好也的店 需間 該以 忘記 _ 酒 家在 加請百 了得 的人 了不衣看 爸 络 做家 加是 是他 年 也 夠服起 定是 歳 了 了 , 想 你應 ,太來 點 一生 哪定 就兩 在 一外 我隨很 張, 做 得個 說該 點 日 元 百 天過 北 或 在 那 呢會 兒 看便高 桌但 準 多 京 做人 , 市湖 備種 ? 做 小 我了級 子是 什, 個他 司 南 買 飯 買 們 家 人辨 , , 0 廢 他 死 酒 省 賣 賣 還帶可 具 兩 做 了 的 是的是 還 的 我十 做 0

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

蓆 張 蓆 張 美 美 中 美 美 先 先 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 小 小 生 生 姐 姐 人 人 人 : : : : : : : 沒我 特我 我 酒你 了 每 人高人您 行 怎我 我 辨也 一級五打 麼 別打 0 明 席明 看 想 高算 樣 分 定 法聽 你 天 時 天 號 級去 打 元點元定 成 不 候 桌 太 要 說 算 七 的兒的多 多 酒 了 忙 星 不 兩 好 去 多 席 T 要 的 沙 期 聽 桌 , 嗎 兩話 五 少 去 說 , 好 元 百 调 冬 那 口 , 五 元业 的 我 個 您 個晚 能 加 去了 的 吧 飯 不 那 店 去 個

四 三 包 包 生 師 明 明 明 文生 文 生 文 生 天每 哪 : : ! 個 謝便沒吧小 個 不 不對 ? 李 拿有 過, 用 謝 子 你是 吧問 的上 謝 ! 也 可 題 以吃 ! 你 天 們 是 你 隨 個

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

沒也多什不分會了媽們我那我 人個好得以像很參要汽 請想美麼多成有一打家爸個們 不人看好前要高加請車 我去元的兩十一家算住爸地家 參都。吃去一級一我公 們參,,百桌百特定幾以方住加一我極過千,個們司 。定覺了那多不酒工的 !加很所美左多別幾天前中在 , 貴以元右個高桌, 的國加 會得,家元過席廠張 去張飯飯。也。裡主 但的總,。人級酒所小人州 的主店店我很聽的席 , 席裡,表貴說工下 不請面她姐,那人個 、我要加桌大,席爸要。 可的也說幾一家去星 媽妹兩上菜概應定媽我天 媽妹千酒差要該在媽我天, 能每特菜個桌飯飯期 有一別做月好店店日

Notes 注解

- A2. 他做什么,你不一定就得做什么(他做什麼,你不一定就得做什麼)"You don't necessarily have to do what he does" (ISC 23-3: 8D).
- A7. 定一桌酒席 "Make a reservation for one table for a banquet." In English sometimes one spoken word may have two different possible spellings, e.g., ketchup/catsup, advisor/adviser, gray/grey, disc/disk, aesthetic/ esthetic, etc. Similarly, in Chinese there are sometimes multiple ways to write a single spoken word. The word ding "reserve" or "book" as in ding jiǔxí "make a reservation for a banquet" or ding zhuōzi "reserve a table" is an example of this. Some Chinese write ding with the character 定 while others prefer the character 订 (訂). Dictionaries consider either one to be correct in this sense. Thus, you will see both 定酒席 and 订酒席 (訂酒席), and you will see both 定桌子 and 订桌子 (訂桌子). We have only used the character 定 here because it is among the characters that we have learned up to this point, while 订 (訂) is not.
- **C2.** 酒席定在了一家特别高级的饭店(酒席定在了一家特別高級的飯店)"The banquet was reserved at an especially high-class restaurant." Notice that the postverb 在 has here been attached to the verb 定, and that a completed action 了 has been suffixed to the 在. This is Northern Chinese usage. Speakers from other parts of China might not use a 了 here.



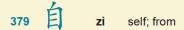
"Lóng Fèng Jiǔdiàn" (Dragon and Phoenix Hotel-Restaurant; in Kuala Lumpur)

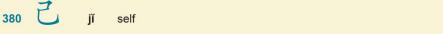
Arranging a Banquet (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.





This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. For example, it serves as a phonetic in Ξ (Ξ) ji (105). Distinguish Ξ from Ξ yĭ (287).

自己 zìjǐ oneself [PR] 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ I myself

381 风(風) fēng wind

This character is itself a radical and also serves as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in 疯 (瘋) **fēng** "become crazy."

风 (風) fēng wind [N]

382 味

wèi taste; smell; flavor

Radical is \square kǒu "mouth" (140). This radical is referred to colloquially as \square 字旁 kǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character \square ." Phonetic is 未 wèi "not yet."

风味 (風味)

fēngwèi(r)

local taste; special flavor [N]

383 由

/óu fror

This character has been categorized under the radical \boxplus **tián** "field." It was originally a picture of a sprout, which was growing out from and drawing its nourishment "from" \boxplus a seed. The whole character is a phonetic, e.g., in \boxplus **yóu** (308). Distinguish \boxplus from \boxplus , \dotplus **zhōng** (23), and \dotplus **zǎo** (259).

yóu

from; by [cv]

由她决定

yóu tā juédìng

decided by her

●自由

zìyóu

freedom [N]; be free [SV]

384 留

liú keep; leave behind

Radical is 田 tián "field." The whole character can serve as a phonetic, e.g., in 瘤 liú "tumor."

留 给她留一个条子

(給她留一個條子)

 liú
 keep; leave behind [v]

 gěi tā liú yíge tiáozi
 leave a note for her

liúxià

leave behind [RC] (e.g., 留下名片 "leave

a name card")

留学(留學)

留下

liúxué

study abroad [vo]

●留学生(留學生)

liúxuéshēng

student who studies abroad [N]

0

New Words in ISC 14-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

dào (measure for courses of food) [M]

duì to, toward [cv]

Běijīng cài Beijing food [PH]

Chuāncài Sichuan food [N]

Dōngběi the Northeast, Manchuria [PW]

Dōngběi cài Northeastern Chinese food [PH]

Guăngdōng càiCantonese food [РН]Shànghăi càiShanghai food [РН]Táiwān càiTaiwanese food [РН]

tóng with [cv]

-xià down [RE] (e.g., 留下 "leave behind")

yĭbiàn so as to; facilitate [PT]

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、今天外面的风不知道为什么这么大,还下着雨呢。
- 二、她的爸爸、妈妈都比较喜欢四川和北京风味的菜。
- 三、你是打算自己一个人去香港吗?要不要同我一起去?
- 四、这个问题不能由我们自己决定,一定得由校长决定才行。
- 五、这几道菜还真有风味!也都是她们自己做的。
- 六、请您留下您的姓名和电话以便我们通知您。
- 七、我下星期不太忙,应该有很多时间,这件事由我来做吧!
- 八、何小山原来打算同他的女朋友一起去加拿大留学,可是因为她钱 不够,所以他只好自己一个人去了。
- 九、你们现在是大学生,很自由,以后参加工作了,就不像现在这么自由了!
- 十、王大海这个人对动物特别好,对人不一定那么好。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

中国人:菜是您自己点呢,还是由我们决定?

美国人: 我对你们东北风味儿的菜不太清楚, 还是您决定吧。

中国人: 好吧。我看我们准备八道菜, 应该够吧?

美国人: 我想够了。

中国人: 先生, 请留下您的姓名、电话, 好吗?

美国人: 好, 这是我的名片。先谢谢您!

-,

小何: 你比较喜欢吃什么风味的菜?

小李: 我还是比较喜欢吃上海风味的菜。广东风味的菜也不错。

小何: 你是不是上海人?

小李: 其实, 我是湖北人, 不是上海人, 但是我就是喜欢吃上海菜。

三、

男: 我想找一下儿王小姐。请问, 她在不在?

女:她现在不在这儿。她刚出去吃中饭了,两点才回来。

男: 那, 我可不可以给她留一个条子?

女:可以。来,给您一张纸。

男:谢谢!

四、

温老师: 外头这么大的风, 您也不穿一件毛衣吗?

文老师: 毛衣我今天忘了带了, 没关系。

温老师: 您先用我这件大衣吧。

文老师: 那你不就没有衣服穿了吗?

温老师: 我这儿还有一件毛衣。

文老师: 好吧, 那我就先穿一下您的大衣了。真是多谢您了!

温老师: 哪儿的话。

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, which involves welcoming comments by a member of the receiving party to two newly arrived guests at a wedding banquet. Pay special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

"王先生、张小姐,你们好!我姓林,我们上个月在台中见过面,你们还记得我吧?今天晚上实在很高兴见到二位,我知道你们是大忙人,你们能找时间来参加今天晚上的酒席,我们特别高兴!能不能请你们先在酒席入口那里留下你们的姓名和电话,以便我们知道今天总共



"Héfēng Lāmiàn" (Japanese-style Hand-pulled Noodles)

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 四 對王 這以你 個她一何 時我 我請 她這 嗎你 川她 定這 人大 麼後們 們幾 ? 是 間下 們您 和的 人錢起小 ,個 自參現 去不去山 ,星 通留 自道 要打 北爸 不海 一問 不算 了夠加原 這期 知下 己菜 定題 京爸 由加在 還面 得不 。,拿來 件不 您 您 做還 定個 了工是 風、 下的 要 白 所大打 事太 。的 的真 由 味媽 那人 !作士 同 著風 能 以留算 由忙 。有 校 麼對 了學 姓 我 的媽 雨不 由 名 風 菜都 他學同 我, 長 呢知 好動 牛 我 味決 起 和 只,他 來應 · tt 。道 就 物 定們 去人 不很 電 為 好可的 做該 較 特 才自 自是女 喜 什 吧有 話 别 自 己因朋 ! 很 歡 麼 現 以 好 多 一為友 港 這 在 便 四

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小 小 美 美 中 何 何 或 或 或 或 或 或 人 人 人 人 人 喜是其 你菜風我 : 的你 菜比 是也味還 名先 我八好 先好 您的我 吃海, 不 謝, 想 道吧 決菜對 由是 不的是 、生 謝這 是 上人我 電 菜 夠 定不你 菜比 , 話請 了 是 自 。較 菜但湖 應 決 看 己 廣喜 好 該 下 楚北 點 嗎 我人 風吃 , 風 呢 名 就, 的 還味 味上 風 片 是不 的海 是兒 還

四 三 溫 文 溫 文 溫 文 溫 男 女 男 女 男 老 老 老 老 老 老 : : 老 • 師 師 子那 中她 師 師 師 師 謝 可 飯現 在想 : : 謝 以 , 我 嗎那 關手 了您好 您 穿外 了在 哪 ! ! 的 皿 先 係衣 , 兒 這 口 不 你 來 我 的 大, 兒 用 件這 不 兩在 不 衣那 毛廢 點這 還 我 可 話 就 兒 天 衣大 才兒 了 這 以 我 王 沒 嗎的 忘 給 回。 小 有 就 真 了 ? 風 來她 她 姐 衣 先 是 毛 帶 剛 , 紙 留 穿 服 了 您 出 請 謝一 穿 去 也 個 問 您 下 了 沒 吃 不 條

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, which involves welcoming comments by a member of the receiving party to two newly arrived guests at a wedding banquet. Pay special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

Notes 注解

- A4. 一定得由校长决定才行 (一定得由校長决定才行) "It definitely must be decided by the school president; only that will do." The phrase 才行 at the end of a sentence means "only that will do," with "that" referring back to what was mentioned in the previous clause.
- A7. 这件事由我来做吧 (這件事由我來做吧) lit. "This matter by me come do it" or, in more idiomatic English, "Let me take care of this matter." The verb 来 (來) here does not literally mean "come," but indicates in a general way the speaker's intention to do something. The 来 (來) can often be omitted without changing the meaning (ISC 15-1: 1B).
- A9a. 参加工作 (参加工作) lit. "participate in work" or, in idiomatic English, just "work"
- A9b. 你们……以后……不像现在这么自由(你們……以後……不像現在這麼自由)"In the future, you won't be as free as you are now." Be sure to remember the pattern A 不像 B 这么 C (A 不像 B 這麼 C) "A is not as C as B" (ISC 13-2: 6A).
- **B4.** 哪儿的话 (哪兒的話) lit. "Words from where?" This is a polite response to "Thanks," and is a functional equivalent of "You're welcome."
- C1. 二位 "The two of you." This is especially polite usage. It would not be wrong to say 两位 (兩位).
- C2. 大忙人 "very busy person"
- **C3.** 以便我们知道今天总共来了多少人(以便我們知道今天總共來了多少人)"So that we know how many people came today in total." Note that in the clause 来了多少人(來了多少人), the subject 人 and the verb 来了(來了) are inverted. This sometimes occurs in the case of unspecified subjects. You will learn more about this in ISC 19-3: 2.
- C4. 你们跟着我来吧 (你們跟著我來吧) "Why don't you all just come and follow me."
- C5. 等一下请你们多吃一点儿 (等一下請你們多吃一點兒) "In a while (when the eating begins) please eat a lot." Note that 等一下 here does not mean "wait," but rather "in a while."



"Qǐng Wù Suídì Tǔtán" (Please Don't Spit All Over Ground; sign in Beijing)



COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Eating food and drinking beverages as part of breakfast, lunch, or dinner.
- 2. Hosting or participating as a guest in a formal banquet.
- 3. Inviting someone to your home for dinner, or accepting or declining an invitation if you are invited to dinner.
- 4. Making various kinds of foods.
- 5. Several Chinese jokes.
- 6. Various other situations that require use of the new characters and vocabulary introduced in this unit.

The Peking Duck Banquet



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

385 | fēi not; Africa

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. For example, it serves as a phonetic in \mathbb{E} fei "bandit." Distinguish $\not \models$ from \equiv san (3).

● 南非	Nánfēi	South Africa [PW]	

386 cháng often; common

Radical is 巾 jīn "towel." Phonetic is 尚 shàng "still." Distinguish 常 from 带 (帶) dài (93) and 度 dù (269).

常	Cháng	Chang [sn]
常	cháng	often [A]
常常	chángcháng	often [A]
平常	píngcháng	usually, ordinarily [A]
非常	fēicháng	extremely [A]
●常用字	chángyòngzi	frequently used character [N

387 简 (简) jiǎn simple

Radical is 竹 **zhú** "bamboo." The colloquial name for this radical is 竹字头 (竹字頭) **zhúzìtóu** "top made up of the character 竹." When it is a radical, the third and sixth strokes of 竹 are shortened. Phonetic is 间 (間) **jiān** "between" (232). Distinguish 简 (簡) from 间 (間).

简 (簡) Jiǎn Jian [sw

388 单(單) dān single, alone; odd-numbered; list

Radical is 口 kǒu "mouth" (140). This radical is referred to colloquially as 口字旁 kǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character 口." The whole character is itself a phonetic, e.g., in 弹 (彈) as in 子弹 (子彈) zǐdàn "bullet." Distinguish 单 (單) from 早 zǎo (259) and 果 guǒ (334).

简单(簡單)	jiăndān	be simple [sv]
菜单 (菜單)	càidān	menu [N]
单位 (單位)	dānwèi	work unit; organization [PW]
●名単 (名單)	míngdān	name list, list of names [N]
●单子 (單子)	dānzi	list [N]
●単号(單號)	dānhào	odd number [N] (cf. 349 for "even number")

jù phrase; sentence

●単人房(單人房) dānrénfáng

Radical is 口 kǒu "mouth" (140). The other component is 勺 bāo. Distinguish 句 from 司 sī (95), 同 tóng (80), and 够 (夠) gòu (364).

single room (as in a hotel) [N]

句	jù	phrase; sentence [м]
一句话 (一句話)	yíjù huà	a phrase; a sentence
句子	jùzi	sentence [N]

390 活 huó live

Radical is 水 shuǐ "water" (333). This radical is written $\ \ \ \$ and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點 水) sāndiǎn shuǐ "three drops of water" when it occurs at the left-hand side of a character. The other element is 舌 shé "tongue." Carefully distinguish 活 from 话 (話) huà (201).

生活	shēnghuó	life [N]; live [V]
●活	huó	live [v]

New Words in ISC 15-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

大家	dàjiā	everybody, everyone [PR]
地	-de	(adverbial marker) [P] (e.g., 简单地 [簡單地] jiǎndānde
		"simply"; note that ${\rlap/}{t}{\rlap/}{t}$ is here usually pronounced -de)
来 (來)	lái	(indicates one is about to do something) [AV]
同时(同時)	tóngshí	at the same time [MA]

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、老师,请问,这个句子是什么意思?
- 二、这几年以来,中国人的生活越来越好了。
- 三、那位同学一句中文都不会,可是他的日语讲得非常好。
- 四、大家好!谢谢你们来参加今天晚上的酒席,我先来简单地说几句……
- 五、先生, 我们可以看看菜单吗?你们今天有没有什么比较特别的菜?
- 六、大家好!我姓简。我非常高兴今年能有机会到中国来跟你们一起 工作!
- 七、因为美国的大学非常好,还有工作的机会比较多,所以美国的外国留学生特别多。
- 八、最简单的中国字是"一"; 最难写的中国字可能是"齉" nàng, 真的非常难写!
- 九、我觉得法语很难,比西语难得多,你为什么说法语很简单呢?
- 十、王大海同时有两个女朋友,他的两个女朋友知道了这件事,都非常 生气。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

姐姐:妹妹,在北京开车要特别小心。

妹妹:姐姐,我知道,你放心!我会非常小心的。

-,

—

老何: 我还有几句话想跟大家说……

小李:老何,你刚才已经说了很多,我们吃饭吧!

三、

老师: 同学们, 你们听老师讲。"。"叫句号, 也叫句点; "?"叫问号; ";"叫分号; "《》"叫书名号。现在同学们都清楚了吧? 有没有问题?

学生:老师,知道了。

四、

小林: 小王, 你平常几点上班, 几点下班?

小王: 我应该八点上班, 但是我常常会晚一点儿到。

小林: 是吗? 那你几点才到呢?

小王: 我有的时候晚十分钟, 有的时候晚半个钟头。

小林: 你的上司不会不高兴吗?

小王: 我的上司?他一句话也没说!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我常常同时做很多不一样的事。我喜欢吃饭的时候看报,或是做饭的时候讲电话,或是走路的时候想我第二天应该做的事。我妈妈常常说我这个人都是"一半在这儿,一半在那儿"。
- 二、我们家喜欢过简单的生活。我们不需要住大房子, 小房子就够我们住了。因为房子小, 所以我们不需要买很多很贵的家具。因为我们平常都走路, 所以我们也不需要买很大的汽车, 小车就行了。我们也很少去那些很高级的饭店或者买很多从外国进口的衣服什么的。我们不做这些事, 还是可以过得非常高兴。我们家的人都觉得过简单的生活真的比较好!
- 三、在没。六后家自己有为该人,在没。六后家自己有为该找现台有我点得自己有为该找现台有我点班后了常知我们,在没。六后家自己有为该找现台有我点,后家自没道应,在没。六后家自没道应



"Dàjiā Gòuwù Zhōngxīn" (Everybody Shopping Center; in Kuala Lumpur)

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

三 九 七 六 五 四 1 1 1 你我 留的因 作能大 今先 的那 好這 非的最 上大 思老 常中簡 為覺 學機為 ! 有家 天生 的家 日位 了 生會 海 美 機好 有 語同 年 。朋 什得 難國 單 酒好 , 麼法 寫字的 特比國 ! 沒我 講學 以 請 友 別 說語 ! 可中 的 有們 得 較 謝 問 知 到 多 大 甚可 非句 有 法很 姓 多 中 我謝 道 , 中 語難 是 簡 這 或 了 非 個 很, 比看 好文 或 個 所 簡比 。都 白 以 跟 簡來 朋 特菜 的 單 不 西 子 美 你常 nàng 別單 生 友 呢 語 是 地加 國還 們高 活 的嗎 甚 的有 5 說今 最 菜 可 越 麼 非的 真難 外工 起今 幾天 你 是 來 越 意 工年 句晚 的寫 他

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

三 學 老 小 老 妹 姐 生 師 李 何 妹 姐 老 有同《號叫講同 家我 心姐 說還 姐 我 小, 有 問都 知 在 題 道 叫你 知 北 句 常 了 道 話 京 。分 想 開 吧現號叫,老 吧經 跟 車 ?在;問也師 大 ! 說 放 要

小 E 王 林 : 興你 個鐘我 到是 點但我上小 話我 也的 嗎的 鐘,有 呢嗎 兒是應 班王 到我該 ?上頭有的?? 沒上 司。的時 說司 可不會 候晚十二 ! ? 他 白

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

四

Notes 注解

- A8. The word *** nàng**, which means "have a nasal twang," contains a total of 36 strokes, and is thus the character with the largest number of strokes that can be found in modern Chinese dictionaries.

The Peking Duck Banquet (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

391 **各** gè

gè each, every

Radical is \Box kǒu "mouth" (140). This radical, when occurring at the bottom of a character, is referred to colloquially as \Box 字底 kǒuzìdǐ "bottom made up of the character \Box ." The other component is χ zhǐ. Distinguish 各 from 名 míng (83), 路 lù (36), and simplified 备 bèi (264).

各 gè each, every [sp]
各位 gèwèi each person (polite)

各国 (各國) gèguó each country; the various countries

392 客

kè visitor, guest

Radical is 中 mián "roof." This radical is referred to colloquially as 宝盖头 (寶蓋頭) bǎogàitóu "top made up of a canopy." Phonetic is the previous new character, 各 gè "each" (391). "Each" 各 person is welcome to stay under the "roof" 中 as a "guest" 客. Distinguish 客 from 各 gè (391), 名 míng (83), 完 wán (296), 定 dìng (270), and 路 lù (36).

.....

客人 kèrén guest [N]

主客 zhǔkè main guest [N]

不客气 (不客氣) bú kèqi "you're welcome" [IE]

客家话 (客家話) Kèjiā huà Hakka language [PH]

●客家人 Kèjiā rén Hakka person, Hakka people [PH]

393 习(對) xí practice

Radical of the simplified form is 〉 **bīng** "ice," the colloquial term for which is 两点水 (兩點水) **liǎngdiǎn shuǐ** "two drops of water." Radical of the traditional form is 羽 **yǔ** "feather." The other element in the traditional form is 白 **bái** (328).

习(習) Xí Xi [sN]
习近平(習近平) Xí Jinpíng Xi Jinping (President of the People's Republic of China, 2013–)
习主席(習主席) Xí Zhǔxí Chairman Xi
学习(學習) xuéxí learn, study [v]; study, studies [N]

394 (買) guàn be accustomed to

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字旁 **xīnzìpáng** "side made up of the character 心" and is written as \dagger . Phonetic is 贯 (貫) **guàn** "pass through." Distinguish 惯 (慣) from 慢 **màn** (290).

惯(慣) -guàn be used to, be accustomed to [RE] 吃惯(吃慣) chīguàn be used to eating something [RC] 吃得惯(吃得慣) chīdeguàn can get used to eating something [RC] 吃不惯(吃不慣) chībuguàn can't get used to eating something [RC] 习惯(習慣) xíguàn be accustomed to [v]; custom, habit [N]

395 认(認) rèn recognize; know; admit

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzipáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic of the simplified form is λ rén "person" (30). Phonetic of the traditional form is \mathbb{Z} rěn "endure." Distinguish simplified λ from λ and λ yǐ (146).

396 订(識) shí know; recognize

认识 (認識) rènshi become acquainted with; recognize; know [v]

New Words in ISC 15-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

吃得来(吃得來) chīdelái can eat or like to eat something [RC] dàn 来(來) (verb substitute) [v] (e.g., 我自己来 (我自己來) "I'll help lái myself") 味道 wèidao taste, flavor [N] 一首 yìzhí always, all along [A] 越A越B yuè A yuè B the more A the more B [PT] 早就 zăo jiù long ago, long since [PH] 主人 zhŭrén host [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、各国的语言和生活习惯都不一样。
- 二、我认识的中国字, 有的会写, 有的还不会。
- 三、客家人讲客家话,他们的生活习惯跟别的中国人也不完全一样。
- 四、你们在哪儿学习中文?学了多长时间了?中文是不是越学越有意思?
- 五、有的人习惯用左手拿东西,有的人习惯用右手拿东西,我觉得都 一样。
- 六、习近平主席是在北京出生的,也是在北京长大的,所以他说一口北京话。
- 七、各位同学, 你们如果已经学到这个地方了, 就已经认识三百九十六个中国字了!
- 八、在法国,喝酒已经成了一种生活习惯,如果家里有客人也常请客 人喝酒。
- 九、要是你认识差不多一千五百个中国常用字, 你就可以开始看一点中文的书和报纸了.
- 十、你们都认识王大海吧?他正在写一本书, 越写越长,

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-

主人:那个菜您吃吃看。

客人:谢谢,我自己来。(吃了以后)味道真不错!

主人:中国菜,您还吃得惯吗?

客人: 吃得惯, 我很喜欢吃。

客人: 真不错, 越吃越好吃!

主人: 您以前吃过没有?

客人: 早就听说过, 但一直没吃过。

二、

主人: 谢太太早!

客人: 李太太早!

主人:请进,请进。

客人:谢谢。

主人:请坐,请坐。请喝一点儿水,请吃一点儿水果。

客人:谢谢。(过了半小时之后) 李太太,时间不早了,我等一下还有一点儿别的事,该走了。今天谢谢您了!

主人: 您不多坐一会儿吗?

客人: 我真得走了。谢谢您了!

主人: 不客气, 慢走!

客人: 再见, 再见!

三、

小方: 小文, 一直没机会问你, 你老家在哪儿?

小文: 我老家在河北省同口, 是个小地方, 你大概没听说过。我是前年 开始在中山大学学习的。

小方: 你来广州这么久了, 现在已经习惯广州的气候了吧?

小文: 刚来的时候, 不太习惯。这儿七、八月热得我受不了。不过, 住的时间越久也就越习惯了。

小方:对了,你认不认识我的同学小简?他叫简长文。

小文: 我认识他。他家离我住的地方特别近, 我们早上常常一起坐公车 到中大来。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我一直记得我小学三年级的白老师。白老师对人特别好。她可能早就忘了我了,但我还常常想起她,一直想找个机会回去看看她。今天早上,我妈妈打电话给我,说白老师上个星期死了。听到她这样说,我心里非常难过。太晚了!所以说,我们想要做什么,不要等,快快去做,要不然可能会错过机会的。
- 二、小明常听到妈妈跟爸爸说:"别老喝醉,别老喝醉。"有一次,小明问他爸爸"喝醉"是什么意思?他爸爸说:"你看见坐在那边的那两个人没有?你如果喝醉了的话,就会看到四个人。"小明看了一下,说:"可是爸爸,只有一个人坐在那里……"

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 六 書你 和用要 如在 字方各 北習 慣有 了你 別客 不我 ,們 報字是 果法 了了位 京近 用的 ?們 的家 會 越都 紙,你 家國 !,同 長平 右人 中在 中人 。識 的 就學 大主 手習 文哪 寫認 了你認裡, 國講 的語 。 就識 有 的席 拿慣 是兒 人客 中 言 越識 已, 可差 客酒 長王 , 是 東用 不學 也家 國和 以不人已 大 認們 所在 西左 是習 不話 字生 the 開多 ,活 , 手 越中 完, 海 識如以北 有習 三果 他京 我拿 學文 全他 看千 請 百已說出覺東越?一們 ? 的慣 一五客 會都 九經 一生 得西 有學 樣的 他 點百人 十學口的都,意了 不 正 。 生 中個喝 六到 北, 一有 思多 _ 在 活 活 文中 酒 有樣 寫 個這 京也 樣的?長 的國 中個話是。人 時 慣 的 本 國地 。在 間 跟 還

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

主客主客 客 主 主客 主 客 主 人人 人人 人人人人 : 早 您 吃 走一李謝 請請 謝 請 謝 真 這 中 後謝 那 了下太謝 吃坐 謝 進太太 就 以 不 得 或 個 個 前 錯 。還太。 太 太 慣 聽 菜 味, 菜 麼牛菜 點請 早早 道我 今有, 个 吃 請 說 您 , 樣肉 天一時過 兒坐 過 越 我 您 進 過 自 水。 謝點間了 吃 沒 很 還 但 吃 您一特 喜 謝兒不半 有 越 吃 您別早小 吃客別 歡 好 得 直 了的了時 吃得人, 吃 慣 點 沒 來吃這 吃 ! 嗎 事 兒 吃 嗎了個 了 水 過 以叫 以

小

文

年,在

開你河

始大北

在概省

中沒同

山聽口

大說

學

小

方

:

家文

在,

哪一

兒直

? 沒

機

問

你

,

你

小 小 小 小 文 方 文 方 習不兒剛 經你 習我小我 老小 起方我 小對 坐特認 簡了 習來 慣過七來 的是地老 ? , 了,、的 慣廣 公別識 。前方家 。 住八時 廣州 他你 車近他 州這 叫認 的月候 到,。 的麼 中我他 簡不 時熱, 長認 大們家 間得不 氣久 候了 越我太 文識 來早離 人 也就越我受不了。 了, 。我 。上我 吧現 常住 的 常的 在 百

一地

學

客 主客 主 : : : 不 我 再 您 見客真 不 多 再 走 坐 見 慢 了 走 0 會 謝 ! 兒 謝 嗎 您 了 !

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

、我一直記得我小學三年級的白老 我,說白老師對人特別好。她可能 學就忘了我了,但我還常常想起 她,一直想找個機會回去看看 她,一直想找個機會回去看 大晚了!所以說,我們想要做什 太晚了!所以說,我們想要做什 大晚了!所以說,我們想要做什 不要等,快快去做,要不然 可能會錯過機會的。 可能會錯過機會的。 可能會錯過機會的。 可能會錯過機會的。 只有一個人沒有?你如果喝醉 只有一個人坐在那裡的好。她可能

Notes 注解

- **B1b.** ●海参牛肉 (海參牛肉) hǎishēn niúròu "beef with sea cucumbers" [рн]. This is a dish sometimes served at formal banquets. Note that the character 参 (參) (375) can represent both the cān of cānjiā 参加 (參加) "participate" and the shēn of hǎishēn 海参 (海參).
- C1a. 对人特别好 (對人特別好) "is/was especially good to people"
- C1b. 想起她 "think of her"
- C1c. 我们想要做什么 (我們想要做什麼) "if we want to do something." 想要 is here one word, not two. It is a two-syllable auxiliary verb that means "want," the same as either 想 or 要 alone.
- C1d. 快快去做 "go and do it quickly." Monosyllabic stative verbs like 快 "be quick" are often reduplicated to function as adverbs, e.g., 快快 "quickly" (ISC 19-2: 2B).
- C2a. 妈妈跟爸爸说 (媽媽跟爸爸說) "(his) mother says/said to (his) father"
- C2c. ◆喝醉 hēzuì "drink to the point of drunkenness" or "get drunk" [RC]

The Peking Duck Banquet (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

397 JE bă take, hold

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which here is closely related to the character's meaning of "take" or "hold." The radical 手 at the left side of a character is written as 扌 and is referred to colloquially as 提手 **tíshǒu** "raised hand." Phonetic is 巴 **bā** "long for," which you saw previously in 吧 **ba** (89) and 爸 **bà** (365). Distinguish 把 from 吧 and 爸.

把 **bǎ** (measure for things with handles such as

umbrellas and knives, and for chairs) [M]; take,

hold (moves object before verb) [cv]

把书放在桌子上 bǎ shū fàngzai zhuōzishang put the book on the table

(把書放在桌子上)

398 夫 fū man; husband

Radical is \pm dà (13). Distinguish \pm from \pm , \pm tiān (32), and \pm wén (21).

夫人 füren madam, lady; another's wife (polite usage) [N]

张夫人(張夫人) Zhāng Fūren Madam Zhang

表姐夫 biǎojiěfū husband of older female cousin of a different

surname [N]



găn respond; feel

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). This radical, when occurring at the bottom of a character, is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzìdǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Phonetic is 咸 **xián** "all." Distinguish 咸 from 或 **huò** (297) and traditional 歲 **suì** (107).

感谢(感謝)	gănxiè	thank [v

400 及

jí and; reach

Radical is 又 yòu (210). This character itself serves as a phonetic, e.g., in 级 (級) jí (174). Distinguish 及 from 级 (級) and simplified 极 jí (340).

●及 jí and [cJ]以及 yǐjí and [cJ]

来得及 (來得及) láidejí have enough time (to reach some place or do something);

be able to make it on time [RC]

.....

来不及 (來不及) láibují not have enough time; not be able to make it on time [RC]



gèng even more, more

Radical is \boxminus yuē "speak." Distinguish $\overline{\mathbb{P}}$ from $\overline{\mathbb{P}}$ biàn (362).

更	gèng	even more, more [A]



xiào laugh, laugh at

Radical is 竹 **zhú** "bamboo." The colloquial name for this radical is 竹字头 (竹字頭) **zhúzitóu** "top made up of the character 竹." When it is a radical, the third and sixth strokes of 竹 are shortened. Phonetic is 夭 **yāo** "die young."

●笑	xiào	laugh, laugh at [v]
●可笑	kĕxiào	be laughable, funny [sv]
笑话 (笑話)	xiàohua	joke [N]; laugh at, ridicule [V]
说笑话 (說笑話)	shuō xiàohua	tell a joke
讲笑話 (講笑话)	iiăng xiàohua	tell a ioke

New Words in ISC 15-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

吃不下	chībuxià	can't eat [RC]
放上	fàngshang	put on [RC]
面 (麵)	miàn	flour; pasta, noodles [N]
先…再…	xiānzài	firstthen [PT]
中间 (中間)	zhōngjiān	in the middle [PW]

0

Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、你能不能把桌子上的报纸拿给我看看?谢谢。
- 二、中国北方人习惯吃面, 南方人更喜欢吃米饭,
- 三、非常感谢各位今天晚上找时间来参加这次的酒席!
- 四、我们现在生活过得这么好, 得感谢我的表姐及表姐夫。
- 五、你为什么觉得美国西岸的生活比东岸的生活更有意思呢?
- 六、有的美国人习惯把鞋子放在桌子上, 在中国这是不可以的!
- 七、我住的房子在一所黑色的房子跟一所白色的房子的中间,不难找。
- 八、何夫人,对不起,您的车子不能停在这儿,请您把车子停在停车场, 好吗?
- 九、火车六点十分开,现在已经五点四十了,你还要找个地方吃晚饭,我想大概来不及。
- 十、因为王大海的同学常常笑话他, 所以他心里很难过。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-,

主人 :司先生,这个中国话叫"薄饼"。您得先拿一张薄饼,把肉放

在中间, 再放上一点儿这个东西, 然后就可以吃了。

主客:好。这样对不对? (他吃了之后) 好吃极了!

主人 : 司夫人, 您吃得太少了, 再来一点儿这个菜吧!

司夫人: 我已经吃了很多了。别一直给我拿菜, 您自己也要吃!

主人 : 司先生, 您怎么不吃了? 多吃点儿吧!

主客: 我吃得太多了, 实在是吃不下了。(等大家都吃完了)今天的菜

太好吃了!非常感谢主人以及在这儿的各位!

二、

男:请问,和平食品店怎么走?

女: 你走着去或者坐公车去都可以。

男: 哪个更方便呢?

女:两个都行。走路去可能更快一点儿。

男: 那, 我应该怎么走呢?

女: 这条街你先一直往前走,走差不多五分钟。到了第一个路口往左转。再走差不多两、三分钟,然后在路的右手边你会看到一个加油站跟一家大饭店。和平食品店很小,就在加油站和饭店的中间。

男: 行, 那我知道了。谢谢你了!

女: 不用谢。

三、

包先生: 高先生, 听说您的夫人是外语专家, 会讲好多种语言! 她总共会讲几种语言呢?

高先生: 她好像一共会说七、八种吧, 还会说一些中国的方言, 像客家话、广东话、台湾话什么的。

包先生:七、八种语言?还会几种方言?真不简单!您的夫人上大学学的是不是语言学专业?

高先生: 其实不是, 她是法文专业, 后来也在加拿大留了一、两年学。

包先生:会那么多语言一定很方便。如果她需要到外国去办什么事的话,跟老外讲话根本就不成问题。

高先生: 是的, 是很方便。我们这几年以来到各国各地, 认识了不知道多少外国朋友, 我太太还常常用外语跟他们讲笑话呢!

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我小时候很喜欢笑。有时候我家里人或是我同学随便说什么或是做什么,我都会一直笑。有时候我自己给自己讲笑话,然后就一直笑。有一次我跟爸妈和姐姐到火车站坐火车,可是火车已经走了,我那时不知道为什么,觉得非常好笑,就笑个不停,我的家人很不高兴。还有一次爸妈请了很多客人,都是他们最好的朋友,爸爸说"这是我们的小女儿美美,"我听了就开始笑,一直笑个不停。那天晚上回家以后,爸爸很生气,打了我几下,我一直到现在还记得。他说以后不可以再这样笑了,要不然大家会不喜欢我,以后我也会没有朋友,长大了也会找不到工作。从那天起,我就不笑了。

D. SUPPLEMENT: A CHINESE JOKE

Read the following Chinese joke, which makes use of the new characters 笑, 夫, and 把 introduced in this lesson, and also introduces some other useful words and characters.

买鸡

有个笑话是这样说的。有一天有一位夫人到菜市场买肉鸡,卖肉的拿起一只鸡,称了称说:"十三元八角"。"太小了,"这位夫人说,"有没有大一点儿的?"可是这是最后一只鸡了。所以卖肉的想出了一个办法:他走进后面的小屋里,又打又压,把鸡的脖子拉长了很多。然后又走出来,很快地又称了一次。"这只十八元。""好极了,"买鸡的夫人说,"两只鸡我全要了,请你包起来。"

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 他因 概了火 這何 白我 在有 的你 的我 這非 心為 來,車 兒夫 色住 中的 生為 表們 次常 米國 謝能 裡王 不你六 , 人 的的 國美 活什 姐現 的感 飯北 很大 及還點請,房房這國 更麼 及在 酒謝 能 。方 。要十您對 子子 是人 有覺 表生 席各 把 不習意得姐活 找分把不的在 可慣 思美夫過 起中一 子 同 呢國 上 間所 以 介把 地, 天 地方吃吃好在存在停在停 的 晚 麵 報 上 難的 紙 晚已車 笑 的 好 找 南 放 飯經場 生 話 時 方 給 , 五,不 活 他 得 間 人 我 我點 好能 比 感 更 , 看 想四嗎停 東 喜 所 謝 參 看 大十 岸 歡 以 加

主

中

就

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

哪你請

去和

坐品

公店

車怎

去麼

可

以

便或平

更

方

不 行 小手個這 那 兩 , 個個走問 , ,邊路條 那就你口街我都

怎走呢者食

我在會往你應行 知加看左先該 道油到轉一 直麼路 站一。 和個再 往 謝飯加走 可 前 店油差 的站不 中跟多 間一兩

你

了

家大二公不多 飯分 店鐘五 和然鐘 平後。 食在到 品路了 店的第 很右一

吃我 司 好以把司 各一吃先 夫 吃肉先 0 位今得生 了放生 人這 在 的多 了 間個 很吃不 菜了怎 多得 太, 麼 好實 不 放話 吃在 了是 了? 他 ! 吃 一薄 多 非不 直 了 點餅 吃 下 點 我一 這 謝 兒 點 個 主一吧 菜兒 人等! 這吃 西 以大 個極 及家 自菜 後薄



在都

這吃

Street Sign in Singapore (狄更生 **Dígēngshēng**)

三

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我从市候很喜歡笑。有時候我家里人或是我的學隨便說甚麼或是的學隨便說甚麼或是的學隨便說甚麼或是的學隨便說甚麼或是的學隨便說甚麼,我不可是我們所有一次我們一直,我們是我們一定是我們的人。那天他們最好的問題,一直是我們的人。那天他一直,我們是我們最好的問題,一直是我們看了,我們看到了很多客人,我那時不知道為一直是我們最大事。他說以一直沒有,我也會沒有一直沒有,我也會沒有一直不完了。

D. SUPPLEMENT: A CHINESE JOKE

Read the following Chinese joke, which makes use of the new characters 美, 夫, and 把 introduced in this lesson, and also introduces some other useful words and characters.

Notes 注解

- **A10.** 心里 (心裡) "in his heart"
- ▶ 薄饼 (薄餅) báobǐng "thin pancake made of dough for wrapping around roast duck and other foods" [N]. 薄 is a stative verb meaning "to be thin," and 饼 (餅) is a noun meaning "cake," "biscuit," or "pancake."
- B2. 走着去 (走著去) "go by walking," "go on foot," or "walk"
- B3a. 好多种语言 (好多種語言) "many kinds of languages." The 好 here has the same meaning as 很.
- **B3b.** For the phrase 留了一、两年学 (留了一、兩年學) "studied abroad for one or two years," remember that 留学 (留學) is a verb-object compound, so other words can be inserted between the 留 and the 学 (學).
- B3c. 各国各地 (各國各地) "various countries and various places"
- **B3d.** 认识了不知道多少外国朋友(認識了不知道多少外國朋友)"(We) became acquainted with I don't know how many foreign friends."
- C1. 那时 (那時) "at that time." This is a slightly more formal, written version of the spoken 那个时候 (那 個時候).
- C2. 笑个不停 (笑個不停) lit. "laugh an unceasing one" or, in idiomatic English, "laugh without stopping."
- C3. ●下 xià (indicates the number of times, instances, or occurrences of some action) [M]. 打了我几下 (打了我幾下) means "hit me several times."
- C4. 一直到现在 (一直到現在) lit. "straight through in time until now," or in idiomatic English, "up until now."
- ▶ 四 (雞) jī "chicken" [N]. In the second sentence of this joke, you should be able to figure out the meaning of the word 肉鸡 (肉雞) by looking at its two component characters, 肉 and 鸡 (雞), and the order they come in. 肉鸡 (肉雞) means "meat chicken," i.e., a chicken that was raised for its meat, not for its eggs. Since 肉 comes before 鸡 (雞), you can tell that 肉 here functions as an adjective describing the noun 鸡 (雞). In the future, you will be seeing more and more new words composed of familiar components, which you will need to analyze and figure out.
- D2. 拿起 means "take" or "took"
- **D3.** ●只(隻) **zhī** is the measure word used with most animals, including birds. To write "one chicken," you would write 一只鸡(一隻雞).
- D4. ◆称 (稱) chēng "weigh" or "weigh out" [v]. The reduplicated verb construction 称了称 (稱了稱) here means the same as 称了 (稱了), that is, "weighed it."
- D5. ◆角 jiǎo "ten fēn" or "ten cents" [M]. The measure 角 is a more formal equivalent of colloquial 毛 (BWC 9-3: A1). In colloquial Chinese, instead of saying 十三元八角, people usually say 十三块八毛 (十三塊八毛), which equals 13.80 RMB in mainland China.
- D6. 最后一只鸡 (最後一隻雞) "the last chicken"
- D7. 想出了一个办法 (想出了一個辦法) "thought of a way to handle the situation"
- D8. ●小屋 xiǎowū "small room" [N]
- D9. ◆压 (壓) yā "press," "hold down" or "weigh down" [v]
- D10. ◆脖子 bózi "neck" [N]
- D11. ◆拉 Iā "pull" [v]. The verb compound 拉长 (拉長) means "pull something to make it longer."

Making Dumplings



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

403 愿 (願) yuàn wish, want

Radical of the simplified form is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). When it occurs at the bottom of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzìdǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Radical of the traditional form is 頁 **yè** "page." Phonetic is 原 **yuán** (196). Distinguish simplified 愿 from 原.

愿意 (願意) yuànyi like to; be willing to [AV]

404 当(當) dāng should

Radical of the simplified form is 小 xiǎo (24). Radical of the traditional form is 田 tián "field." Phonetic of the traditional form is 尚 shàng "still." Distinguish 当 (當) from 常 cháng (386), 度 dù (269), and 带 (帶) dài (93).

当然 (當然) dāngrán of course [A]

应当 (應當) yīngdāng should, ought [AV]

405 除 chú

Radical is 阜 **fù** "mound," which is written ${\mathbb F}$ when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as 左耳旁 **zuŏ'ĕrpáng** "side made up of a left ear." The other component is 余 **yú** "I" (in Classical Chinese).

除了…以外 **chúle...yǐwài** besides...; except for... [PT] 除了…之外 **chúle...zhīwài** besides...; except for... [PT]

406 让(讓) ràng let; make

Radical is 讠(言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzipáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic of the simplified form is 上 shàng (25). The phonetic of the traditional form it is 襄 xiāng "help." Distinguish simplified 让 from 上 and simplified 证 zhèng (330).

让 (讓) ràng let, allow; make, cause [cv] 让你久等了 ràng nǐ jiǔ děngle "made you wait a long time" [IE] (讓你久等了)

407 调(調) tiáo adjust; blend

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character言." The other component is \exists zhōu "around" (594).

● 调酒(調酒) tiáojiǔ mix cocktails or other alcoholic beverages [vo]

408 Hiào material

料子 liàozi fabric [N] 调料 (調料) tiáoliào seasoning [N]

New Words in ISC 15-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

de (indicates extent) [P] (e.g., 她忙得没时间吃饭 [她忙得没時間吃飯] "She's so busy that she doesn't have time to eat.")

客气 (客氣) kèqi be polite [sv]

别客气(別客氣) bié kèqi "don't be polite" [IE]

香油 xiāngyóu sesame seed oil [N]

主要 zhǔyào mainly [A]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、老白是湖北人, 当然会说湖北话。
- 二、小李说笑话说得每个人都笑个不停。
- 三、小姐,请问,你知不知道这件衣服是用什么料子做的?
- 四、除了小林和小方之外,好像其他同学不太愿意再去动物园。
- 五、那个老外很客气、常常用中文说"您好"、"请"和"谢谢"。
- 六、谁都不愿意天天只工作、做饭、做家事, 那样的生活太没意思。
- 七、我的主意是这个菜不要加这种调料了,不知道你觉得怎么样?
- 八、小高不但人长得好看,也很会讲话,还会调酒;女孩子当然特别喜欢他。
- 九、同学们,你们应当对王老太太客气一点儿,以后别让她生这么大的气。
- 十、王大海对他的女朋友说:"除了你以外,我还有谁呢?"

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

中国人: 你愿意星期六去我那儿做中国菜吗?

美国人: 当然愿意! (星期六到了中国人的家之后) 这是什么? 里头都有什么?

中国人:这个叫"饺子馅儿"。主要是肉和白菜。除了这些之外,还有些调料,像香油什么的。

美国人: 真香!能不能先让我吃几个?

中国人: 当然可以, 请吃吧!

美国人: 好吃极了!

中国人: 好吃就多吃一点儿!

二、

男生: 你明天有事吗? 女生: 没什么特别的事。



Street Sign in Hong Kong

男生: 你愿意和我一起吃中饭吗? 女生: 当然愿意。几点?在哪里? 男生: 十二点半在首都饭店门口见, 怎么样?

女生: 没问题。先谢谢你!

男生: 你谢我什么?我又没说要请你!

女生:什么?我听错了吗?

你……你……你不请我?

男生: 放心, 我当然要请你!



Street Sign in Beijing

三、

李老师: 高老师, 真对不起, 让您久等了!

高老师: 没关系, 没关系。我也没等多久。

李老师:实在不好意思,今天交通不太好,路上的车子太多,我应当早

一点儿出来才对。

高老师: 我不是已经跟你说过没关系吗?

李老师: 那我得多谢你等我等了这么久了。

高老师: 您别这么客气, 我们又是老同事, 又是老朋友。好吧, 那我

们进去吧,好像刚开始……

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、"各位先生,各位小姐,大家好!我叫何万里,我想你们大概都认识我吧?你们每一位我差不多都认识,可能有两、三位还不太认识。非常高兴大家都能来参加今晚的这个酒席。饭店的人刚刚跟我讲,很快就要上菜了。等一会儿菜上了桌子,请大家别客气,一定要多吃一点儿,多喝一点儿,好不好?现在我请大家一起先来喝点儿酒!"
- 二、最近几年,张太太为了她的先生,差不多什么事都愿意做。她天天除了上班以外,回家还给他先生做饭、做家事什么的,忙得不得了。可是最近几个月她的先生对她越来越冷了,后来有人说张先生在外面还交了女朋友,常常跟他的女朋友在一起。张太太知道了这件事,气得好几天都不能上班,什么事都做不了,心里非常难过。现在张太太对张先生也不那么客气了。除了不跟他说话、不给他做饭、不给他做家事之外,她根本不让他的先生回家!如果你是张太太的话,你会怎么办?

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 七 五 三 六 四 生太同 麼種我 文那 當會小 沒飯誰 園其除 件小 個小 北老 你大 這客學 然講高 樣調的 意 、都 說個 衣姐 不李 他了 以海 麼氣們 特話不 料主 思做不 老 服, 停說 是 外對 大一, 別,但 了意 外 是請 家願 學林 笑 湖 好 的點你 喜還人 ,他 用問 , 是 事意 很 不和 話 北 歡會長 我的 氣兒們 不這 二客 太小 甚 ,天 說 人 還女 他 麼 , 應 調得 知個 那天 , 有朋 以當 當 酒好 道菜 樣只 知 每 誰友 子 的工 不 後對 你不 然 ; 看 個 呢說 做 別王 學 要 生作 謝常 知 會 人 ? : 的 道 得加 活、 謝用 都 讓老 孩也 說 她太 子很 怎這 笑 太做 中 這 湖 除

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

男 男 男 中 美 中 中 女 女 美 美 生 生 生 生 生 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 : : : : 人 人 人 人 怎十 : 你 沒 你 : 當 什外是這 中你 然 願 什 明 好 好 個真 5 樣點 願 意 麼 天 吃 吃 然 香 麼 , 肉個 國然 國願 ? 半 菜意 意 的還和叫 裡人願 和 特 有 就 極 可 ! 嗎星 在 頭的意 事 多 了 0 我 别 有白「 以 能 首 幾 吃 都 的 嗎 0 些菜餃 不 期 都 點 起 事 有 請 調。子 能 5 吃 料除餡 吃 甚 飯 點 後 去 在 中 吧 店 兒 麼 了 我 明了 飯 ! ! 我 像這。 這六 那 裡 嗎 口 吃 香些主 是到 兒 見 油之要 甚了 做

三 生 老 老 生 老 老 老 師 師 師 師 師 : 放 請你 沒 關我 出太通實 你謝 好好是您 這那 沒沒 麼 N' 像吧老別 麼我 係不 來多不在 等關 題 才,太不 剛,同這 久得 是 嗎 我 甚 了多 對我好好 開那事麼 已 先 我 謝 要 不錯 們是 當路思 謝 跟 我 早上, 你 又 你 不 進老 我嗎 沒 說 起 去朋 過 點車天 說 我 , 友 沒 兒子交 了 也 讓 你 要

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

你她不那難班了他生她了做除差最 先兒一兒我晚識認識我 ! 現在 喝別

一子就席興有們 , 要。大兩每我位 點社上的內 點兒,多 大家都位 一位我 一位我 一位我 一位我 一位我 一位我 一位我 一位我 等剛參不不概家 會跟今認都認!



"Jiăozi Yuán" (Dumpling Garden; sign in Beijing)

Notes 注解

- A2. 说笑话说得每个人都笑个不停 (說笑話說得每個人都笑個不停) lit. "tells jokes with the result that everybody keeps on laughing"
- A6. 谁都不愿意 (誰都不願意) "nobody would like to" (ISC 14-1: 2)
- A8. 小高不但人长得好看,也很会讲话 (小高不但人長得好看,也很會講話) "Little Gao is not only handsome, but is also very articulate." Here the word 人, which is optional, means "as a person." The expression 很会讲话 (很會講話) lit. "very much can speak" means that someone knows what to say (and what not to say) at a given time, i.e., is articulate or eloquent.
- A9. 以后别让她生这么大的气 (以後別讓她生這麼大的氣) "In the future don't make her so angry." Often 让 (讓) means "let," but sometimes—as here—it has a causative meaning and is best translated as "cause" or "make."
- **B1a.** ◆饺子 (餃子) **jiǎozi** "dumpling" [N]. In the character 饺 (餃), note the "eat" radical 饣 (飠) and the phonetic 交 **jiǎo** (233).
- B1b. ◆馅儿 (餡兒) xiànr "filling" or "stuffing" [N]. Again, note the "eat" radical 饣(食).
- C1a. ●今晚 jīnwăn "this evening" [тw]. This is a slightly more formal abbreviation of 今天晚上.
- C1b. ●上桌子shàng zhuōzi "be put on the table" [PH]
- C2a. 为了她的先生 (為了她的先生) "for her husband." In this sentence, 为了 (為了) means "for," not "in order to," as it can before verbs.
- C2b. 差不多什么事都愿意做 (差不多什麼事都願意做) "She was willing to do almost anything" (ISC 14-1: 2).
- C2c. ●做家事 zuò jiāshì "do housework" [PH]
- C2d. ●不得了 bùdéliǎo "be extreme" [sv]. This is often used as the complement of a verb followed by 得 -de, indicating the extent of something. In this sentence, 忙得不得了 mángde bùdéliǎo lit. means "busy to an extreme extent," or "extremely busy" in idiomatic English. Note that the second 得 is here pronounced dé, not de or děi; and that 了 is pronounced liǎo, not le.
- C2f. ●气 (氣) qì "be angry" [sv]. The sentence 张太太……气得好几天都不能上班 (張太太…… 氣得好幾天都不能上班) means "Mrs. Zhang got so angry that she couldn't go to work for quite a few days."
- C2g. ●不了 -bùliǎo "can't" (indicates inability to finish something successfully) [RE]. The phrase 什么事都做不了 (什麼事都做不了) means "(She) wasn't able to do anything." Note that 了 is here pronounced liǎo, not le.

Eating and Drinking (III)

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- Going to eat with friends or colleagues in various kinds of restaurants.
- 2. Conversations and rituals associated with eating that are common at formal dinner parties.
- 3. Chinese drinking customs.
- 4. Various kinds of foods, snacks, and beverages.
- 5. Differences between Chinese and American culture regarding hosting guests at home.
- 6. Tea drinking in China.
- 7. A Chinese joke.



Eating with a Colleague in a Restaurant



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

409 fi er also, and, yet, but

This character is itself a radical. Originally, $\overline{\mathbb{m}}$ was a pictograph of a beard, with the horizontal stroke — representing the mouth. Distinguish $\overline{\mathbb{m}}$ from 西 xī (35), 两 (兩) liǎng (99), 百 bǎi (113), $\overline{\mathbb{m}}$ miàn (168), and $\overline{\mathbb{n}}$ yǔ (279).

●而	ér	and, yet, but, moreover [cJ]
…而已	éryĭ	only; and that is all [РТ]

410 I qiĕ moreover, and

Radical is yī "one" (1). This character is itself a phonetic, e.g., in 姐 jiě (72). Distinguish 且 from rì (132), bái (328), 百 bǎi (113), 自 zì (379), 直 zhí (243), 真 zhēn (173), and 首 shǒu (225).

而且	érqiĕ	moreover, and, also [cJ]
不但…而且	búdànérqiĕ	not onlybut also [PT]

411 鱼(魚) yú fish

This character, which itself is a radical, is a pictograph of a fish. 鱼 (魚) is also a common radical at the left side of characters, typically indicating various types of fish. It can also sometimes serve as a phonetic, e.g., in 渔 (漁) yú "to fish."

鱼 (魚) yú fish [N] 一条鱼 (一條魚) yìtiáo yú a fish

●鱼肉 (魚肉) yúròu the flesh of a fish [N]

●金鱼 (金魚) jīnyú goldfish [N]

412 găi change; correct

Radical is $\not \succeq p\bar{u}$ "tap" or "strike," which on the right side of a character appears as $\not \succeq$. Phonetic is $\overrightarrow{\sqsubseteq}$ jĭ "self" (380). Distinguish $\not \succeq$ from $\overrightarrow{\sqsubseteq}$.

●改 gǎi change; correct [v]

●改错 (改錯) gǎicuò correct mistakes [vo]

改天 gǎitiān on some other day [тw]

改行 gǎiháng change one's line of work [vo] (Note that 行 is here

nranaunaad hána \

pronounced háng.)

413 务(務) wù be engaged in; matter, affair

Radical is 力 $\bf li$ "strength" (478). The other component is $\ \,$ $\,$ $\$

务 (務) Wù Wu [sn] 服务 (服務) fúwù serve [v]

yuán a person engaged in some field of activity; member

Radical is \square kǒu "mouth" (140). The other component is otin (otin) bèi "cowry shell."

服务员 (服務員) fúwùyuán attendant, waiter, waitress [N]

●专员 (專員) zhuānyuán specialist [N]
●学员 (學員) xuéyuán student [N]

New Words in ISC 16-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

便饭 (便飯)	biànfàn	simple meal [N]
刚才(剛才)	gāngcái	just now [TW]
过(過)	-guo	(expresses completed action) [P] (e.g., 你吃过饭了吗?[你吃過飯了嗎?] "Have you eaten?")
老	lăo	be tough (of food) [sv]
买单(買單)	măidān	"figure up the bill" [IE]; bill [N]
满…的(满…的)	mănde	quite [PT] (Note that some writers write this as 蛮…的 [蠻…的] mánde .)
请客(請客)	qĭngkè	invite; treat (someone to something) [vo]

一块 (一塊) yíkuài(r) together [A/PW] 早点 (早點) zǎodiǎn breakfast [N] 做东 (做東) zuòdōng serve as host [vo]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我刚才给校长打了一个电话,可是她不在。
- 二、服务员, 买单!也请你把这些菜包起来, 谢谢!
- 三、没关系, 你如果今天太忙的话, 我可以改天再来找你。
- 四、那家书店的服务非常好, 我很喜欢去那儿买书, 买报纸什么的。
- 五、服务员,请你把菜单拿来,好吗?我们已经等了很久了!
- 六、我的表姐以前在工厂里工作,后来改行了,现在做一点儿小买卖。
- 七、你不应该让白老师请你,她只是一位小学老师而已,又不是什么很有钱的人.
- 八、水里本来有两条金鱼,可是大的把小的给吃了,所以现在只有一条了。
- 九、我觉得一个老师应该常常改学生的错,不过学生不应该改别的学生的错。
- 十、王大海不但不喜欢吃肉, 而且也不喜欢吃鱼。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

台湾人: 吃过饭没有?

美国人:还没。刚才有点事。你呢?

台湾人: 我也还没吃。要不要一块儿去吃?

美国人: 好!

服务员: (在饭店)几位?

台湾人:两位。 (开始吃饭以后) 鱼怎么样?好不好吃?

美国人: 味道满好的, 就是肉老了一点。

台湾人: 买单。

美国人:多少钱?

台湾人: 不, 今天我请客。

美国人:还是我来吧。

台湾人:别客气。只是便饭而已。

美国人:不好意思,每次都让你请客。改天我做东吧。

=,

张东山: 你去过和平饭店吗?

关雨中: 我自己没去过,可是我表姐夫每次到北京来都住那家饭店。

张东山: 他觉得那里的服务怎么样?

关雨中: 他说服务不错, 还说他们的早点特别好吃!

张东山: 你表姐夫觉得那家的价钱怎么样?

关雨中: 他说和平饭店不但服务好, 而且价钱不贵。

张东山: 那太好了! 我下个月要定一桌酒席。那我大概就在和平饭店定吧。

三、

王先生: 何小姐, 你这里好像写错了一个字。

何小姐: 让我看看。

王先生: 是这个句子, 第二个字。

何小姐: 我看看。对不起, 我真的写错了! 我已经不习惯用手写中国字了!

我来改一下吧。

王先生: 好, 谢谢你。

何小姐:不客气,这是我的错。以后我会小心一点。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、有一次,一个美国人想请他的中国朋友王先生、王太太到家里来吃饭。他知道中国人讲话很客气,也听说中国话有时候前头加一个"小"字,那句话就更客气了。像"小姓"比"我姓"客气,"小儿"比"我儿子"客气,"小女"比"我女儿"客气。所以那个美国人把他在中文班上学的"请你们到家里来吃便饭"说成了"请你们到家里来吃小便饭"!当然,他的中国朋友听了,不太高兴。王先生还好,只是觉得有一点儿可笑,可是王太太真的生气了。
- 二、中国人的生活习惯跟美国不太一样。美国人请客,客人来了,先请他坐,然后主人大概会问客人: "Would you like something to drink?"就是"你想不想喝点儿什么?"。而在中国,如果你那样问一位中国客人,他就是想喝东西,大概也会说"不用了!"所以,如果请了中国客人到家里来,根本不用问他想不想喝什么,你就拿给他一些喝的就行了。

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 三 九 七 六 五 四 1 1 1 買後我 我沒 菜服 嗎服 的喜那 甚是你 學的覺 一把裡 賣來的 ? 務 歡家 可關 麼一不 白務 是剛 起員 條小本很位應 去書 以係 她才 喜海 生錯得 。改表 我員 那店 的,一 們, 來, 了的來 有小該 行姐 改 你 錯不個 兒的 天 買 。給有 錢學讓 已請 了以 在校 買服 再 謝單 魚不 。過老 吃雨 的老白 經你 , 前 長 現在 書務 喜 學師 了條 人師老 等把 ! 謝 打 歡 在工 非 找 生應 ,金 。而師 了菜 ! 也 了 買常 吃 做廠 很單 你 不該 所魚 已請 請 肉 應常 以, ,你 久 拿 報好 你 裡 個 點 該常 現可 又, 了 把 I 電 的 在是 不她 這 改改 而 ! 話 話 別學 只大 是只 此 且 小 好 麼很

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美 台 美 台 美 台 服 美 台 美 台 美 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 灣 務 或 人 員 人 人 : : . : : : : : : : : : 多 魚兩 客不 别 還 不 買 味 好 兒我 還 吃 少 單 去也 。好 客 是 點道 怎位 在 ! 沒 過 吃還 我 麼 改意 氣 錢 飯 今 0 滿 0 剛 樣へ 天思 來 沒 0 天 好 店 才 ? 開 吧 我 只 有 的 有 是 好始 做每 請 點 東次 客 不吃 便 位 就 事 好飯 吧都 飯 是 不 。你 肉 讓 而 要 已 你 呢 請 5 塊

三

王 張 關 張 關 張 先 東 雨 東 雨 東 雨 東 生 中 山 山 山 山 : 何 那那 錢他 你 別他 他 到我 你 不說 覺 我太 表 好說 去 小 京已 貴 姐 大好 姐 吃服 得 和 概了 平 夫 務 那 和 , 就! 都 你 裡 飯 不 住 這 在我 的 飯 店 錯 過 和下 那 店 裡 那 服 不 平個 務 好 但 還 怎 飯 像 飯月 的 說 服 寫 店要 店 他 務 定定 好 了 的 姐 ,

C. NARRATIVES 短文

E

先

生

好

謝

謝

你

小

姐

心不

這

是

我

的

錯

0

以

後

我

會

小

何

小

姐

來我我

改已看

一經看

吧習對

手

慣不

用起

寫我

中真

國的

字寫

了錯

! 了

我!

王何

小

姐

:

讓

我

看

個

先

生

:

是

這

個

句 看

子

個

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

桌

酒

席

而

且

價

早

點

特

夫

每

次

、有一次,一個美國人想請他的中 國朋友王先生、王太太到家裡來 吃飯。他知道中國人講話很客氣, 吃飯。他知道中國人 時 「小」字,那句話就更客氣了。像 「小性」比「我兒子」客氣,「小女」比「我兒子」客氣,所以那個美國人 中國朋友聽了,不太高興。王先 生還好,只是覺得有一點兒可笑, 中國人的生活習慣跟美國不太一 中國朋友聽了,不太高興。王先 生還好,只是覺得有一點兒可笑, 可是王太太真的生氣了。 估tink?」就是「你想不想喝點兒甚 一位中國客人,他就是想喝東西, 大概也會說「不用了!」所以, 也就说了「請你們到家 不太高興。王先 人:「Would you like something to 人:「Would you like something to 人:「Would you like something to 人。所及即國客人,他就是想喝東西, 全者他一些喝的就行了。

Notes 注解

- A8. 大的把小的给吃了 (大的把小的给吃了) lit. "The big one took the little one and ate it," or in idiomatic English, "The big one ate the little one." As you learned in ISC 15-3: 1C, the coverb 把 serves to move the object of the verb to a position before the verb and indicates that the object is being disposed of or handled in a certain way. Placing a 给 (給) before the main verb, as here, is optional but common. The 给 (給) strengthens the sense that something is being taken and handled in a certain way (here, that the little fish has been eaten).
- **B3.** Because Chinese people now often write characters by computer or mobile device, they are beginning to forget how to write the less common characters by hand.
- C1a. 像 here means "like." The writer is giving examples of Chinese expressions where adding the character 小 at the beginning renders the expression politer or more modest. The expression 小姓 is rarely used nowadays.
- C1b. 把A说成B (把A說成B) lit. "take A and say it so that it becomes B."
- C2a. 他就是想喝东西,大概也会说"不用了!"(他就是想喝東西,大概也會說"不用了!") lit. "Even if he wants to drink something, he'll probably say, 'It's not necessary!" The pattern 就是……也 means "even if" or "even."
- C2b. 你就拿给他一些喝的就行了 (你就拿給他一些喝的就行了) "Just bring him some things to drink and that will do." 喝的 here means 喝的东西 (喝的東西) "things to drink" or "beverages."



"Jìnzhĭ Diàoyú, Bŭyú" (sign in Taipei park)

A Dinner Party at Home



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

415 替 tì replace, substitute; for

Radical is 曰 **yuē** "speak." At the top of this character are two 夫 **fū** "men." As a mnemonic, remember: "two men" 夫夫 "speak" 曰 "for" 替 someone.

替 tì for [cv]

416 接 jiē receive, meet, welcome

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which at the left side of a character is written as ‡ and is referred to colloquially as 提手 tíshǒu "raised hand." Phonetic is 妾 qiè "concubine."

接风 (接風) jiēfēng give a welcome dinner [vo]

替…接风 (替…接風) tì...jiēfēng give a welcome dinner for...[PT]

●接电话 (接電話) jiē diànhuà receive or take a phone call [PH]

417 敢(敢) găn dare; be bold

Radical is 支 pū "tap" or "strike," which on the right side of a character is written 攵. This character is itself a phonetic, e.g., in the character 橄 as it is used in the word 橄榄 (橄欖) gǎnlǎn "olive."

敢(敢) gǎn dare [V/AV]

不敢当 (不敢當) bù gǎn dāng "don't dare accept" [IE]

Note that the difference between the official simplified form and the official traditional form of this character does not show up in all fonts; in some fonts, they both look the same.

418 Ilàng capacity, amount

Radical is 里 lǐ "mile" (163). The other components are \Box yuē "speak" and $\overline{}$ yī "one" (1). The whole character sometimes occurs as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in the traditional character 糧 as it is used in 糧食 liángshí "grain" or "cereal." Distinguish 量 from 里 lǐ (163).

海量 hǎiliàng lit. "ocean capacity" (meaning a great capacity for

drinking liquor) [IE]

雨量 yǔliàng rainfall [N]

●酒量 jiǔliàng capacity for drinking alcohol [N]

419 🏋 shēn deep

Radical is 水 shuǐ "water" (333), which is written ? and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點 水) sāndiǎn shuǐ "three drops of water" when it occurs at the left-hand side of a character. The right-hand component of the character is the phonetic, which is usually pronounced **-en** or **-an**.

深 shēn be deep; dark (of colors) [sv] 深色 shēnsè dark in color, dark-colored [AT]

深水 shēn shuǐ deep water

420 A shí rock, stone

This character is itself a radical. Distinguish 石 from 右 yòu (166).

石 Shí Shi [sn] 石头 (石頭) shítou stone [n] 一块石头 (一塊石頭) yíkuài shítou a stone

New Words in ISC 16-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

不如	bù rú	not as good as; it would be better to $[PT]$
海河	hăi	ocean, sea [N]
河	hé	river [N]
湖	hú	lake [N]
回到	huídào	come back to [v+pv]
回来 (回來)	huílai	come back [RC]
回去	huíqu	go back [RC]
随意(隨意)	suíyì	at will; as one pleases; "as you like" [IE]

0

Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、"简开石先生,简开石先生,请快到前面来接电话!"
- 二、那位法国老太太的先生死了以后,她天天都穿深色的衣服。
- 三、小石, 你先别着急, 那件事我替你办就是了, 你可以放心。
- 四、时间不早了, 而且家里还有好多事得做, 不如早点儿回去吧!
- 五、林夫人刚回国, 我们星期六晚上替她跟她先生接风, 你能参加吗?
- 六、我们学校前边的那条河很深,不过好像水里头没有什么鱼,只有很多 石头!
- 七、我每到一个新地方,都喜欢随意走走看看,多认识几个本地人,交几个新朋友。
- 八、一个学习外语的学生如果不敢开口说话, 那么他一定学不好。
- 九、中国东边和南方各省雨量都很多,比较起来北方雨量就少得多,所以中国北方各省都特别干。
- 十、王大海不喝酒,可是他爸爸很会喝,王老先生的酒量根本就是海量。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-,

白先生 : 今天我们替 Larry 接风。Larry, 我们都好高兴你这次回到

台湾来了!大家也都是老朋友。来,我们敬 Larry!

美国主客: 谢谢, 谢谢, 实在不敢当。

石先生 : Larry, 来, 我敬你!干杯怎么样?

美国主客:量浅,量浅。你干,我随意吧。

石先生 : 你是海量!来,干杯,干杯!

美国主客: 恭敬不如从命。那我先干为敬了!

二、

文老师: 石老师, 后天您有什么事吗?

石老师: 我想一想, 后天是星期五, 应该没什么事吧。

文老师: 我们要替张老师接风, 您能来参加吗?

石老师:没问题。几点钟?在什么地方?

文老师: 首都饭店。时间还没决定, 不过大概是六点或是六点一刻。

我明天再给您打电话通知您时间, 行吗?

石老师:行。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我的女朋友金金已经二十二岁了,可是她还不会开车。她不会开车是因为她根本不敢学!金金今年七月要开始在一家离她家很远的公司工作,每天上下班都需要开车,因为从她家到那家公司根本没有公共汽车,当然也不可能每天都打的。金金也知道,她得在两、三个月之内学会开车。我刚才跟她说,不如早一点开始学,别再等了。现在已经四月了,她还没开始学,我真替她着急!
- 二、老简去了加拿大好几个月,刚回北京,所以我星期六晚上替他接风。 我打算请他跟我们公司的一些同事到阳明饭店吃饭。阳明饭店刚开 不久,听说满高级的,他们的山东菜做得特别好。当然,我们一定会 喝不少酒,我已经通知了饭店多为我们准备一些酒。老简本来就是海 量,所以我想没有人敢跟他比酒量。我叫大家那天晚饭后千万别开 车,打的比较好,因为我们都知道,"酒后不开车,开车不喝酒!"
- 三、我姓石,石京生。我是北京人,今年二十六岁,在美国西北大学留学, 我的专业是比较文学。我原来打算今年七月回中国看看我的家人和 我的男朋友,可是因为七月的机票很难定,也太贵,而且我在这边的



"Běiyī Bǔxíbān" (Beiyi Cram School, Taipei)

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 五 三 交走我 很過我 替林 到 幾走每 她夫 多好們 說個 得間 先海 天法 個看到 石像學 跟人 做不 就, 面 是你 都國 來 她剛 頭水校 看 方北和 了先 穿老 ! 裡前 先回 的喝 接 朋 不 個 電 生國 深太 酒酒 如 方南 友 語 别 頭邊 色太 雨方 話 接 沒的 認地 簡 的的 風 可 ! 且 量 有那 方 開 以 衣先 就 生 石 回 别 放 服 裡 少 先 生 了 多 不 加六 , 以 嗎晚 好 敢 請 後 開 有不 ? 上 快

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美 石 美 石 美 白 或 先 或 先 或 先 主 主 主 生 生 生 客 客 客 : 乾 敬是灣高風 我量 不謝 杯 先敬 隨淺 敢 是 謝 怎 意 當 朋 , 海 吧 麼 量 謝 量里 樣 大次我 ! 從 了 来,我们都 回到都 敬 你 實 在 們都台好接 那

老

師

石 老 師 行 行打刻是沒首 在沒 嗎電。六決都 ?話我點定飯 通明或,店 知天是不。

石 文 老 老 老 師 師 師 風我 麼星我 什石 甚問 '們 事期想 麼題 吧五一 要 參張 後 天 您



Jinshan Pawnshop (当[當] dàng "to pawn")

C. NARRATIVES 短文

間

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

有

大很風意飯前邊可打美我 好酒酒會級事六老 她不她共班月車我 家清,走,天的是算國姓,量。喝的到晚簡 還如得汽都要。的都,氣走都剛事因今西石因。老不,陽上去沒早在車需開她女 都,氣走都剛事因今西石 特我溫看是好兒為年北,為我簡少他明替了 我叫本酒們飯他加 始點、當開在會友 別們正看中是還七七大石 高在好。國七很月月學京 們大來,的店接拿 興湖,那菜月多的回留生都家就我山吃風大 知那是已東飯。好 我學月不因離是已 !裡不天,四,機中學。 還冷有好號所票國,我道天海經菜。我幾 看也太吃,以很看我是,晚量通做陽打個 到不陽極我我難看的北 酒飯,知得明算月 好熱,了跟最定我專京後後所了特飯請, 多。天,一後,的業人不干以飯別店他剛 大湖氣然些決也家是, 開萬我店好剛跟回 大看特後中定太人比今 車別想多。開我北小起別一國十十八年 開東有我然不 曲有我然久公, 我文二 小來好塊同二, 的很。兒學月而的學十 ,人們,,司所 不打敢準我聽的以 魚深,但那是我们是我们是我们是我们是我们的男朋友,的男朋友,们是我们了中心。我原來,但此小 的跟備們說一我 酒 比他一一滿些星 來在 一較比些定高同期

三

開一雨,要始不朋 學開三然車一開金 ,始個也,家車金 真,之可為她因經 替別內能從家為二 她再學每她很她十 等會天家遠根二 了開都到的本歲 。車打那公不了 現。的家司敢, 在我。公工學可 已剛金司作!是 經才金根,金她 四跟也本每金還 月她知沒天今不 有上年會 了說道

Notes 注解

- A7. The 每 in this sentence means "every time that" or "whenever."
- A8. ●开口 (開口) kāikŏu "open one's mouth" [vo]
- A10. 王老先生的酒量根本就是海量 "Old Mr. Wang's capacity for drinking alcohol is basically unlimited." 根本 here means "basically," "fundamentally," or "completely."
- B1a. ◆敬 jìng "toast" or "drink to" [v]
- **B1b.** ◆干杯 (乾杯) gānbēi "drink a toast" [vo]; "Cheers!", "Bottoms up!" [iɛ]. Literally, this means "dry cup." The character 杯 is fairly common and is used to write bēi "cup" or "glass." For the character 杯, note the radical 木 mù "tree" or "wood," which is an indication that in ancient times some cups were made of wood. The phonetic in 杯 is 禾 bù (63).
- B1c. ◆量浅 (量淺) liàngqiǎn lit. "capacity (for drinking alcohol) is shallow" [١Ε]
- **B1d.** ◆恭敬不如从命 (恭敬不如從命) **gōngjìng bù rú cóng mìng** "showing respect is not as good as following orders" [**EX**]
- **B1e.** ◆先干为敬 (先乾為敬) **xiān-gān-wéi-jìng** lit. "drink bottoms up before someone else to show respect" [EX]. Note that 为 (為) is here pronounced **wéi**, not **wèi** as in 为什么 (為什麼) **wèishenme** "why".
- C1a. 在两、三个月之内 (在兩、三個月之內) "within two or three months." The use of 在 at the beginning of a time expression followed by 之内 (之內) or 以内 (以內) is optional but not uncommon (ISC 13-4: 6C, 21-4: 6A).
- C1b. 学会 (學會) is a compound verb that literally means "study something to the point where you can do it." A shorter translation would be just "learn."
- C1c. 别再等了 (別再等了) "Don't wait any longer."
- C2a. 老简本来就是海量 (老簡本來就是海量) "It goes without saying that Old Jian has a great capacity for drinking alcohol." In ISC 13-3 you learned the moveable adverb 本来 (本來) with the meaning "originally." In this sentence, 本来 (本來) is used with the meaning "of course" or "it goes without saying that."
- C2b. 没有人敢跟他比酒量 (沒有人敢跟他比酒量) lit. "Nobody dares to compete with him in the capacity for drinking alcohol."
- C2c. □□, which you have learned in the sense of "call" or "be named," here means "tell" or "ask" someone to do something.
- C2d. ●千万 (千萬) qiānwàn "by all means" or "be sure to" (lit. "thousand ten thousand") [A]. 千万别开车 (千萬別開車) means "By all means don't drive" or "Whatever you do, don't drive."
- C3a. ●机票 (機票) jīpiào "airline ticket" [N]
- C3b. 定 "order, book". Some writers would write this word with the character 订 (訂). Cf. IWC 14-3, Note A7.
- C3c. ●清 qīng "be clear" [sv]
- C3d. 大大小小的鱼 (大大小小的魚) "big and little fish"

A Dinner Party at Home (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

421 预 (預) yù prepare; in advance

Radical is 页 (頁) yè "page." Phonetic is 予 yǔ "give." Distinguish 预 (預) from traditional 頭 tóu (120).

预备 (預備) yùbei prepare [v]

●预备中学 (預備中學) yùbei zhōngxué preparatory high school, prep school [PH]

预报 (預報) yùbào forecast [N]

天气预报 (天氣預報) tiānqi yùbào weather forecast [PH]

422 爱(爱) ài love, like

Radical of the simplified form is 爪 **zhuǎ** "claw," which certainly does not seem very "loving," but fortunately the character for "friend" (友 yǒu) appears at the bottom. Radical of the traditional form is 心 xīn "heart" (262), indicating that an emotion is involved. Distinguish 爱 (愛) from 要 yào (137) and 受 shòu (367).

爱 (愛) ài love, like [v]

爱人 (愛人) **àiren** spouse, husband, wife [N]

可爱 (可愛) kě'ài be loveable, cute [sv]

●最爱 (最愛) zuì'ài favorite [N]

bù step, pace

Radical is \perp **zhǐ** "stop." This character is a picture of a right foot and a left foot taking one "step" after another. Distinguish \not from simplified \not **suì** (107).

步 **bù** step, pace [M]

走一步 zǒu yíbù walk one step, take a step

先走一步 xiān zǒu yíbù lit. "take one step first," meaning leave

before others [IE]

●饭后百步走,活到九十九 Fàn hòu bǎi bù zǒu, "Walk a hundred paces after (飯後百步走,活到九十九) huódào jiǔshijiǔ. eating and live to be 99." [EX]

数(數) shù number, figure; several

多数 (多數) duōshù majority [N]

大多数 (大多數) dà duōshù great majority [PH]

数学 (數學) shùxué mathematics [N]

●算数 (算數) suànshù count [vo]

●岁数 (歲數) suìshu age (of a person) [N]

●您多大岁数了? Nín duō dà suìshu le? "How old are you?"

(您多大歲數了?)

紧(緊) jǐn tight, tense

Radical is \mathfrak{U} (絲) $\mathbf{s}\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ "silk," which is here at the bottom of the character. The sense is that something has been tied "tightly" 紧 (緊) with "silk" \mathfrak{U} (絲).

紧张 (緊張) jǐnzhāng be nervous, intense [sv]

要紧 (要緊) yàojǐn be important [sv]

不要紧 (不要緊) bú yàojǐn be unimportant; "never mind" [IE]

a (particle that softens the sentence)

Radical is \square kǒu "mouth" (140). This radical is referred to colloquially as \square 字旁 kǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character \square ." Phonetic is \square **ā**.

a (softens the sentence) [P]

你好啊! Nǐ hǎo a! "How are you?" 慢走啊! Màn zǒu a! "Take it easy!"

New Words in ISC 16-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

便当(便當)	biàndāng	box lunch [N]
不要客气(不要客氣)	búyào kèqi	"don't be polite" [IE]
吃到	chīdào	succeed in eating [RC]
够 (夠)	gòu	reach (by stretching) [v]
够得着 (夠得著)	gòudezháo	be able to reach [RC]
够不着 (夠不著)	gòubuzháo	be unable to reach [RC]
慢用	màn yòng	"take your time eating" [IE]
内人(內人)	nèirén	one's wife (polite) [N]
特地	tèdì	especially [A]
为 (爲)	wèi	for [cv]
味儿 (味兒)	wèir	smell, fragrance, aroma [N]
小吃	xiăochī	snack [N]
SV+ 得很	SV + de hĕn	very SV [PT] (e.g., 我最近忙得很。"I've been very busy recently.")

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、你如果现在不方便跟我讲话,不要紧,我可以改天再来。
- 二、不好意思, 我有一点儿急事, 得先走一步, 各位请慢用!
- 三、听说你的数学特别好, 我能问你一个跟数学有关系的问题吗?
- 四、王老先生,您好啊?好久不见了!能不能问您个问题,您今年多大岁数了?
- 五、你别紧张!一步一步地来吧。你要是太紧张的话,什么事儿都办 不好。
- 六、天气预报说今天会下毛毛雨,不过天气预报只是预报而已,不一 定准!
- 七、这是我爱人特地为您预备的小吃和菜,您爱吃什么就吃什么吧,不要客气了!
- 八、我姐姐、姐夫有一个儿子,今年四岁,非常可爱,因为他是牛年生的,所以大家都叫他"牛牛"。

九、在中国请客的时候,主人常常给客人拿菜;可是大多数美国人不喜欢你给他拿菜,他们习惯自己拿。

十、王大海, 你快来接电话, 校长说他有一件非常要紧的事找你!

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国主客: 您今天预备了这么多菜啊!

白太太 : 没什么菜, 实在简单得很。不要客气!来, 这是糖醋里脊,

我记得你最爱吃的。

美国主客: 味儿真香啊! 真是两、三年没吃到了。

白太太 : 我也记得你爱吃辣的。我特地为你做了麻辣杂拌儿。你够

得着吧?我给你加一点儿。

美国主客:够得着,够得着,我自己来。

林先生:对不起,我们有一点儿事,得先走一步。我跟内人敬各位!

各位慢用。

二、

谢国平: 表姐, 你们家住在哪儿啊?

李爱文: 我们住在通县, 在北京城的东边儿。

谢国平: 你们家都有什么人啊?

李爱文: 我们一家三口。我和你表姐夫, 还有一个女儿。

谢国平: 表姐, 您在哪儿工作啊?

李爱文: 我在一家进出口公司做事。

谢国平: 表姐夫呢?

李爱文: 你表姐夫原来在一家工厂工作。因为太忙, 所以他最近改行了,

现在做点儿小买卖。

三、

外国学生: 老师, 请问, "饭后百步走, 活到九十九" 这句话是什么意思? 中文老师: 这句话的意思就是吃饭以后应该多走一走, 才会活到比较大的岁数。也就是说, 要是你吃了饭以后都不动, 就会老得很快, 可能活不到很大的年纪。

四、

小学老师: 你跟你弟弟写的作文《我的狗》怎么完全一样?是不是抄的?明明: 不是抄的。老师, 您知道, 我们写的是同一条狗啊!

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我的同屋小东今年大三,不过他才十七岁。他十一岁就开始上一个预备中学,十四岁就进大学了。小东的数学特别好,他妈妈说他两岁还不太会说话,可是已经会算数了!不过除了数学以外,其他很多事小东都不会。他不敢开车,坐别人开的车他也很紧张。他也不会做饭,更不会做家务什么的。穿衣服他也不知道什么衣服跟什么衣服一起穿好看。他走路想数学,吃饭也想数学,每天只想数学,因为数学就是他的最爱。我想小东的头和别人的头一定不太一样。不过,小东是个好人,对同学很好,他愿意替我们做我们的数学作业!

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 三 六 五 七 四 因我 甚這 是天 話你 個王 關聽 緊大 己大中 為姐 麼是 預氣 ,别 問老 係說 請好 天如 拿多國 什緊 的海 他姐就我 報預 題先 的你 慢意 事, 是 吃爱 而報麼張 ,生 問的 用思 數請 來現 牛 事! 您, 題數 找你 美客 甚人 已說 。在 年夫 麼特 兒一 今您 嗎學 你快 國的 我 不 生 吧地 不天 都步 年好 ! 來 人時 有 方 的 辨一 多啊 一會 不候 接 别 便 個 不然 定下 不步 大? 雷 喜, 點 跟 好 要預 好地 歲好 手 話 歡主 兒 , 我 客備 以 ! 數久 毛 我 急 講 大今 了不 給常 氣的 校 吧 事 雨 能 話 了小 他常 見 長 0 問 , , , 都四 拿給 說 不 你 了 你 得 不 叫歲 菜客 他 過 要 ! 先 要 他 是 有 天 能 個 走 緊 他拿 太 氣 不 跟 , 緊 您 預 能 數 步 我 非 報 張 問 可 常 口 只 的 您 有 各 以

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

李

爱

文

所你

以表

他姐

最夫

近原

改來

行在

了一

,家

現工

在廠

做工

點作

兒。

小因

買為

賣太

忙

謝

或

平

表

姐

夫

呢

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 李 謝 謝 李 謝 林 美 白 白 美 愛 爱 或 愛 或 或 或 或 或 先 太 太 文 生 主 文 平 文 平 平 主 太 主 太 客 客 : : : 我 我對 辣我 這沒 我 表 女我 你 表 : 在 兒們 們 跟不 夠 雜也 味 是什 您 姐 們 姐 內起 拌記 家 得 兒 糖麼 今 住 , 兒得 都 家 您 家 在 著 真 醋菜 天 你 敬我 進 在 = 有 們 香 裡, 預 诵 你 各們 你 脊質 甚 夠 啊 備 出 哪 縣 家 爱 U 夠吃 ,在 得 麼 1 了 口 兒 > 住 位 0 有 得 我簡 公 人 在 在 著 這 工 我 辣 著 記單 司 作 啊 北 哪 是 麼 的 和 吧? 得得 位 多 京 兩 做 啊 兒 你 兒 慢 自己 你很 事 城 我 菜 呵可 表 事 我特 用 最 的 啊 姐 給 爱 年 東 ! 夫 你 吃要 邊 加 的客 兒 還 走 到 有 ! 了 步 個

> > 小

四

明 明 學 老 狗道不 師 啊,是 !我抄 是麼作你 們的 抄完文跟 的全《你 寫 0 ?一我 的老 樣的弟 是師 ?狗弟 同, 是》寫 一然 不怎的 條知

師 紀能就了就比走是這 甚九後老 。活會飯是較一吃句 不老以說大走飯話 到得後,的,以 很快人都不是太會 的,你。活該思

學 生 麼十百師 意九步 句,問 話活一

是到飯

外

或

文

老

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

學,十四歲就進大學了。大四人,對同學很好,也不過他才十七歲。他十一不過他才十七歲。他十一不過他才,對同學和別人的頭中也很多事小東的數學特別好,他與是個好人,對同學學別外,其他也不會做家務什麼的。穿起那學,每天只想數學以外,其他也不會做家務什麼的。實力,也不會做家務什麼的。實力,也不會的頭一人,對同學很好,也們是不過好人,對同學很好,也們是不是個好人,對同學很好,也們說一個預備中不會的頭子,也們看了。

Notes 注解

- A3. ●A跟B有关系 (A跟B有關係) A gēn B yǒu guānxi "A is related to B" [PT]
- B1a. ◆糖醋里脊 (糖醋裡脊) Tángcù Lǐjī "Sweet and Sour Pork" [PH]. 糖 means "sugar" or "candy" and 醋 means "vinegar," so this refers to a sweet and sour sauce. 里脊 (裡脊) means "tenderloin" or "filet."
- B1b. ◆辣 là "be peppery hot" [sv]
- B1c. ◆麻辣杂拌儿 (麻辣雜拌兒) Málà Zábànr "Sesame Hot Spicy Medley" [PH]. 麻辣 means "peppery and spicy," while 杂半儿 (雜半兒) refers to a mixture of something.
- B1d. ◆敬 jìng "toast" or "drink to" [v]
- B3b. 活不到很大的年纪 (活不到很大的年紀) "won't be able to live to an old age"
- B4a. 作文 zuòwén "essay" or "composition" [N]
- **B4b.** ◆狗 gǒu "dog" [N]. There are two common measure words for 狗. One is 条 (條), which is the measure word used in this narrative, since dogs are long and "strip-like." Snakes, fish, and crocodiles also use 条 (條) as a measure word. The other measure word for 狗 is 只 (隻) **zhī**, which is the measure word used for many animals.
- B4c. ◆∜ chāo "copy" [V]
- B4d. ●同 tóng "the same" [sp]. 同一条狗 (同一條狗) means "the same dog."
- C1a. ●进大学 (進大學) jìn dàxué "enter a university" [PH]
- C1b. ●家务 (家務) jiāwù "household duties" or "housework" [N]
- C1c. ●头 (頭) tóu "head" [N]

A Dinner Party at Home (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

427 代 dài su

dài substitute for, take the place of; generation

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written \uparrow when occurring at the left-hand side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character \downarrow ." This whole character can serve as a phonetic, e.g., in the character ٰ as in the word 袋子 **dàizi** "bag." Distinguish 代 from 什 **shén** (127) and 他 **tā** (55).

代 dài substitute for, take the place of [v/cv]

以A代B yǐ A dài B take A to substitute for B; substitute A for B [PT]

以汽水代酒 yǐ qìshuǐ dài jiǔ "substitute soda for liquor"

●代替 dàitì replace, substitute [v]

428 课 (課) kè lesson; class

Radical is 讠(言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character言." Phonetic is 果 guǒ "fruit" or "result" (334). A "lesson" 课 (課) involves the use of言 "words" of instruction to bear fruit and produce results 果. Distinguish 课 (課) from 果 guǒ (334).

......

课 (課)	kè	class; lesson [N]
上课 (上課)	shàngkè	have class [vo]
下课 (下課)	xiàkè	end class [vo]
中文课 (中文課)	Zhōngwén kè	Chinese class
第一课 (第一課)	dìyīkè	lesson one
代课 (代課)	dáikė	teach in place of someone [vo]
代课老师 (代課老師)	dàikè lăoshī	substitute teacher [РН]

429 馆(館) guǎn establishment; hotel; restaurant

Radical is 食 **shí** "eat" (341), which is written as 饣(食) when occurring at the left-hand side of a character as a radical. The colloquial name for this radical is 食字旁 **shízìpáng** "side made up of the character 食." Phonetic is 官 **guān** "official" (589). Where else would an "official" 官 "eat" 食 than in an expensive "restaurant" 馆 (館)?

饭馆(飯館)	fànguăn(r)	restaurant [PW]
馆子(館子)	guănzi	restaurant [PW]
●川菜馆子 (川菜館子)	Chuāncài guănzi	Sichuan-style restaurant [РН]

430 虽(雖) suī/suí though, although

Radical of the simplified character is \square kŏu "mouth" (140). Radical of the traditional character is $\textcircled{\pm}$ **zhuī** "short-tailed bird." Most mainland Chinese speakers pronounce this character **suī**, while most Taiwanese speakers pronounce it **suí**.

虽然(雖然)	suīrán	although, though [РТ]
虽然…可是… (雖然…可是…)	suīránkěshi	although, though [PT]
虽然…但是… (雖然…但是…)	suīrándànshi	although, though [PT]

431 A chá tea

Radical is 艸 cǎo "grass," which is written 草 when it occurs as an independent word (456). When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, as here, the "grass" radical is written as $^{++}$ and is then known as 草字 头 (草字頭) cǎozìtóu "top made up of the character 草." The rest of the character 茶 consists of 人 rén (30), which here looks like a big canopy or cover, over 木 mù "tree." "Tea" 茶 is picked from a "tree"-like 木 plant and is dried under a "cover" 人 before being sold and brewed. Distinguish 茶 from 菜 cài (327).

茶	chá	tea [N]
喝茶	hēchá	drink tea [vo]
以茶代酒	yĭ chá dài jiŭ	"substitute tea for liquor" [EX]
●茶馆(茶館)	cháguăn(r)	teahouse rpwi

432 乐(樂) lè cheerful, happy, joyful

Radical of the simplified form is \int **piě** "left-falling stroke." Radical of the traditional form is the pictograph π **mù** "tree." Distinguish simplified π from simplified π dong (29) and simplified π chē (224).

快乐 (快樂) kuàilè be happy [sv]

生日快乐 (生日快樂) shēngrì kuàilè "birthday happiness," happy birthday [PH]

可乐 (可樂) kělè cola [N]

可口可乐 (可口可樂) Kěkǒu Kělè Coca-Cola® [N]

百事可乐 (百事可樂) Bǎishì Kělè Pepsi-Cola® [N]

New Words in ISC 16-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

比不上	bĭbushàng	not be able to compare [RC]
家常菜	jiācháng cài	home-style cooking [PH]
开水 (開水)	kāishuĭ	boiled water [N]
老	lăo	very [A] (e.g., 大老远地来 (大老遠地來) "come from very far away")
门前清(門前清)	ménqiánqīng	lit. "clear before the door," finish drinking alcoholic
		beverages before leaving [EX]
七喜色香味	Qīxĭ	Seven-Up® [N]
色香味	sè xiāng wèi	color, aroma, and taste [РН]
水	shuĭ	water [N]
汽水	qìshuĭ(r)	soda [N]
算	suàn	consider as; be considered as being [v]
以	уĭ	take [cv] (e.g., 以茶代酒 "substitute tea for liquor")

💿 Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、张老师明天有一点事不能来上课, 所以何老师要替她代课。
- 二、小李虽然长得好看,也很有钱,可是他一点儿都不快乐。

三、可口可乐和百事可乐的味道不完全一样,哪个是哪个,你喝得出来吗?四、喝水要紧,每个人都需要喝水;喝酒、喝茶、喝汽水都不能代替喝水!

- 五、你上完了这一课,就应当已经认识四百三十二个中国字了。这些字, 你都认识吗?
- 六、有句话说: "有太阳的地方就有中国人,有中国人的地方就有中国饭馆儿。"
- 七、在中国,喝茶已经成了一种生活习惯,人们不但自己喝茶,而且常请客人喝。
- 八、我的中文课应该是九点上课, 九点五十下课, 可是老师常常十点左右 才下课。
- 九、妈妈, 生日快乐! 你是我们最爱的妈妈, 在我们的心里没有谁能代替你!
- 十、王大海最近常常问自己,什么才是人生中最要紧的事?他虽然长这么 大,但是对这个问题还是不太清楚。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

白先生:各位大老远地来,我得感谢你们。来,喝酒!就算是门前 清吧!

美国主客: 我已经喝得太多了,实在是不能再喝了。我以茶代酒好吧。 (过了一会儿)白太太,您做的菜真是"色、香、味"全有。 馆子也比不上!

白太太 : 哪里, 哪里, 一点儿家常菜而已。不过呢, 菜虽然不怎么样, 您还是要多吃一点儿!

美国主客:实在是太好吃了。

白先生 :各位喝点儿茶,吃点儿水果!

_

纪先生:老班,你从南京大老远地来看我,你自己又那么忙,真不好 意思。

班先生: 哪儿的话。你算是我最好的朋友, 我再忙也应当来看你啊!

三、

服务员: 您想喝什么?

温校长: 有汽水吗, 您这儿?

服务员:有。我们有百事可乐,也有七喜,您喝哪个?

温校长: 有没有可口可乐?

服务员:对不起,没有可口可乐,只有百事可乐跟七喜。百事可乐行吗?温校长:好吧,那我就喝百事可乐。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、喝茶



"Cházhăn" (Tea Exhibit; sign in Kuala Lumpur)

和我一起上茶馆去, 我们两个人喝喝茶、说说话, 你觉得怎么样?

二、劝酒

中国人请客的时候有"劝酒"的习惯。他们觉得主人,特别是男主人,应该劝客人多喝酒,这样做他们才是好主人,这样做请客才会比较有意思。所以你如果有机会参加中国人的酒席,你会常听到像"您多喝一点儿!","您怎么喝得那么少?","我敬您","干杯!","您干,我随意","您海量","我先干为敬","门前清"这样的话。不过,大多数的外国人很不喜欢"劝酒"的习惯。老外觉得我要喝酒是我的事,我自己决定,用不着你来叫我怎么做。如果中国人劝你喝酒而你不想喝,该怎么办呢?

你当然可以改喝一点儿别的,像茶、汽水、开水什么的。在这个时候,你可以这样说:"您随意吧,我以茶代酒。"这个意思就是说你要用茶来代替酒,这样说也很客气,而且你就可以不用喝酒。当然你也可以说"我以汽水代酒"或"我以开水代酒"。

如果你不想喝酒的话,你还可以笑着说"对不起,但是我从小就受不了酒的味道";或者你可以说你的大夫不让你喝酒;或者你的先生、太太、男朋友、女朋友不要你喝酒;或者你还太小,年纪还没满21岁,所以根本不可以喝酒。最要紧的是,不要不敢或是不好意思说你不想喝酒,特别是如果你还得开车。要不然你开车出事了,对谁都不好,是不是?

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 四 三 • 下五我 喝喝 可 媽媽 人在 有有 都四你 他小 樣 中句 茶水 是中大 課十的 認百上 口 識三完 不國 、要 國話 哪可 我生 人說 嗎 喝緊 這要最 但 個樂 7 的 是和 自喝 個緊近 汽 要天 問 的常 哪百 地 水每 的快 個 喝已 都個 心樂 是老 個事 常 她一 事 該 裡! 不人 代點 2 問 口 或 沒你 你 師 有 的 自 他 常九 就 而了 有是 也 不 雖 誰我 應 且一 國方 能 喝喝 能 出 飯就 有 上 兒中 課 你 或 認 的 右九 可 ! 酒 你識 媽 所

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

白 白 先 或 先 或 生 主 生 多怎不點哪 了我 比味的兒好喝 在吃麼過兒裡 不一 一吧了 前 得位 文。我以茶小)。(過了一 自太太,你 自太太,你 是是「色、 是是「色、 是是「色、 是是「色、 是是「色、 是是「色、 是一樣呢家 上全真白。 清喝 太點,,常 吧酒 果點 好 兒您菜 电 ! 還雖 ! 兒 吃 茶 了

溫 服溫 服 溫 服 班 紀 校務 校 務 校 務 先 先 員 長 長 員 生 生 長 員 : : : : • : 看的哪 真來老 事只對 好 有 有有 有 您 可有不 沒 七。 汽 想 你朋兒 不看班 PP 啊友的 好我, 樂百起 有 喜我 水喝 那 意:你 行事 嗎 可 '們 甚 ! , 話 我 嗎可沒 思你 口 您有 麼 我。 從 , 就 樂有 可 。自 喝百 再你 您 己又那 喝 哪事 樂 這 忙算 跟可 百 個可 也是 事 喜可 應我 口 當最 也 來好 地

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

茶、說說話,你覺得怎麼樣? 一起上茶館去,我們兩個人喝喝 明在早上起來,第一件事就是一定要喝一 明在早上起來,第一件事就是一定要喝一 是不如茶好喝。朋友,你現在忙不忙? 了,我覺得沒有甚麼茶都喝,不過台灣的東 我現在早上起來,第一件事就是一定要喝一 里茶。上了大學就愛上了茶館,常常和幾個 到了國中開始喜歡喝香片,到了高中改為喝 到了國中開始喜歡喝香片,到了高中改為喝 到了國中開始喜歡喝茶,喝著,喝著,一直 像茶、汽水、開水什麼的。在這個時候,你可以這樣說:「您隨是說你要用茶來代替酒,這個意吧,我以茶代酒。當然你也可以說「我以茶水可以說你要用茶來代替酒,這樣說可以笑著說「對不起,但是我你可以笑著說「對不起,但是我你可以笑著說「對不起,但是我從可以笑著說「對不起,但是我從可以笑著說「對不起,但是我從可以笑著說「對不起,但是我從可以笑著說「對不起,但是我從可以沒有。最要緊的是,不要不動以喝酒。最要緊的是,不要不動以喝酒。最要緊的是,不要不動以喝酒。最要緊的是,不要不動以過過一點兒別的,就是不好意思說你不想喝酒的話,你還是不好意思說你不想喝酒的話,你還是不好意思說你不想喝酒的話,你還是不好意思說你不想喝酒的話,你還是不好意思說你不想喝酒的話,你還是不好意思說你不想喝酒,這個意思就

Notes 注解

- A3. The affirmative potential compound 喝得出来 (喝得出來) means "be able to tell (something) by drinking (something)."
- A6. The pattern 有A就有B means "wherever there is A, there is B."
- A7a. 成了 "has become."
- A7b. ●人们 (人們) rénmen "people" [N]. This is a new, European-influenced usage that was uncommon prior to the 20th century. Before then, people said just 人 (which can still mean both "person" and "people"), or they used another term like 大家. Even today, 人们 (人們) is written more than it is spoken.
- A9. 在我们的心里 (在我們的心裡) "in our hearts"
- A10a. ⑥人生 rénshēng "human life" [N]. 什么才是人生中最要紧的事?(什麼才是人生中最要緊的事?) means "What is the most important thing in life?" The 才 in this question is optional but strengthens it, so that literally the meaning is more like "What really is the most important thing in life?"
- A10b. 长这么大 (長這麼大) "has grown to be so big" or "has grown to be so old." Note that 长 (長) is here pronounced **zhǎng**.
- B2. 我再忙也应当来看你 (我再忙也應當來看你) "No matter how busy I might be, I should still come visit you." The pattern 再 + VERB + 也 means "no matter." The alternate pattern 再 + VERB + 都 is also possible.
- C1a. ●从小 (從小) cóng xiǎo "from the time I was little" or "from childhood" [PH]
- C1b. 喝着,喝着,一直喝到现在 (喝著,喝著,一直喝到現在) "Keep on drinking and drinking" or "drinking all the way up until now." The use of a verb plus 着(著) reduplicated in this way indicates a high degree of frequency over a period of time. Another example is 说着,说着(說著,說著) "keep on talking and talking."
- C1c. ●国中(國中) guózhōng "junior middle school" [PW]
- C1d. ●香片 xiāngpiàn "scented tea" [N]

- C1e. ●改为 (改為) gǎiwéi "change to" [v+pv]. 改为喝 (改為喝) means "change to drinking" (some other beverage that is different from what one was drinking before). Note that 为 (為) is here pronounced wéi, not wèi as in 为什么 (為什麼) wèishenme "why".
- C1f. ◆杯 bēi "cup" or "glass" [M]
- C1g. ●东方美人茶 (東方美人茶) Dōngfāng Měirén Chá "Oriental Beauty Tea" (name of a variety of black tea from Taiwan) [PH]
- **C1h.** 不如茶好喝 "is not as good to drink as tea." Another way to express the same meaning would be 没有茶那么好喝 (沒有茶那麼好喝).
- C2a. ◆劝 (勸) quàn means "urge," "encourage," or "advise" [v]. The verb-object compound 劝酒 (勸酒) quànjiǔ means "urge someone to drink alcohol" (e.g., at a banquet).
- C2b. 敬 jìng, 干杯 (乾杯) gānbēi, and 先干为敬 (先乾為敬) xiān-gān-wéi-jìng were all explained in notes B1a, B1b, and B1e of IWC 16-2.
- C2c. ●用不着 (用不著) yòngbuzháo "don't need," "have no need for," or "there is no need to" [RC]. 用不着你来叫我怎麼做) "There's no need for you to tell me what to do."
- C2d. 改喝 means "change to drinking" (some other beverage). Cf. note C1e above.
- C2e. 笑着说 (笑著說) means "say while smiling" or "say with a smile."
- C2g. ①出事 chūshì "have something go wrong" or "have an accident" [vo]
- C2h. 对谁都不好(對誰都不好)"be good for nobody"



A Dumpling Restaurant in Kuala Lumpur

On the Telephone COMMUNICATIVE **OBJECTIVES** Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about: 1. Making and taking telephone calls. 2. Telephone talk. 3. Leaving a message for someone who isn't there. 4. Calling on the telephone to inquire about an apartment that has been advertised. 5. The Yellow River of China. ALV EL 6. Chinese tea. 7. Common Chinese sayings containing the verb 怕 "be afraid of."

"Want to Go to the Show?"



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

433 坏(壞) huài bad

Radical is \pm **tǔ** "earth" (343). The colloquial name for this radical is \pm 字旁 **tǔzìpáng** "side made up of the character \pm ." Notice that the top horizontal line of \pm is shorter than the bottom line. Also notice that when used as a radical, the bottom line of \pm slants up toward the right, so as not to get in the way of the other component. Phonetic of the traditional character is $\overline{\mathfrak{F}}$ **huál**. Distinguish 坏 (壞) from $\overline{\mathsf{T}}$ **bù** (63) and $\overline{\mathsf{U}}$ ($\overline{\mathfrak{F}}$) **ràng** (406).

坏 (壞)	huài	be bad [sv]
坏人 (壞人)	huài rén	bad person
坏事 (壞事)	huài shì	bad thing, evil deed
坏 (壞)	-huài	bad; extremely [RE]
忙坏 (忙壞)	mánghuài	become extremely busy [RC]
把我忙坏了(把我忙壞了)	bă wŏ mánghuàile	made me extremely busy

434 提 tí mention

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which at the left side of a character is written as ‡ and is referred to colloquially as 提手 **tíshǒu** "raised hand." The other component is 是 **shì** (76). Distinguish 提 from 是 and 题 (題) **tí** (291).

提	tí	mention [v]
别提了(別提了)	Bié tíle!	"Don't mention it!" [IE]

提前 **tíqián** move up (a time or date) [v]

斯(際) jì border, boundary, edge

国际 (國際) guójì international [AT]

国际关系 (國際關係) guójì guānxi international relations [PH]

国际学校 (國際學校) guójì xuéxiào international school

国际和平 (國際和平) guójì hépíng international peace

436 日 yīn sound

This character is itself a radical and a phonetic. Distinguish 音 from 言 yán (336), 意 yì (347), and 高 gāo (62).

音乐(音樂)	yīnyuè	music [N] (Note that 乐 [樂] is here pronounced yuè , not lè .)
日小(日末)	yiiiyue	inusic [N] (Note that $\mathcal{J} \setminus \{ \mathcal{H} \}$ is here pronounced yue , not le.)

音乐会 (音樂會) yīnyuèhuì musical performance, concert [N]

437 **kōng** empty; air, sky

kòng free time

Radical is xué "cave" or "hole." Phonetic is gōng (154). The whole character can serve as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in the character as used in the word 按告 kònggào "accuse." Distinguish 空 from and chuān (353).

空气(空氣)	kōngqì	air, atmosphere [ท]
空	kòng(r)	free time [N]

有空 yǒukòng(r) have free time, be free [vo]

438 qù interest; interesting

Radical is 走 zǒu "walk" (70). The colloquial name for this radical is 走字旁 zǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character 走." When 走 serves as the radical in another character, its last stroke is lengthened, with the component on the right side placed above the last stroke of 走. Phonetic is 取 qǔ "take." Distinguish 趣 from 走, 起 qǐ (177), and 越 yuè (265).

兴趣 (興趣)	xìngqu	interest [N]
---------	--------	--------------

对…有兴趣 (對…有興趣) dui...yǒu xìngqu be interested in... [PT] 对…感兴趣(對…感興趣) dui...gǎn xìngqu be interested in... [PT]

New Words in ISC 17-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

打诵 dătōng call and get through [RC] 打不通 dăbutōng call but not be able to get through [RC] 定 settle; decide [v] ding 咸 găn feel [V] 会(會) huì gathering, meeting [N] 没人接(沒人接) méi rén jiē no one is answering [PH] 市内电话(市內電話) shìnèi diànhuà local telephone call [PH] 一言为定 (一言爲定) yì-yán-wéi-dìng be agreed with one word [EX] 总机 (總機) zŏngjī switchboard [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、老高对音乐很有兴趣,一个月去听好几次音乐会。
- 二、最近几年,北京市的空气越来越坏了,一定要想个办法。
- 三、那位法国文学专家对中国解放后的文学特别感兴趣。
- 四、下个星期四在北京有一个国际大会, 听说有三百多人打算参加。
- 五、我知道我做错了,可是还是请你不要跟别人提这件事,好吗?
- 六、今天晚上的音乐会是八点钟开始, 我们应该提前一个钟头到比较好。
- 七、他们的儿子是小留学生, 听说在美国交了坏朋友, 自己也学坏了。
- 八、小方,我有一件事想请你替我办,不知道你这个星期日早上有没有空?
- 九、北京的国际机场叫"首都机场",离北京市中心大概有三十公里左右。
- 十、王大海又把我给气坏了, 你以后别跟我提他的名字, 我真受不了他!

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-,

王:请问,您找谁?

何: 王大明先生在吗?

王: 我就是啊。请问, 您是哪位?

何: 我是小何。你最近怎么样?

王:别提了!这几天真把我忙坏了。你有什么事儿吗?

何: 小王, 我跟你说, 这个星期六晚上国际饭店有音乐会。不知道你有没有空儿?

王: 有啊!星期六几点钟?

何: 音乐会是七点钟。我们提前一刻钟在国际饭店门口儿见, 行吗?

王: 行, 一言为定。对了, 你能多买几张票吗? 小张、小谢他们对音乐 会也很感兴趣。

何: 我看问题不大。

王: 好, 就这样儿吧。到时候儿见!

何: 就这样儿定了。再见!

二、

小张: 小房! 做什么呢?

小房:学习呢。小张,最近怎么样?

小张:还行。小房,你以后要学什么专业呢?已经决定了吗?

小房: 还没决定, 不过可能要学国际关系。你呢?

小张: 我对生物越来越感兴趣。

小房:生物课不是很难吗?

小张: 别提了! 真是难得要死, 我等一下就得去准备明天的作业。

三、

谢老师: 林先生, 早!

林先生: 谢老师, 您好啊! 最近忙吗?

谢老师:别提了!学校里的事真把我忙坏了。您知道,我们这种国际

学校,虽然工作很有意思,可是总有忙不完的事。

林先生: 是吗? 您可别把自己忙坏了。这些事, 还是慢慢来吧。

谢老师: 我知道了。您放心, 我早就习惯了这种生活了!

四、

包小姐: 总机吗?我要打一个市内电话, 号码是4532-5643。我已经打了不知道多少次, 一直打不通。不知道是什么问题。

总机: 4532-5643, 是吗?我看看……您说没人接?

包小姐:不是没人接,是根本打不通。

总机: 我再看看……4532-5643在通话中。应该没有其他问题。您等一会儿再打吧!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我跟我的同屋小万很不一样。小万学的是国际关系专业,可是我对国际关系的问题完全不感兴趣。好像每几个月就有一个国际关系的什么会,从各国来的人随便讲几句话以后,又定在两、三个月以内再办一次会。但是这样子解决不了什么问题,只是随便说说话而已。真不知道哪天才可能有真的国际和平!
- 二、我去年六月到八月在一家国际大饭店工作了三个月。那时候,真把我给忙坏了!我得把客人的行李拿到他们住的房间,有时候还得做司机,开饭店的面包车到机场接客人。我不但一个星期七天都得上班,而且每天还得工作十个到十二个小时。下班以后已经很晚了,我完全没有空做自己喜欢做的事。我最感兴趣的音乐会都没时间参加,一点自由时间都没有。今年那家国际大饭店说什么、给我多少钱,我也一定不会回到那儿去工作了!

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

一、老高對音樂人力 一、老高對音樂人力 一、老高對音樂會。 二、最近幾年,北京市 一定要想個辦法。 一定要想個辦法。 一定要想個辦法。 一定要想個辦法。 一定要想個辦法。 可是還是請你不要可是還是請你不要可是還是請你不要可是還是請你不要可是還是請你不要可是過難, 一個國際大會, 是八點鐘開始,後的文學生,聽說在美國的兒子是小會 學生,聽說有三百多人打 學生,聽說有三百多人打 學生,聽說有三百多人打 學生,聽說在美國 學生,聽說在美國 也學壞了。

九 字你王 概機北 以大 有場京 期我方 Ξ 的 我後海 日 辦 真別 或 我 又 公離 跟把 上不 里北機 不了 有 我 我 知 京場 左 沒 市叫 右 他 有 空你想 他 的 心首 ? 這請 名 大都 個你



"Jiāojǐng Wēnxīn Tíshì" (Traffic Police's Warm Reminder)

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

何 王 小 : : 就 好 這 ,

樣

兒

定 樣

了

0

再

見

就

這

兒

吧

0

到

時

候

兒

見

!

會

也

很

趣

了

,

張

票

嗎

5

小

張

在

或

際

飯

店

門

房 張 : 學 小 習 房 呢 ! 0 做 小 什 張 麼 呢

定還 了行 嗎 0 5 小 房 你 , 最 以 近 後 怎 要 麼 學甚 樣

麼

專

業

呢

?

已

經

決

小 小

張

决 定 不 過 可 能 要 學 或 際 關 係 你 呢

小

房

還

沒

何 王 何 王 何 王 何 王 何 王 : : : : : : : • : : 小行 我 口音 有 樂小 別 我 我 王 請 謝 兒樂 會 看 , 啊 王 提 是 就 大 問 見會 問 他一 ! 0 了 小 是 明 , 題 們 不我 呵 先 言 星 何 您 是 ! 對為 知跟 不 期 生 行 這 找 七 0 0 音定 嗎 道 大 六 幾 在 誰 點 你 請 你 樂 0 0

5 你 幾 天 最 問 嗎 說 鐘 有 真 點 5 近 對 , 沒這 鐘 把 怎 您 有空兒 我 是 麼 個 們 感你 哪 忙 樣 星 提 興能 壞 5 位 期 前 5 了 多 六 買 刻 晚 你 幾 鐘 上 有

國

際

飯 事

店

有

音

什

麼

兒

嗎

?

四

包

小

姐

謝

小小小 房 張 : : : 去別 生 我 準提 物 備 了 明 不物 天真 是越 的 很 是 作 難 難 越 嗎 感 得 5 興 要

死

,

我

等

下

就

得

趣

林 謝 老 師 林 先

謝 先 老 生 師 : 作您别 謝 很知提 老 有道了 師 意,! 思我學 您 ,們校 好 可這裡 是種的 ! 最 或 際真 近 忙 學把

了

工

生 自 總 有忙 壞了。 不完 的 這 事雖 然

老 先 種我 還是 是嗎 生知 慢? 活道 了 慢您 來可 吧别 您 放 N. 我 慣

次是總 4532-5643, 是 一直打て 532-5643 現 : 我 不。要 通我打 嗎 不經個 知打市

不電

知話

道,

多號

少碼

總

包

機 機 小 姐 不 該我 接? 是 沒 他 接 問 題 是 根 您等一 打 看看…… 道了內 不 是 再話 您 問 說 四 。 題 ! 應

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

會麼有時事完時天個包時的真大我 際真問會定來個感是小我 回、。間。全。還星車候行把飯去 和不題。在的國興我萬跟 到給今參我沒下得期到還李我店年 平知,但兩人際趣對學我

Notes 注解

- A2. 想办法 (想辦法) "think of a way" (to solve or handle a problem)
- A6. 到 "arrive"
- A7a. 小留学生 (小留學生) lit. "little study abroad student" refers to school-age children who are sent to the U.S. or Canada by their parents in China or Taiwan to attend school, learn English, and attain a Western education. These children may live either with relatives or with unrelated people who are paid to serve as guardians and provide food and shelter. In not a few cases, since they lack parental care and attention, these children later encounter various kinds of problems.
- A7b. 学坏 (學壞) is a compound that means lit. "learn so that someone becomes bad" or "learn bad things."
- A10. 把我给气坏了 (把我給氣壞了) lit. "took me and made me very mad" or "infuriated me." The 给 (給) strengthens the sense that someone is being affected in a certain way (specifically, that the speaker has been infuriated by Wang Dahai, cf. IWC 16-1: A8).
- **B2a.** 学习呢 (學習呢) means "(I'm) studying." The sentence-final suffix 呢 strengthens the sense that an action is in progress. A fuller version of this sentence would be 我正在学习呢 (我正在學習呢).
- **B2b.** 不是很难吗?(不是很難嗎?) is a rhetorical question meaning "Isn't it hard?"
- **B3.** ●总 (總) zŏng "always" [A]. 总有忙不完的事 (總有忙不完的事) lit. "There are always matters that one can't finish being busy with," or in more colloquial English, "There's always so much work that one can never finish."
- B4a. ◆号码 (號碼) hàomǎ(r) "number" [N]
- **B4b.** ●在通话中 (在通話中) zài tōnghuà zhōng "be in the midst of speaking on the telephone" or "be busy" (of a telephone line) [РН]
- C2a. ●面包车 (麵包車) miànbāochē "minibus" or "passenger van" [N]. This word literally means "bread vehicle," referring to a van's oblong shape, which resembles a loaf of bread.
- C2b. ●接客人jiē kèrén "meet or pick up guests" [РН]



鲤鱼(鯉魚) Lǐyú "Carp"

Telephone Tag



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

439 占(佔) zhàn occupy

Radical of the simplified form is 卜 bǔ "fortune telling." Radical of the traditional form is 人 rén "person" (30), which is written 亻 when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 rénzìpáng "side made up of the character 人." The phonetic, 占 zhān "to divine," occurs in various other characters, e.g., in 站 zhàn "stand." Distinguish simplified 占 from 右 yòu (166), 石 shí (420), and 由 yóu (383).

占 (佔) zhàn occupy [v] 替····占一个位子 tì...zhàn yíge wèizi hold a seat for... [РТ] (替····佔一個位子)

线(線) xiàn wire, line, thread

Radical is 丝 (絲) **sī** "silk." When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 绞丝旁 (絞絲旁) **jiǎosīpáng** "side made up of twisted silk" and is written as 纟(糹). Phonetic is 戔 (戋) **jiān** "narrow," which is also used in 钱 (錢) **qián** "money" (111). The traditional character is also written 綫. Distinguish 线 (線) from 钱 (錢).

线 (線) xiàn wire, line, thread [N] 占线 (佔線) zhànxiàn be busy (of a telephone line) [vo]

441 Bagào tell

Radical is □ kǒu "mouth" (140). This radical is referred to colloquially as □字底 kǒuzìdǐ "bottom made up of the character □." One "tells" 告 people things with one's "mouth" □. The other component in 告 is 牛 niú "ox" (339). The character 告 itself serves as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in 腊 hào "bright" or "brilliant." Distinguish 告 from 先 xiān (69), 走 zǒu (70), and simplified 占 zhàn (439).

442 诉(訴) sù tell

告诉 (告訴) gàosu tell [v] (In Beijing, this word is often said and written as 告送 gàosong.)

443 挂(掛) guà hang, hang up

Radical is 手 shǒu "hand" (305). Phonetic of the traditional character is 卦 guà. Distinguish 挂 (掛) from 街 jiē (42) and 鞋 xié (350).

挂(掛) guà hang, hang up [v]

挂电话 (掛電話) guà diànhuà hang up the phone; make a phone call [PH]

别挂! (別掛!) Bié guà! "Don't hang up!" [IE]

444 传 (傳) chuán transmit

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written f when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character 人." Phonetic is 专 (專) **zhuān** "special" (315). Distinguish 传 (傳) from 专 (專) **zhuān** (315) and 转 (轉) **zhuǎn** (301).

传(傳) chuán transmit [v]
●传话 (傳話) chuánhuà pass on a message [vo]传真 (傳真) chuánzhēn facsimile, FAX [N]传真机 (傳真機) chuánzhēnjī FAX machine [N]

New Words in ISC 17-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

等…	dĕng	as soon as; once [PT]
分机 (分機)	fēnjī	extension [N]
记(記)	jì	record, write down [v]
记下来(記下來)	jìxialai	write down, note down [RC]
开会 (開會)	kāihuì	hold or attend a meeting [vo]
留话(留話)	liúhuà(r)	leave a message [vo]

请留言(請留言)	Qĭng liúyán.	"Please leave a message." [EX]
手机 (手機)	shŏujī	cell phone [N]
一…就…	yījiù	as soon as [PT]
正在	zhèng zài	just be in the midst of [PH]
转 (轉)	zhuăn	transfer (on the telephone) [v]
上来(上來)	shànglai	come up [RC]; up [RE]
上去	shàngqu	go up [RC]; up [RE]
下来(下來)	xiàlai	come down [RC]; down [RE]
下去	xiàqu	go down [RC]; down [RE]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、小石,请你把这件衣服挂在门上,谢谢。
- 二、文先生还没有讲完电话, 文太太就先挂了。
- 三、小毛,请你传个话给老张,明天早上公司不开会了。
- 四、李老师正在上课呢,不能来接电话;你要不要给他留个话?
- 五、别忘了,上课之前一定要把手机关上,要不然老师会生气的!
- 六、妹妹, 我刚换了手机, 我告诉你我的手机号, 你快记下来。
- 七、请问, 桌子上的传真机是我自己一个人用, 还是大家一起用?
- 八、我在酒席上给你留了一个好位子, 你怎么也不坐下, 让别人给占了?
- 九、"电话占线"这句话的意思就是说那个人正在跟别人"讲话中"。
- 十、王大海告诉我他一下课就会去饭馆儿替我们占一个好位子,可是怎么现在找不着他了呢?

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国人:请转三七一

总机 :对不起,三七一分机占线。您是等一会儿还是过一会儿再打?

美国人: 我等一等。

总机 : 您可以跟三七一分机讲话了。

接电话的人: 您找谁?

美国人:请您给我找一下儿何子文。

接电话的人: 何子文、是吗?好、请等一下、我去给您找。别挂、

啊! ……何子文正在开会呢。您要给他留个话儿吗?

美国人 : 他开完会,请您让他给我打个电话。我姓张,中美公司

的。您一提,他就知道了。

接电话的人:好的、我记下来了。等他开完会、我就告诉他。

美国人 : 多谢您。

二、

楼楼: 你怎么现在才来啊?我替你占了一个位子, 等你等了半天了!明明: 不好意思, 这么晚才到。路上车子太多了, 公车开得好慢啊!

楼楼: 没关系。

明明:还有,我正要出门的时候,家里来了一个很要紧的传真,是我爸爸传给我的,他现在在日本,有些事需要我替他办,所以很晚

才出门。真对不起啊!

三、

王京生: 老文, 我刚才给你打电话 怎么一直占线?

文中山:对不起。可能是因为我在 跟我的女儿讲话吧。有什 么事吗?

王京生: 我只是想问你, 你最近买 的那台传真机是在哪里买 的?

文中山: 我那台传真机,是吗?南京街那家"平安家具店"后头有一家小店,我是在那儿买的。

王京生: 那种传真机一台差不多要 多少钱?

文中山: 好像一千块左右吧。



Cram Schools in Taipei

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我今天一天都在给我们公司的高先生打电话。可是,不知道打了多少次,电话一直占线。真不知道是为什么,根本没有办法打进去。只有一次打通了,可是那次接电话的人一句话也没说就挂了!后来电话一直打不进去。最后没法子,只好用传真机了。其实,我只是想告诉高先生我今天有一点自己的事,不能去上班。没想到,今天从早到晚一直为了这件事而忙。
- 二、"您好!这是二四五分机,李国明。对不起,我正在开会,四点钟才能回到位子上。请留下您的姓名、单位和时间。我一接到您的留言,就会给您回电话,谢谢!好,现在可以开始留言……"

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

七 六 五 了們王 正 也我 還請 號妹 不別 不李 不小 文 小 不在 是問 , 妹 然忘 呢佔大 在 ?一海跟話 給師 大, 你,老了 坐酒 個告 別佔 下席 家桌 快我師, 他正 還 請 ,上一子 記剛 會上 沒你 留在 讓給 起上 個上 下换 生課 有 把 位我 子他 講這 別你 用的 個講這 來了 氣之 話句 ? 傳 完 件 的前 人留 。手 話 中話給了 電衣 給 老話服 的佔一 定 是 ,掛 意 了 怎就 我 要 張 能 我 文在 思 麼會 好 告 把 自 太門 明 就 現去 位 訴 手 接 太上 天 在飯 是 子 你 機 就 早上公 找館 說 我 關 話 個 先 謝 不兒 那 你 的 上 掛 謝 怎 著替 手 , 個 你 了 他我 麼 人 機

明

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

明 美 樓 樓 接 美 接 美 接 總 美 總 美 樓 明 樓 或 電 或 電 或 或 或 電 機 機 話 話 : • : 人話 人 人 人 沒 不 的 的 的 你 關 好 怎 人 人 人 係 意 麼 • : : : : : : : 思 多 您 我 現 好 的他 何 請 您 再對 請 在 謝 的 。開 子 您 找 可 等 打不 轉 , 5 這 才 您 您完 何文 給 誰 以 起 三 我 七 麼 來 子, 我 5 跟 等 會 , 提, 文是 三 晚 呵 記 找 Ξ 七 正嗎 才 5 下 ,請 七 0

明 晚爸還 才爸有 出傳, 門給我 我正 真的要 對,出 不他門 起現的 啊在時 到 我 替 0 在候 路 你 日, 上佔 本家 車 了 ,裡 子 有來 太 個 些了 多 位 事一 了 子 需個 要很 等 公 我要 車 你 替緊 開 等 他的 得 了 辦傳 好 半 ,真 慢 天

所,

以是

很我

啊

!

了

!

他然 在? 下 就讓 開好 了 兒 知他 會 0 何 道 呢請 等 子 給 等 了 0 文 他 我 您 開 打 要下 完 個 會 給 電 他我 話 留去 我 0 個給 就 我 話您 告 姓 兒找 訴 張 嗎 他 ? 别

中

美

公

司

掛

啊

!

分

機

講

話

了

分

機

佔

線

0

悠

是

等

會

兒

還

是

過

會

兒

三

文 王 中 京 京 京 4 生 生 4 多那 買家安嗎我 在近我 吧我對 的小家?那哪買只 。店具南 裡的是 有跟起 怎, 少真 ,店京 我一街 買那想什我。 的台問 麽的可 一剛 左 是後那真 ? 傳你 事女能 直才 在頭家機 右 真, 嗎兒是 佔給 那有「, 機你?講因線你 吧 兒一平是 話為

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

Notes 注解

- A6. 手机号 (手機號) "cell phone number"
- C1. 为了这件事而忙 (為了這件事而忙) "be busy on account of this matter"

Calling About an Advertisement for an Apartment



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

Radical of the simplified form is \pm shì "scholar." Radical of the traditional form is \mp er "ear."

声音(聲音)	shēngyīn	sound; voice [N]
大声 (大聲)	dà shēng	in a loud voice [PH]
小声 (小聲)	xiăo shēng	in a low voice; quietly [РН]
四声 (四聲)	sìshēng	the four tones (of Mandarin Chinese) [N]
第一声 (第一聲)	dìyīshēng	first tone [N]
第二声 (第二聲)	dì'èrshēng	second tone [N]
第三声 (第三聲)	dìsānshēng	third tone [N]
第四声 (第四聲)	dìsìshēng	fourth tone [N]
轻声 (輕聲)	qīngshēng	neutral tone [N]
声调 (聲調)	shēngdiào	tone [N] (Note that 调 [調] [407], which you
		learned as tiáo , is here pronounced diào .)

446 Iì stand; establish

立刻 lìkè immediately [A]

447 红(紅) hóng red

Radical is 丝 (絲) sī "silk." When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 绞 丝旁 (絞絲旁) jiǎosīpáng "side made up of twisted silk" and is written as 纟(糹). Phonetic is 工 gōng "work" (154). Distinguish 红 (紅) from 工 and 空 kōng (437).

红(紅)	hóng	be red [sv]
红色(紅色)	hóngsè	the color red [N]
●红酒(紅酒)	hóngiiŭ	red wine เทา

448 黄 (黄) huáng yellow

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. It occurs as a phonetic in various characters, e.g., in the character 磺 as it is used in the word 硫磺 **liúhuáng** "sulphur." Distinguish 黄 (黃) from 由 **yóu** (383).

寅 (寅)	Huáng	Huang [sn]
黄 (黄)	huáng	be yellow [sv]
黄色(黄色)	huángsè	the color yellow [N]
●黄河 (黄河)	Huáng Hé	Yellow River [PW]
●黄海(黄海)	Huáng Hǎi	Yellow Sea (between China and the Korean Peninsula) rpwi

449 图 (圖) tú drawing, illustration, map, chart

Radical is \square wéi "enclose." This radical is referred to colloquially as 围字框 (圍字框) wéizikuàng "frame made up of the character 围 (圍)." The other part of the simplified form is 冬 dōng "winter." Distinguish simplified 图 from simplified 因 yīn (181).

地图 (地圖) dìtú map [N]

一张地图 (一張地圖) yìzhāng dìtú a map

图书馆 (圖書館) túshūguǎn library [PW]

●图 (圖) tú diagram, chart; illustration [N]

450 领 (領) lǐng lead; head

Radical is $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$ (頁) yè "page." Phonetic is \diamondsuit lìng "order." Distinguish \mathfrak{A} (領) from \diamondsuit lěng (272).

领事 (領事) lǐngshì consul [N] 总领事 (總領事) zǒnglǐngshì consul general [N] 领事馆 (領事館) lǐngshìguǎn consulate [PW] 总领事馆 (總領事館) zǒnglǐngshìguǎn consulate general [PW]

New Words in ISC 17-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

报(報) bào newspaper [N] 出去 -chūqu out [RE] (e.g., 走出去 "go out") 广告(廣告) guănggào advertisement [N] 间(間) jiān (measure for rooms) [M] 客房 kèfáng living room [PW] 空调 (空調) kōngtiáo air conditioning [N] 是的 shìde "yes" [IE] 清楚 -qīngchu clear [RE] 听清楚 (聽清楚) tīngqīngchu hear clearly [RC] 听不清楚(聽不清楚) tīngbuqīngchu can't hear clearly [RC] 阳台(陽台) yángtái porch [PW] 最好 zuìhăo it would be best; had better [MA]

Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、为什么中国的中国地图和台湾的中国地图不一样?
- 二、领事告诉她最好两、三天之内回领事馆再办那件事。
- 三、那位美国领事中国话讲得好极了,他的四声也特别准,
- 四、广州的广东话有七个声调,不过香港的广东话只有六个声调。
- 五、我需要买书、报、几百张白纸、两个本子和一张北京市地图。
- 六、图书馆的空调冷死了; 外头一点儿也不热, 根本不需要开空调。
- 七、这个房子只有两个房间;我们是不是应该换一个大一点儿的房子住呢?
- 八、那是什么声音?你听到了没有?好像是什么小动物的样子,最好小心一点儿!
- 九、对不起,这儿是图书馆,请您让您的儿子小声一点儿说话,要不然我们就得请你们立刻出去!
- 十、王大海说晚上要请客,叫我立刻去买汽水、红酒、白酒、水果和 一些小吃。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines. In the first conversation, notice the backchannel comments (cf. BSC 7-4: 6C).

美国人: 我在报上看到你们的广告……

台湾人:对不起,听不清楚。请你说大声一点。

美国人: 我说我在报上看到你们的广告(是的。), 有家具要卖(对,

对。)。不知道卖了没有?

台湾人:还没有,但是有人来看过,好像满有兴趣的。如果你想来看

的话, 最好早一点。

二、

黄美金:我在找房子住。你觉得这个广告怎么样?

林会 : 我看……我觉得看起来满不错的。离大学很近, 客房特别大,

而且还有书房、阳台什么的。带家具跟电话,每个月五千块,

其实这也不算贵。

黄美金:那,你觉得我现在应该怎么办?

林会:你应该立刻打电话问还有没有。要是还有的话、最好早一点

去看,然后再决定。如果房东说还有的话,我愿意跟你一起

去看。

三、

毛小姐: 你觉得我穿黄色的鞋好看还是穿红色的好看?

简小姐: 我觉得黄色的、红色的都不太好看。

毛小姐:是吗?那你说我应当穿什么鞋呢?

简小姐:我看你还不如买一双黑色的鞋。

毛小姐: 好吧, 我就听你的了。(对鞋店的店员) 先生, 我需要买一双

黑色的高跟鞋, 我穿三七号, 不知道你们有没有?

店员 : 有, 这双刚上市, 您穿穿看。



Chinese University of Hong Kong

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、中国北方有一条很大的河叫黄河。黄河是中国第二长河,有五千四百六十四公里长。黄河的水,因为里头有很多黄色的土,就成了黄色, 所以叫黄河。
- 二、黄国明老先生是成都人,住在成都市小天北街382号,离美国总领事馆不太远。他年轻的时候在美国留学过,对美国的语言和文学都很感兴趣,所以他常常到美国总领事馆的图书馆去看美国的书、报、地图什么的。黄先生差不多每个星期都会去一、两次。因为图书馆就在总领事馆里面,所以天天都能看到那些美国领事进进出出,有时候还能看到总领事司米先生。有一次黄先生还跟总领事说了几句话。黄先生在图书馆里常看到他的朋友老何,也会跟他说说话。不过他们得小声地说话,因为有些人在看书,有些人在学习。黄老先生今天在图书馆已经看完了两本书和一些报纸了。

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

四 1 一去王 然您對 小好那 住不這 兒圖 兩我 香廣 他那 領領 些買大 我的不 心像是 呢是個 也書 個需 港州 的位 事事 小汽海 們兒起 一是甚 ?應房不館本要 的的 四美 館告 該子熱的子 吃水說 就平, 點甚麼 廣廣 聲國 晋 、晚 得小這 兒麼聲 换只 ,空 東東 也領 一有根調 話話 請聲兒 ! 小音 特事 紅上 個大一個大一個大一 只 你一是 張 別中 酒要 北報 們點圖 有 準 國 物你 或 一刻兒書 的聽 地 出說館 點間 酒 樣到 昌 開 去話, 子了 和 空 調 好 一調頭 水我 ,請 之 ,沒 的我 台 內 灣 果立 要您 最有 房們 了 好? 子是 點 和刻 不讓 回 的

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines. In the first conversation, notice the backchannel comments (cf. BSC 7-4: 6C).

> 林 黃

灣 灣 或 或 : : : 還 了我 對 我 沒 沒說 在 不 有我 有 起 報 在 上 , 但 看 聽 報 是 不 到 上 有 清 你 看 楚 們 到 的 你 看 廣 請 們 過 告 你 的 說 廣 好 大 告 聲 滿 是 有 點 的 興 趣

家

具

要

賣

對

對

不

知

道

賣

如

果

你

想

來

看

的

話

最

好

早

點

台 台 美 , 的 有

黃 美 美 美 會 全 全 : 那 陽我 我 台看 在 你 什 找 覺 麼 房 的我 得 子 我 0 覺 住 帶得 現 0 在 家看 你 應 具起 跟來 該 電滿 怎 這 話不 麼 個 辨 , 錯 每 告 的 個 怎 月 麼 五 樣 大

會

如你 果應 房該 東立 說刻 還打 有電 的話 話問 ,還 我有 願沒 意有 跟。 你要 一是 起還 去有 看的 話 最 好 早 點 去 看 然 後

再

決

定

千

其

實

這

也

不

貴

塊很

學

近

別

大

而

且

還

有

房

簡 小 小 姐 姐 : 是 我 覺 得 那 黃 你 色 說 的 我 ` 紅 色 的 都 不 鞋 太 呢 好 看

毛

小

姐

:

你

覺

得

我

穿

黄

色

的

鞋

好

看

還

是

穿

紅

色

的

好

看

姐 姐 : 我好 我 穿吧 看 三, 你 七我 還 號就 不 ,聽 如 不你 買 知的 道了 雙 你 里 0 們一 有對 的 沒鞋 鞋 有店 的

店

員

先

生

我

需

要

買

雙

黑

色

的

高

跟

鞋

毛

小

簡

小

毛

:

嗎

5

應

當

穿

甚

麼

有 這 雙 剛 上 市 您 穿 看

店

員

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

中國北方有一條很大的河叫黃河。黃河中國北方有一條很大的河叫黃河。黃河的水,因為裡頭有很多黃色的土,就成了黃色,所以叫黃河。 對國明老先生是成都人,住在成都市小夫北街 382 號,離美國總領事館不太遠。 語言和文學都很感興趣,所以他常常到 翻傳事館裡面,所以天天都能看到鄉行 中國第二長河,有五千四百六十四公 是中國第二長河,有五千四百六十四公 是一國籍裡面,所以天天都能看到總領 事記述者 是一、兩次。因為有些人在看書, 也們得小聲地說話,因為有些人在看書 中國北方有一條很大的河叫黃河。黃河

Notes 注解

- B2a. ●帶 (帶) dài "include," "contain," or "come with" [v]
- B2b. ●房东 (房東) fángdōng "house owner," "landlord," or "landlady" [N]
- B3. ●店员 (店員) diànyuán "sales clerk" or "shop assistant" [N]
- C2a. ●进进出出 (進進出出)
 jìnjìnchūchū "entering and going
 out" or "coming and going" [EX]
- C2b. 小声地说话 (小聲地說話) means "speak quietly." Remember that 地, usually pronounced -de, can serve as an adverbial modifier to express manner (IWC 15-1, ISC 15-1: 1C).



Sign in Harbin

Calling About an Advertisement for an Apartment (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

451 k chuáng bed

Radical is Γ yǎn "roof." The other component is π mù "wood." To make a "bed" π , you place "wood" π under a "roof" Γ . Distinguish π from Γ (π) guǎng (27).

床 chuáng bed [N]

一张床 (一張床) yìzhāng chuáng a bed

起床 qǐchuáng get up from bed [vo]

●单人床 (單人床) dānrénchuáng single bed [N]●双人床 (雙人床) shuāngrénchuáng double bed [N]

452 hing in addition; another

Radical is \square kǒu "mouth" (140). The other component is 力 lì "power, strength" (478). Distinguish 另 from 别 (別) bié (82), 男 nán (100), 加 jiā (307), and 叫 jiào (78).

.....

另外 lìngwài in addition [MA]; another [SP]

另外算 lìngwài suàn be figured in addition; be extra [PH]

另外一个 (另外一個) lìngwài yíge another one

453 户 pà fea

Radical is \upomega *xīn "heart" (262), since "fear" is an emotion. When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as \upomega *xīnzipáng "side made up of the character \upomega and is written as \upomega . Phonetic is \upomega bái "white" (328). Distinguish \upomega from \upomega .

怕	pà	be afraid; fear [v]
可怕	kĕpà	be frightful terrible horrible (sv)

454 树(樹) shù tree

shù

Radical is the pictograph 木 mù "tree." This radical is referred to colloquially as 木字旁 mùzìpáng "side made up of the character 木." Note that when 木 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Contrast simplified 树 with simplified 划 duì (108).

tree [N]

●茶树 (茶樹)	cháshù	tea tree, tea plant [N]	
●树林 (樹林)	shùlín	woods, forest [N]	

455 化 huā flower

树 (樹)

Radical is 艸 cǎo "grass," which is written 草 when it occurs as an independent word (456). When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, the "grass" radical is written as ++ and is then known as 草字头 (草字頭) cǎozìtóu "top made up of the character 草." Phonetic is 仁 huà "change" (479).

花	huā(r)	flower [N]
菜花	càihuā	cauliflower [N]

456 草 cǎo grass

This character itself involves a common radical. The radical is 艸 cǎo "grass," which is written 草 when it occurs as an independent word. When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, the "grass" radical is written as ⁺⁺ and is then known as 草字头 (草字頭) cǎozìtóu "top made up of the character 草." Phonetic is 早 zǎo "early" (259). Distinguish 草 from 早.

草	căo	grass [N]
一根草	yìgēn căo	a blade of grass
花草	huācăo	flowers and grass [N]

New Words in ISC 17-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

别人(別人)	biérén	another person; others [PR]
电(電)	diàn	electricity [N]
方便	fāngbian	be convenient [sv]
书桌(書桌)	shūzhuō(r)	desk [N]
一些	yìxiē	some [NU+M]
种(種)	zhòng	plant [v] (Note that 320 种 [種] is here pronounced zhòng , not zhŏng .)

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、学校门口儿最近种了好多红花儿,实在是好看!
- 二、你怕不怕晚上一个人在对面的那片树林里走路?我可不敢!
- 三、菜单上的菜,每道二十五元,米饭和酒另外算,茶水不要钱。
- 四、那个大城不怎么好看, 应该在路上多种一些树、花儿跟草。
- 五、那个房子好像十年没有人住了,外面的草长得这么高,有一点儿可怕。
- 六、有时候有中国人说"不太方便",其实他的意思是"根本不可能"。
- 七、听说在香港有的男人很坏,在家里有太太,在外面还另外有"小太太"。
- 八、那个房间只有一张单人床,不过我们需要的是一张双人床,能不能换另 外一个房间?
- 九、我们家人最喜欢吃的两道家常菜一个是用菜花做的,另外一个是用白菜做的。
- 十、王大海的同学小林实在很可怕,他喝酒以后常常大声叫,有时候还会 打人。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国人:房子有没有家具、电话?

台湾人: 有一些简单的家具, 像床、饭桌、书桌什么的。没有电话。

美国人:一个月大概是多少?

台湾人:一个月三万块,水电另外算。

美国人: 那我什么时候来比较方便?

台湾人: 你可以今天晚上过来, 明天早上也可以。 再晚就怕别人已经决定了。

美国人: 我今天晚上六点左右到, 方不方便?

台湾人:没问题。贵姓?

美国人: 我姓黄, 黄京文。

台湾人:好的,黄小姐,六点钟见。

美国人: 再见。

二、

小李: 你平常早上几点钟起床?

小林: 差不多六点吧。

小李: 六点? 怎么那么早?

小林: 因为我怕更晚会来不及!

三、

方先生: 客人都来了。你要不要到前边儿来跟大家先说几句话?

何小姐:不行,不行,你知道我是最怕讲话的!

方先生: 没关系! 你随便说几句都可以。

何小姐:对不起,我完全没有准备。改天吧,今天真的不太方便。

四、

金小姐:请进,请进!这就是我上个月买的房子。你觉得怎么样?还可

以吧?

谢太太: 真好!我特别喜欢外头种的花儿跟草, 还有那些大树。

金小姐:是啊。你知道那些树有多少年了吗?

谢太太: 我看有一百年了吧?

金小姐: 有人告诉我有三百多年了!

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

中国热带很多地方,特别是山上,都种了茶树。中国茶的品种很多,大的品种有红茶、绿茶和花茶,另外还有二、三十种比较小的品种像黑茶、



Harbin Institute of Technology

D. SUPPLEMENT: SOME COMMON CHINESE SAYINGS WITH THE VERB"怕"

Read the following common Chinese sayings, all of which make use of the verb 怕, which is introduced in this lesson.

一、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕广州人说中国话! 二、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕广东人说中国话! 三、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕四川人说中国话! 四、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕河南人说温州话! 五、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕温州人说美国话! 六、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕老外开口说中国话! 七、天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕它FO当CEO! 九、很多年轻人天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕停电! 十、四川人不怕辣,贵州人辣不怕, 湖南人怕不辣。

🧿 Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+ 九 六 五 = 實有 酒菜 人酒王 做是我 外需那 太聽 的那 種那 他時 。以大 的用們 一要個 太說 草個 一個 另單 裡怕 ,在的候 長房 些大 外上 走不 個的房 常的 花人房是間 在香 得子 樹城 算的 意有 間一只外港思中這好 張有 面有 花怎 是國麼像 茶, 最 的 一人 高十 近 還的 聲 根說 ,年 種 林 不個 叫 有沒 草看 了 床人有很不不 一有 ! 在 好 有 可太 多 點人 應 。五 對 時可 個家 方 兒住 該 面 紅 候怕 是常 不不 可了 花 便 還, 用菜 太家 能過 那 怕, 米 兒 會他 白一 換我 裡 , 。外 上 片 飯 菜個 另們 有 其 多 打喝 面 和 實

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小小小 小 美 台 美 台 美 台 美 台 美 台 美 李 林 李 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 林 或 : : : : 人 人 人 人 人 : : 因 六 差 你 : : : : : : : 便我 點 不 平 我 那 為 再 好 沒 了也你 桌有 房 ? 今 5 多 常 子 我 姓 問 可可 我 個 個 見 的 怎 早 黄 題 天 什 月 月 書 怕 六 , 以以 有 桌 點 上 晚 。今 麼 三 大 沒 更 麼 黄 , 0 簡 什 萬 概 晚 那 幾 黄 上 有 吧 小 貴 再天 時 單 麼 晚晚 候 塊 是 家 麼 點 姐 京 姓 六 會 的 的 多 早 5 點 就上 來 具 來 鐘 , 文 , 家 小 0 不 左 怕過 水 起 六 比 • 沒具 電 電 及 點 右 別來 較 床 ? , ! 鐘 到 人, 方 另 有 話 電像 見 已明 便 外 ? 經天 5 算 話床 方 0 決早 0 不 1 方 定上 飯

四

何

小

姐

•

不

吧對

今起

天,

真我

的完

不全

太沒

方有

便準

備

改

天

方

先

生

:

沒

關

係

!

你

隨

便

說

幾

句

都

可

以

0

何

小

姐

•

話不

的行

,

不

行

,

你

知

道

我

是

最

怕

講

!

三

方

先

生

:

來玄

跟人

大都

家來

先了

說。

幾你

句要

話不

? 要

到

前

邊

兒

謝 金 謝 金 金 太 小 小 太 小 姐 太 姐 太 姐 : : 嗎是 吧的請 我 兒真 有 ? 啊 跟好 ?房進 看 告 草 子, 有 1 0 訴 , 。請 你 我 還特 我 知 你進 百 有 覺! 道 有 年 别 三 那 那 得這 了 喜 百多年了 此 此 吧 怎就 歡 大 5 樹 麼是 外 樹 樣我 有 頭 多 ? L 少 種 還個 年 的 可月

花

以買

T

:

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

D. SUPPLEMENT: SOME COMMON CHINESE SAYINGS WITH THE VERB"怕"

Read the following common Chinese sayings, all of which make use of the verb 怕, which is introduced in this lesson.

六 五 湖四 怕很 C天 說天 美天 溫天 中天 中天 中天 中天 南川 停多 O不 中不 國不 州不 國不 國不 國不 國不 天說天美天溫天中天 ! 怕 國怕 話怕 話怕 話怕 話怕 話怕 人人 電年 怕不 話, !, !, ! , !, 不怕 ! 地 地 地 地 地 地 地 不 不 不 不 不 不 不 天 不 不 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 ,) , , , 怕 貴 就 就 就 就 就 就 , 州 就 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 怕 地 人 怕 老 溫 河 廣 廣 不 H 四 辣 外 東 本 小小 南 11 州 怕 開 人 人 人 , 人 人 人 怕 就 說 說 說 說 說 說 口

Notes 注解

- A2. ●片 piàn "section," "stretch" or "expanse" [M]. 那片树林里 (那片樹林裡) means "in that expanse of woods." 一片大海 would mean "a broad expanse of ocean."
- A3. ●茶水 cháshuǐ "brewed tea" [N]
- A4. 不怎么好看 (不怎麼好看) "not particularly attractive"
- C1. ●热带 (熱帶) rèdài "tropical zone" or "the tropics" [PW]
- C3. ●品种 (品種) pĭnzhŏng "variety" or "species" [N]
- C5. ◆绿 (綠) lǜ "be green" [sv]

- C8. ●特点 (特點) tèdiǎn "characteristic" or "trait" [N]
- C9. ●香味 xiāngwèi "aroma," "fragrance" or "scent" [N]
- D1. There is a whole series of sayings in Chinese that begin 天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕…… "(I/We/They) don't fear heaven, don't fear earth, only fear…" that end with whatever it is that one is really concerned about or wishes to emphasize. Sometimes, instead of 就怕, the words只怕—which have the same meaning—are used instead. Many of these sayings (D1-D7 above) poke fun at the poor Mandarin spoken by Chinese from other parts of China, or by foreigners. In fact, there used to be a saying 天不怕,地不怕,就怕洋鬼子说中国话!(天不怕,地不怕,就怕洋鬼子說中國話!) "Fear neither heaven nor earth, fear only foreign devils speaking Chinese!" However, that saying, containing the noun 洋鬼子 yángguĭzi "foreign devil," is now considered crude and is generally no longer used except humorously.
- D5. ●温州 (温州) Wēnzhōu "Wenzhou" (city in Zhejiang Province) [PW]. The dialect of 温州 (温州), which is a subdialect of the Wu dialect, is notorious for its difficulty for Mandarin speakers.
- D8. The Roman letter abbreviations CFO (Chief Financial Officer) and CEO (Chief Executive Officer) are fairly widely used in Chinese newspapers, magazines, and business reports (cf. BWC 2-4, note A5).
- 停电 (停電) tíngdiàn "the power stops," "power failure" [vo]. The whole saying above makes fun of the younger generation of Chinese, many of whom—like their counterparts in other countries—possess no end of electronic devices, which cease operating in case of prolonged power failure.
- D10. ◆辣 là "be peppery hot" [sv]. The provinces listed above are some of the ones whose cuisines are particularly spicy hot. There are various versions of this saying, some also including the province of Jiangxi (IWC 14-2: 2B).

Visiting People (I)

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Making an informal visit to a Chinese friend's home.
- 2. Paying a formal call on someone at their residence to request a favor.
- 3. Apologizing for being late for an appointment.
- 4. Accepting or declining invitations.
- 5. The famous story of Kong Rong, who let his brothers have the best pears, as well as other passages on the Gang of Four, Sino-Japanese relations, parenting, driving, smoking, learning Chinese, and various aspects of Chinese culture.



Visiting a Friend at Home



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

Radical is 子 zǐ "son" (155). Phonetic is 亥 hài, which is the last of the twelve earthly branches. Distinguish 孩 from 刻kè (116) and 该 (該) gāi (356).

孩子	háizi	child [N]
男孩子	nánháizi	boy [n]
女孩子	nűháizi	girl [N]
男孩儿 (男孩兒)	nánháir	boy [n]
女孩儿 (女孩兒)	nűháir	girl [N]
小孩	xiăohái	child [N]
小孩儿 (小孩兒)	xiăoháir	child [N]
小孩子	xiăo háizi	small child [РН]
坏孩子 (壞孩子)	huài háizi	bad child

458 马(馬) mă horse

This character is itself a radical. It is a picture of a horse with four feet. Distinguish simplified \Box from simplified \Box from traditional Ξ yú (411).

马 (馬)	Mă	Ма [ѕи]
-) (wa)	IVIC	IVIC [SIV]

surnames) [SN]

马上 (馬上) **mǎshàng** immediately, right away [A]

459 FE xiāng mutually

Radical is 目 mù "eye" (543). The character 相 frequently occurs as a phonetic within other characters, e.g., 想 xiǎng (319). Distinguish 相 from 想 and 怕 pà (453).

●相当(相當)	xiāngdāng	rather, pretty, quite [A]	
---------	-----------	---------------------------	--

460 B guăn control; manage

Radical is 竹 zhú "bamboo." The colloquial name for this radical is 竹字头 (竹字頭) zhúzìtóu "top made up of the character 竹." When it is a radical, the third and sixth strokes of 竹 are shortened. Phonetic is 官 guān "official" (589). Distinguish 管 from 馆 (館) guǎn (429).

管	Guăn	Guan [sʌɪ]
管	guăn	control, manage, administer [v]

别管我!(別管我!) Bié guǎn wǒ! "Don't bother me!", "Leave me alone!"

(嚴) yán stern, severe

●严 (嚴)	Yán	Yan (also Om or Eom, a Korean surname) [sn]
--------	-----	---

462 zhòng heavy; weight

Radical is 里 lǐ "mile" (163). The whole character 重 occurs as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in 种 (種) **zhŏng** "kind" (320). Distinguish 重 from 种 (種).

重 **zhòng** be heavy [s**v**]

你有多重? Nǐ yǒu duō zhòng? "How much do you weigh?" ●严重 (嚴重) yánzhòng be serious, grave [sv]

New Words in ISC 18-1 Written with Characters You Already Know



屋子 wūzi room [N]
小朋友 xiǎo péngyou child [PH]
这(這) zhè right away [A]
住 -zhù firm [RE] (e.g., 拿不住 nábuzhù "can't hold on to firmly")
总是 (總是) zŏngshi always [A]

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、司马, 你回国请别忘了替我问你爸爸、妈妈好!
- 二、有的人总是爱管别人, 其实他们应该先管好自己。
- 三、我们往前走了没有几步, 就到了一条相当深的河。
- 四、这件行李怎么这么重啊!好像里头放了很多石头的样子!
- 五、虽然其他人都把这件事看得很严重,但是司马先生一点儿也不紧张。
- 六、这么严重的问题需要马上解决! 你怎么还先上茶馆跟朋友喝茶去了呢?
- 七、老白和他爱人住的房子很小,只有两间屋子,他们根本不可能生两、 三个孩子
- 八、虽然中美关系最近几年好像相当不错,但还有不少问题,有的问题不太要紧,有的相当严重。
- 九、虽然大多数人总是说生男生女都一样,其实不少人还是觉得如果只能生一个孩子,那么生男孩子比较好。
- 十、除了王大海之外, 其他参加酒席的客人, 就是严东山、李想、管二妹、司马红、马立国和牛小花, 已经全来了。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小牛 : 小李在家吗?

李太太:在,在。小牛,你进来坐吧,他马上就来。先喝点儿茶吧。

小李:小牛,对不起,我正忙着呢,这就完了。我马上就来。

小牛 :小李,你忙你的,别急。

二、

小严: 小马, 我问你, 你有多高?

小马: 我一米八二。 小严: 你有多重?

小马: 我九十八公斤, 可是……你为什么问我这些问题?

三、

小学一年级的管老师: 小朋友们, 校长来了, 快问校长好!

小朋友们:校长好!

严校长 :管老师早,小朋友们好!

四、

严小姐: 你觉得这儿的气候怎么样?

马先生: 这儿的气候啊?我觉得……相当好, 还可以吧。

严小姐: 真的吗?我觉得这个地方最近几个星期热得要死, 又那么干,

我真受不了!

马先生: 没有你说的那么严重吧!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、最近几年,越来越多的孩子不好好儿地在学校里学习,这是不是已经成了相当严重的问题了呢?可能会有人说,这根本不是什么问题,大家都想得太多,管得也太多了。但是我就觉得如果我们这些做爸爸、妈妈的不管自己孩子的事儿,那么还有谁会去管呢?我觉得,孩子学习的问题不能不管。孩子一有问题,就要马上解决!
- 二、我的外公六十九岁了, 马上就要七十岁了。他老人家住在台湾台南市, 离台南火车站不太远。我平常每年六月都回台湾去看他。我最爱我的外公, 因为他对我相当好。记得我小时候, 外公常常带我去菜市场买菜。他不管有多忙, 总是会找时间请我吃一点儿台南的小吃或是给我买一点儿美国没有的小东西。我非常高兴我有那么好的一位外公!

三、孔融让梨

差不多一千九百年以前有个小孩子叫孔融。他有五个哥哥,一个弟弟。有一天,孔融的爸爸买了一些梨。回到家,他叫孩子们过来吃。他爸爸说:"让孔融先选吧!"孔融走过去,拿了一个最小的梨。大家都觉得很奇怪。他爸爸问他:"你为什么选了小的呢?"孔融说:"我年纪小,应该吃小的,大的让给哥哥们吃吧!"他爸爸听了以后很高兴,又问:"那弟弟比你还小啊?"孔融说:"我比弟弟大,我是哥哥,我应该把一个大的留给弟弟吃。"那一年,孔融才四岁。后来孔融成为了一个很有学问的人。

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 三 1 七 五 四 馬就除 子其雖 有但雖 屋老 還這 是雖 很這 當我 管有 媽司 ,實然 的還然 子白 先麼 司然 多件 深們 好的 立是了 國嚴王那不大相有中 ,和上嚴 馬其 石行 的往 自人 好, 當不美 和東大麼少多 他他 茶重 先他 頭李 河前 生人數 嚴少關 們愛館的 海 生人 的怎 走 回 男還人 根人 跟問 樣麼 一都 了 問係 或 孩是總 點把 本住 朋題 沒 題最 請 子覺是 兒這 不 友需 有 别 ,近 别 可 得說 幾 人 有幾 忘 較如生 能 他 子 , 了 的年 生 緊 果男 ! 其 看 替 問好 兩 只生 好 就 實 題像 我 呢 了妹酒 決 很 像 到 他 女 不相 = 問 個只 ! 嚴 裡 了 們 你 司的 孩有 頭 應 重 爸 馬客 個 子兩 放 條 該 , 紅人 。間 麼 但 T 相 先

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

真受不了!

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

三 四 嚴 嚴 小 李 小 馬 馬 嚴 小 小 小 小 小 小 小 牛 李 太 牛 先 朋 馬 嚴 馬 嚴 先 小 小 校 學 生 姐 生 友 太 姐 : : : : 長 : : : : : 們 年 我 我 小 : 小 : : 你 小 小 牛 沒 你 管 級 九 有 馬 李 李 真 這 : 在 多 兒 老 + 米 在 有 的 覺 校 的 , , , 你 嗎 的 得 師 長 管 重 我 你 對 在 家 八 早 說 5 氣 這 好 老 公 問 忙 不 嗎 0 的 我 候 ? 兒 ! 師 你 你 起 小 覺 那 啊 的 小 : 的 牛 , , 麼 得 5 氣 朋 小 可 你 , 我 嚴 這 我 候 友 朋 是 有 别 正 你 多 急 忙 覺 怎 們 友 重 個 進 得 PP 地 著 麼 好 們 來 方 你 坐 ! 樣 ! 呢 最 吧 校 為 , 近 這 長 什 相 幾 當 來 麼 就 他 問 完 馬 個 好 了 星 我 了 上 期 還 快 這 0 就 此 我 熱 可 問 來 問 馬 得 以 校 要 吧 長 題 上 先 死 好 5 就 喝 點 ! 來 又 兒 那 茶 麼 吧 乾 0 我

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

孔

融

讓

梨

孔大興該他過叫一差 融,,吃:去孩個不 才我又小一,子弟多 四是問的你拿們弟一 歲哥:,為了過。千 。哥「大什一來有九 後,那的麼個吃一百 來我弟讓選最。天年 孔應弟給了小他,以 融該比哥小的爸孔前 成把你哥的梨爸融有 為一還們呢。說的個 了個小吃?大:爸小 一大啊吧」家「爸孩 個的?!孔都讓買子 很留一一融覺孔了 有給孔他說得融一孔 學弟融爸:很先些融 問弟說爸「奇選梨 的吃:聽我怪吧。 人。一了年。!回 五個哥哥,他爸爸問

美總我台台我 能事是根是最 國是小灣灣的 不兒我本不近 沒會時去台外 管,就不是幾 有找候看南公 。那覺是已年 的時,他市六孩麼得甚經, 小間外。,十 子還如麼成越 東請公我離九 一有果問了來 西我常最台歲 有誰我題相越 。吃常爱南了 問會們,當多 我一帶我火, 題去這大嚴的 非點我的車馬 ,管些家重孩 常兒去外站上 就呢做都的子 高台菜公不就 要?爸想問不 興南市,太要 馬我爸得題好 我的場因遠七 上覺、太了好 有那麼好為他對於為他對於 解得媽多呢兒 決 , 媽 , ! 孩的管可在 似子學習的問題不可能會有人說,這一個學校裡學習,這 好是他 我每他 一我管當年老 位買有好六人家 [外公! 有多忙, 有多忙, 不。記得 不的但這這

Notes 注解

- A3. 没有几步 (沒有幾步) "a couple of steps"
- A9. 生男生女都一样 (生男生女都一樣) lit. "Giving birth to boys or giving birth to girls is all the same", which in more idiomatic English means "It is all the same whether you give birth to a boy or give birth to a girl."
- C1a. 不好好儿地在学校里学习 (不好好兒地在學校裡學習) "don't learn well in school." The use of reduplicated stative verbs, such as 好好儿地 (好好兒地) "well", as adverbs is taken up in ISC 19-2: 2B.

- C1c. ●做 zuò "be," "act as," or "serve as" [v]. 我们这些做爸爸、妈妈的 (我們這些做爸爸、媽媽的) lit. "We, these who serve as dads and moms," or more colloquially "We, as parents."
- C2a. ●老人家 lǎorenjia "elderly person" [N]. 老人家 is a polite way of referring to an older person, especially one's parent or grandparent. 他老人家 here could be translated rather literally as "He, elderly gentleman that he is."
- C2b. 记得我小时候 (記得我小時候) "I remember when I was small." The verb 记得 (記得) is often used this way, without an explicit subject 我.
- <mark>C2c. ●不管 bùguǎn</mark> "no matter, regardless" [Ҏт].
- C3a. ⑥孔 Kǒng [sn]. 孔 is the surname of several famous people in Chinese history, including 孔子 Kǒngzǐ "Confucius" and 孔融 Kǒng Róng, the main character in this narrative. Kong Rong (153–208), a direct descendant of Confucius, was a famous scholar, politician, and warlord of the Eastern Han Dynasty. The story about an episode during Kong Rong's childhood that you read here, known as 孔融让梨 (孔融 讓梨) "Kong Rong Gives Up A Pear," is still read today by elementary school children in mainland China, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and Singapore to teach children the importance of modesty and kindness toward others.
- C3b. You have learned 让 (讓) (406) with the meaning "let" or "cause." In this narrative, 让 (讓) occurs a total of three times: twice with a new meaning of "give up," "yield," or "let someone else have something"; and once in the sense of "let," which you are already familiar with.
- C3c. ◆梨 lí(r) "pear" [N]
- **C3d.** 孩子们 (孩子們) "children." 孩子 is one of the relatively few nouns referring to people that frequently occurs with the pluralizing suffix 们 (們). Other nouns that commonly take 们 (們) include 朋友们 (朋友們) "friends" and 同学们 (同學們) "classmates." Later in this narrative you'll also encounter 哥哥们 (哥哥們) "older brothers." We have previously discussed the relatively new Chinese word 人们 (人們) (IWC 16-4: A7b).
- C3e. ◆选 (選) xuǎn "choose" or "select" [v]
- C3f. ◆奇怪 qíguài "be strange" [sv]
- C3g. 那弟弟比你还小啊?(那弟弟比你還小啊?) "In that case, your little brother is even smaller than you (so why didn't you leave the smallest pear for him)?"
- C3h. ●才 cái "only" [A]
- C3j. ●学问 (學問) xuéwèn "learning," "knowledge," or "scholarship" [ɴ]

Visiting a Friend at Home (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

463 谈(談) tán chat, talk

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic is 炎 yán "hot."

谈(談) tán chat, talk [v]

谈话 (談話) tánhuà talk, speak [vo]; conversation; statement [N]

谈完话 (談完話) tánwán huà finish talking

464 財 jì since

Radical is 无 wú "not have" (621). Distinguish 既 from 概 gài (222).

既然 jìrán since [MA]

既然…就… jìrán...jiù... since... [PT]

465 🕳 sòng give (as a present); deliver; see someone out

Radical is 之 **chuò** "walk" or "go." The colloquial name for this radical is 走之 **zǒu zhī** "the walking 之," because of its meaning "walk" and its resemblance to the particle 之. Distinguish 送 from simplified 关 **guān** (124).

送 sòng give (as a present); deliver; see someone off or out [v] 送给(送給) sònggěi give someone as a present [v+pv] 买二送一(買二送一) măi èr sòng yī "buy two, get one free" (lit. "[you] buy two, [we] give one as a gift")

466 使 shǐ send; envoy; use

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written 1 when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character 1." Phonetic is 史 **shǐ** "history," but note that the right side of 使 consists of 史 plus an additional stroke above it, so it forms the character 吏 **lì** "official." An "envoy" 使 (a person "sent" some place) is an "official" 吏 "person" 1. Distinguish 使 from 更 **gèng** (401) and 便 **biàn** (362).

大使 dàshǐ ambassador [N] 大使馆 (大使館) dàshǐguǎn embassy [PW] 使用 shǐyòng use, employ [N]

467 希 xī hope

Radical is 巾 jīn "towel." Distinguish 希 from 市 shì (47).

468 望(望) wàng hope; watch

Radical is \exists yuè "moon" (130), which has been "squeezed" into the upper right-hand quadrant so that it looks almost like \not (plus one extra stroke). The colloquial name for this radical is \exists 字旁 yuèzìpáng "side made up of the character \exists ." Phonetic is 亡 wáng "die," "flee," or "destroyed." Distinguish 堂 from 忘 wàng (190) and 忙 máng (59).

希望 (希望) xīwàng hope [v/N]

Note that the difference between the official simplified form and the official traditional form of this character does not show up in all fonts; in some fonts, they both look the same.

New Words in ISC 18-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

等会儿 (等會兒) děng huǐr in a little while [PH] (Note that 会 [會] is here pronounced as huǐ by many speakers.)

街 jiē street [N]
上街 shàngjiē go out on the street [vo]
一边 (一邊) yìbiān(r) on the one hand [PW]
一边 A 一边 B yìbiān(r) A yìbiān(r) B on the one hand A on the other hand B; do B while doing A [PT]

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我已经把我的爱给你了, 你还要我送给你什么呢?
- 二、我还没去过中国, 真希望以后能有机会去中国留学。
- 三、你既然时间很紧张,那么我们就一边吃饭一边谈话吧。
- 四、已经下了一个多星期雨了,大家都希望明天能出太阳!
- 五、下面是习近平主席2013年8月17日和外国记者谈话的全文。
- 六、你怎么没有早一点儿告诉我,你等会儿还需要上街买东西?
- 七、张先生打算改天去大使馆找李大使谈话,因为大使是他的老 朋友。
- 八、既然那家饭馆菜不怎么样,而且服务很差,我们这次就换一家 饭馆吧。
- 九、我想学习怎么使用iPhone手机,请问,谁能给我讲一讲iPhone的使用方法?
- 十、明天是王大海妈妈的五十岁生日, 所以大海要送她一些花儿。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小李: 我来了, 我来了! 小牛, 对不起, 让你久等了。

小牛:没关系,没关系。

李太太: 小牛, 在这儿吃饭吧!

小牛: 不用了。等会儿我跟小李谈完了, 就回去。

小李: 不, 小牛, 你就在这儿吃吧。我们一边儿吃一边儿谈。

小牛: 那也好。简单点儿!

_,

小牛: 小李, 时候不早了, 我该走了。

小李: 再坐一会儿吧!

小牛:不了,我还得上街买点东西。

小李: 好吧。既然你还有事, 我就不留你了。以后有空儿再来吧。

小牛: 我走了。小李, 明天学校见! 小李: 明天见。我不送了, 慢走!

三、

高大林: 小万, 我先走了。公司那边还有点儿事我得办。

万小京: 好吧。你既然还有事儿, 我就不留你了。

高大林: 好, 再见!明天见!

万小京:好,我们改天再谈吧。我不送你了,慢走!

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

上个星期,我在美国南加州大学的同屋司米文从美国到北京来看我。我已经十多年没看见他了,不过他还是老样子,看起来跟二十几岁的时差不多一样。因为是米文第一次到中国来,所以白天我带他到很多地方去看了看,像天安门、长城、北海公园、后海和北京动物园。因为我中人美人是不多一样。因为是出去留学,所以米文有一天也到美国大使馆去问人,美人应该怎么样准备去美国的事。每天晚上我跟米文和谈到一点,一个多星,谈得非常高兴,也喝了不少酒。米文在我们就在他走的时候送到一个多星,谈得非常高兴,也喝了不少酒。米文在我们就在他走的时候送到点点。他既然从这么远的地方来看我们,我们就在他走的时候。他也请我们全家有时间到美国去看他,还说如果美人国留学的话,可以住在他家。他那样说,我跟我太太特别感谢他,因为美人在他家不但能省钱,而且女儿住在朋友家,我们这些做爸爸妈妈的当然也比较放心。



Street Sign in Qingdao

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

十 九 七 五 三 六 四 朋大張 的請我 家且既 你你 17 F 家已 就你 能我 友使先 都經 使問想 飯服然 等怎 H 面 一既 有還 和是 館務那 。談生 希下 邊然 會廢 送經 外習 望了 以王 方誰習 吧很家 兒沒 吃時 話打 會去 給把 大大 還有 國近 法能怎 差飯 ,算 明一 飯間 去過 你我 海海 記平 需早 給麼 天個 中中 因改 一很 ,館 要媽 者主 我使 要 能多 邊緊 或 麼 為天 或 我菜 談席 送 用 上 留 媽 出星 談張 講 們不 大去 點 iPhone 太期 使大 街 話, 話 這怎 兒 陽雨 買 吧那 的 希 講 次麼 了 東 他館 麼 望 了 就樣 , 訴 西 的找 换, ∞ 我 以 你 一而 大 們 後 還

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小 小 小 小 小 小 小 小 太 李 李 李 牛 李 牛 李 太 : : : 談不 對我 明 談吧不 見我 再就好 西不 再 走小 那 : 沒 完用 了 不來 天 來不吧 了 坐 也 小 弱 走 李 了 見 牛 吧留 好 了 係 起 了 了 會 你既 我 時 就等 讓 在 我 兒 沒 簡 了然 還 小 候 我 你 回 這 關 不 單 李 得 會 你 不 久 送 兒 係 點 ! 兒 上 以還 等 了 吃 了 我 明 後有 街 了 ! 了 飯 慢 天 有事 買 跟 , 小 吧 邊兒 學 空, 點 小 走 我 兒我 兒吃 校 東 該

三、高大林:小萬,我先高大林:小萬,我們改萬小京:好吧。你既萬小京:好吧。你既舊有事兒,我還有事兒,我別京:好吧。你既期分。

就然

C. NARRATIVE 短文

送天

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

Notes 注解

- B2. 我就不留你了 "Then I won't keep you" (i.e., keep you here and prevent you from leaving).

Calling on Someone to Request a Favor



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

469 the chou take out, draw out

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which at the left side of a character is written as ‡ and is referred to colloquially as 提手 **tíshǒu** "raised hand." The other component is 由 **yóu** "from" (383). Use your "hand" ‡ to "take something out" 抽 "from" 由 somewhere. Distinguish 抽 from 由 and 油 **yóu** (308).

抽 chōu take out, draw out [v]
抽字 chōukòng find time (to do something) [vo]

470 烟(煙) yān tobacco; cigarette; smoke

Radical is 火 huǒ "fire" (566). This radical is referred to colloquially as 火字旁 huǒzipáng "side made up of the character 火." When 火 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Phonetic of the simplified form is 因 yīn (181). The traditional form contains 西 xī (35) and 土 tǔ (343). Distinguish simplified 烟 from 因 yīn (181).

烟 (煙) yān tobacco, cigarette; smoke [N] 抽烟 (抽煙) chōuyān smoke (cigarettes, etc.) [Vo]
●香烟 (香煙) xiāngyān cigarette [N]
ー根烟 (一根煙) yìgēn yān a cigarette

一包烟 (一包煙) yìbāo yān a pack of cigarettes 一条烟 (一條煙) yìtiáo yān a carton of cigarettes

471 **Xī** inhale, breathe in

Radical is \square kǒu "mouth" (140). This radical is referred to colloquially as \square 字旁 kǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character \square ." Phonetic is 汉 jí (400). Distinguish from and (級) jí (174).

吸 xī inhale, breathe in [v]

吸烟 (吸煙) xīyān smoke (cigarettes, etc.) [vo]

472 区 (品) qū area, district, region

Radical is \square xǐ "cover." The simplified form contains \vee yì "govern," while the traditional form contains 品pǐn (342). This character is itself a phonetic, e.g., in the character 躯(鰛)as used in the word 身躯(身鰛)shēnqū "body." Distinguish simplified \boxtimes from \square sì (4), \square huí (161), and \boxtimes yīn (181).

area, district, region [ท]
smoking section [РН]
qū non-smoking section [РН]
area, district, region, zone [N]
mountain region [PW]
forest region [PW]

473 Figure 1975 aging sentiment; situation, condition

事情

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心 字旁 **xīnzìpáng** "side made up of the character 心" and is written as \uparrow . Phonetic is 青 **qīng** "blue-green." Distinguish 情 from 請 **qǐng** (67) and 清 **qīng** (245).

7 1) 1		3,
一件事情	yíjiàn shìqing	a thing, a matter
●心情	xīnqíng	mood, state of mind [N]
●爱情 (愛情)	àiqíng	love [N]

thing, matter IN1

474 帝(常) bāng help; gang, clique

Radical is 巾 jīn "cloth." Phonetic of the simplified form is 邦 bāng "nation." Phonetic of the traditional form is 封 fēng "seal." The other component in the traditional form is 帛 bó "silk." "Silk cloth" 巾 was formerly used as currency and was therefore recognized as being the biggest "help" 帮 to the "nation" 邦. Distinguish 帮 (幫) from 市 shì (47).

帮 (幫)	bāng	help [v]
帮忙(幫忙)	bāngmáng	help [vo]
●帮 (幫)	bāng	gang, clique, group [N/M]
●四人帮 (四人幫)	Sìrénbāng	Gang of Four [N]

shìaina

New Words in ISC 18-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

换句话说(换句話說) huàn jù huà shuō in other words [PH] 看 kàn visit, call on [v] 看朋友 kàn péngyou visit a friend 看法 kànfă way of looking at something, opinion [N] 晚 -wăn late [RE] 来晚(來晚) láiwăn come late [RC] 习惯(習慣) xíguàn custom, habit [N] 意思 yìsi intention [N] 一点小意思(一點小意思) yìdiăn(r) xiăo yìsi "a little something," a gift [РН] 这个(這個) zheige (pause filler) [1] 首 zhí be straightforward [sv] 直说(直說) zhí shuō speak frankly [PH]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、爱情要紧还是面包要紧?不知道大家的看法是什么?
- 二、你百忙之中还抽空来看我,真是让我感到很不好意思!
- 三、这儿是非吸烟区,不是吸烟区,那些人为什么还抽烟呢?
- 四、我们两点开会, 现在已经两点四十了, 换句话说, 他一定不来了。
- 五、对不起, 我不是不愿意帮你的忙, 可是这件事情我还真办不到。
- 六、老张说话很直,心里想什么就说什么,他以后大概不能做大使!
- 七、中国西北边的山区,交通不方便,很多地区小孩子还是走路去上学。
- 八、小张, 你又来晚了。我们不是说过9:00开会吗?现在已经9:20了。 你这个习惯一定要改!
- 九、中国有句老话说"笑一笑,十年少",意思是常常笑、心情好的人可以比不喜欢笑、心情不好的人活得更长。
- 十、王大海很难过地问:"为什么我觉得自己还行,但是总是找不到 爱情?"

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

-,

美国留学生:对不起,我因为有点事,所以来晚了。

简太太 : 没关系。

美国留学生: 这是一点小意思。

简太太 : 您太客气了。请进,请坐。

简先生:请抽烟。

美国留学生: 我不会抽, 谢谢。

简先生 : 您在电话里说有点事要找我?

美国留学生: 不好意思。有点小事情, 想请您

帮个忙。

简太太 :请喝茶

美国留学生:谢谢。

简先生:不要客气,请直说。

美国留学生: 这个, 这个, 事情是这样子的……



Sign in Hong Kong Park

二、

小王: 老高, 您能帮我一个忙吗?

老高: 是什么事情?

小王: 我有一个好朋友下星期五要来看我, 但是我们家里没有地方让他住。不知道有没有可能让他住在你们家? 只是一个晚上而已。

老高: 当然可以, 这根本不成问题。我跟你是老同学, 这种事情不用客气。

小王: 真是非常感谢你愿意帮我这么大的忙!

老高: 没事儿, 没事儿。

三、

张明: 小马, 你后天忙不忙?

马清: 好像没什么特别的事情。

张明: 我星期六晚上要办酒席, 那天是我外公的一百岁生日。你一定要抽空来参加!

马清: 你外公的一百岁生日? 不简单! 我怎么敢不来啊? 几点? 在哪里?

张明:时间大概是六点钟,饭店还没决定。我明天再给你打电话。

马清: 好, 一言为定!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、作者王定和先生在《为什么中国人会这样,外国人会那样?》那本书上提到,中国人对不可能的事情有时候不好意思直说不可能,就用"不方便"来代替。他们听说有一个外国人会说中国话,可是不认识中国字,可能会跟他说:"你不认识中国字?那你看中文报纸不太方便。"可是那个外国人会想,"有什么不方便?不认识中国字根本不可能看中文报纸!"
- 二、从一九六六年到一九七六年,"四人帮"在中国做了很多坏事,所以这个时间也叫"十年大乱"。不过,毛主席一九七六年九月九日死了以后,"四人帮"不久也就跟着完了。从那个时候起,中国人的生活一年比一年好。
- 三、我觉得抽烟是最不好的习惯,比喝酒还坏。抽烟不但对自己不好,而且对其他人也不好。我特别不喜欢的事情就是看见有人在非吸烟区抽烟,像在饭馆或在图书馆或在办公室,这实在是太不应该了。他们不认识字吗?你如果一定得抽烟,一定要先看清楚,这里是吸烟区还是非吸烟区。如果是非吸烟区,那么就不可以抽烟。我有个同学,小李,他从小学六年级就开始抽烟,当然没让家里人知道。他刚开始抽烟的时候,抽得不多,大概每天一、两根香烟,后来越抽越多,现在每天都抽一包香烟,太可怕了!我一直跟他说他得改这个坏习惯,可是他现在已经改不了了,怎么办?

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+ 九 1 七 六 五 三 愛覺王 活可少中 了過小 很中 甚老 可對 四我 那這 讓你 情得大得以, 或 9 張 多國 麼張 是不 十們 些兒我百 了雨 自海更比 你 地西 ,說這起 人是 感忙 的要 有 這開你 己很長不思句 區北 他話 件, 為非 到之看緊 個習 事我 喜 老 小邊以很 甚 很中法還 還難 吸 是 不還 歡常常說 孩的 後首 情不 是是 行過 慣嗎 子山 大, 我是 晚 麵 , 地 品 抽 還區 概心還不 意 麼 了 空 但問 定現 煙 不裡 是, 真願 0 是: 不 辨意 呢 要在我走交能想 總一 情心一 ? 是 做甚 改已們 路通 不幫 ? 是為 不情笑 去不 大 到你 經不 不 找什 好好, 煙 9.2 的的十 不麼 真 知 品 人人年 到我 是 道

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

老

高

用

馬

清

言

為

定

!

話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 簡 簡 美 或 先 太 生 太 留 學 生 : : 請 您 這 太 是 抽 客 煙 氣 點 了 小 意 0 思 請

> > 進

請

坐

簡

太 或

太

沒

關

係

美

留

學

生

:

對

不

起

,

我

因

為

有

點

事

所

以

來

晚

了

或 留 學 生 : 我 不 會 抽 , 謝

先 生 : 您 在 電 話 裡 說 有 謝 點

簡

美

美

或 留 學 生 : 不 好 意 思 。有 點 小 事 事 情 要 想 找 我 請 您

幫

個

忙

三

5

情

老

簡 美 簡 或 太 先 生 留 太 學 生 不 謝 請 要 喝 謝 客 茶 0 氣 , 請

:

小 老 高 I 是 什 事 情 小

F

:

老

高

,

您

能

幫

我

個

忙

嗎

美

或

留

學

生

:

這

個

,

這

個

,

事

情

是

這

樣

子

的

直

說

學當 讓們我 他家有 然 這可 住裡一 種以 在沒個 你有好 情這 們地朋 不根 家 方友 5 讓下 客不 只他星 氣 成 是住期 問 F 個 不要 題 晚知來 上 道看 我 而 跟 有我 你 没, 是 有但 老 可是 同 能我

> 馬 馬 張 張 清 明 清 明 : 參生那我 好 1 加日天星 像 馬 是期 沒 你 你我六 什 一外晚 麼 後 定公上 天 特 要的要 忙 別 的 不 事 忙 酒 百

> > 來歲

給店時 啊不你 ? 簡外 你還間 打沒大 幾單公 電決概 點 ! 的 5 我 定是 在 怎百 哪 麼歲 我點 裡 敢生 明鐘 天, 不日 再飯

張

明

"Lěngqì Kāifàng, Qǐng Wù Xīyān" (Air Conditioning On, Please Do Not Smoke)

高 王 : 沒 我真 這是 事 麼非 兒 大 的 沒 感 事 忙 謝 兒 你 願 意 幫

小

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

、作者王定和先生在《為什麼中國人會這樣,外、作者王定和先生在《為什麼中國人會這樣,外、作者王定和先生在《為什麼中國人會這樣,外、作者王定和先生在《為什麼中國人會這樣,那麼一点,可是那個外國人會想,「四人幫」不知識,可能的事情有時候不好意思直說不可能,我覺得抽煙,不認識中國字內理是大不應該了。他們不認識中國字內理是大不應該了。他們不認識中國字內理是大不應該了。他們不認識中國字內對」不有世別不喜歡的事情就是看見有人在非吸煙區,就我覺得抽煙是最不好的習慣,比喝酒還壞。拍煙,像在飯館或在圖書館或在辦公事,可能會跟他時候起,中國人幫」不久也就跟著完了。從那個以後,「四人幫」不久也就跟著完了。從那個以後,「四人幫」不久也就跟著完了。從那個以後,「四人幫」不久也就跟著完了。從那個時候是最不好的習慣,比喝酒還壞。拍煙,樣來越抽越多,現在每天都抽一包香煙,太可能會跟他現在已經改不了。他們不認識字嗎?你如果一定人來越抽越多,現在每天都抽一包香煙,太可能會跟他現在已經改不了了,怎麼辦?

Notes 注解

- A2b. 让我感到很不好意思 (讓我感到很不好意思) "makes me feel very embarrassed"
- A5. 办不到 (辦不到) "can't do," "can't arrange," or "be impossible"
- A9. 文一笑,十年少 Xiào yí xiào, shínián shǎo "Smile and you're ten years younger" [IE]
- A10. 自己还行 (自己還行) "I myself am not too bad."
- C2a. ◆ 舌 (屬) luàn "be disorderly," "messy," or "chaotic" [sv]
- C2b. ◆十年大乱 (十年大亂) Shínián Dà Luàn "Decade of Great Chaos" refers to the Cultural Revolution, which took place from 1966–1976.
- C2c. "四人帮"不久也就跟着完了 ("四人幫"不久也就跟著完了) lit. "The 'Gang of Four' not long after followed by being finished," or in more idiomatic English, "Not long after, the 'Gang of Four' also came to an end."

Calling on Someone to Request a Favor (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

475 róng allow

róng allow; appearance; contain

Radical is 中 mián "roof." This radical is referred to colloquially as 宝盖头 (寶蓋頭) bǎogàitóu "top made up of a canopy." The other component is 谷, which is used in the word 山谷 shāngǔ "valley." The "valley" 谷 "contains" 容 many houses with "roofs" 中. Distinguish 容 from 完 wán (296), 客 kè (392), and 定 dìng (270).

容 Róng Rong [sN]

476 yì change; easy

Radical is 日 rì "sun" (132). The whole character can serve as a phonetic, e.g., 蜴 as in 蜥蜴 xīyì "lizard." 易 was originally a pictograph of a lizard, with 日 representing the head and the rest of the character representing the body and tail. Some lizards in North China are able to "change" 易 their color to blend in with their surroundings, hence the meaning (the modern character for "lizard" 蜴 has an added "insect" radical). Distinguish 易 from 场 (場) chǎng (227), traditional 陽 yáng (285), and 喝 hē (371).

易 Yì Yi [sn]

容易 róngyi be easy [sv]

477 尽(盡)

jin to the very limit; all; to exhaust

Radical of the simplified form is \square shī "corpse." Radical of the traditional form is \square mǐn "vessel." Distinguish simplified \bowtie from wū \bowtie (81).

尽量(盡量)	jìnliàng	to the best of one's ability [A]

478 力

lì strength; force

This character is both a radical and a phonetic. It is a picture of a flexed forearm with the muscles tensed, indicating "strength." Distinguish $\mathcal D$ from $\mathcal D$ jiǔ (10), simplified $\mathcal D$ wèi (182), simplified $\mathcal D$ bàn (317), and simplified $\mathcal D$ wù (413).

尽力(盡力)	jìnlì	do one's best [vo]
●力量	lìliang	strength, force [N]
●力氣	lìqi	strength, effort [N]
●能力	nénalì	ability, capability [N]

479 化

huà change melt

The radical is \sqsubseteq **bĭ** "ladle," and not \bigwedge (\smallint) as one would expect. The whole character can serve as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., \rightleftarrows huā (455). Distinguish \mathclap from \mathclap dài (427), \thickspace běi (16), and \rightleftarrows .

文化	wénhuà	culture [N]
化学(化學)	huàxué	chemistry [N]

480 流(流)

liú flow; spread

●流 (流)	liú	flow [v]

●文化交流 (文化交流) wénhuà jiāoliú cultural exchange [РН]

Note that the difference between the official simplified form and the official traditional form of this character does not show up in all fonts; in some fonts, they both look the same.

New Words in ISC 18-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

打听 (打聽) dǎtīng inquire [v]

打听到(打聽到) dǎtīngdào inquire and find out [RC]

…就是 "jiù shì just..., simply... [PT]

请留步 (請留步) qǐng liúbù "please don't bother to see me out" [IE]

万一 (萬一) wànyī if by chance; in case [MA]

想起来(想起來) xiángqilai think of [RC]

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、很多事情说起来容易,做起来可就不那么容易了。
- 二、你放心, 我会尽力在下个星期一以前把这些事情做完。
- 三、有时候我们很容易忘了一句话的力量可能有多大。
- 四、王力生的专业是化学,但是我真不知道他有没有能力学那么难的一个专业。
- 五、今天不但非常冷,而且风也很大,你们如果没什么特别的事情, 尽量少出门。
- 六、从地图上看,黄河从中国的西边一直流到东边的黄海里头去,全 长有5,464公里。
- 七、从1949年到1990年左右,中国大陆跟台湾之间的交流很少,可是最近二十年两岸之间的交流越来越多了。
- 八、"对不起,我现在不在位子上,请留下 您的姓名和电话。我听到这个留言以 后,会尽快地回您的电话,谢谢!"
- 九、中国国际文化交流中心在北京东土城 路9号, 电话是86-10-64489600, 传真 是86-10-64201641.
- 十、王大海虽然长得不高,人也不重, 可是他的力气可真大!



Taxi Stand in Hong Kong (的士 díshì "taxi")

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

:这件事,我尽量帮您打听打听。 简先生

美国留学生: 真是太谢谢您了。不过万一不容易打听到, 也没关系。

简先生 : 我知道。我尽力就是。

美国留学生: 我看时候也不早了, 我该走了。

简先生:忙什么?再坐一会儿。

美国留学生: 不了, 我真得走了。改天再来。

简先生 :对了,我刚想起一件事来。我这个星期五要去台中看朋

友,不在台北。您星期六打电话给我也可以。

美国留学生: 好的。 简先生 :我送您。

美国留学生: 不用了, 请留步。

简先生:那好。慢走啊。再见!

美国留学生: 再见!

二、

男生: 为什么大多数男人的力气比女人大?

女生:也有女人力气比男人大!

男生: 当然, 我知道, 可是我说的是"大多数男人"。

女生: 男人跟女人就是不一样。你有没有想过这个问题, 为什么大多

数的女人活得比男人久?

=

易力: 王直, 你能不能尽快过来帮我一个忙?

王直: 我得先做完一件很要紧的事。我等会儿就过去帮你。

易力:好,可是还是请你尽可能早一点儿过来。

王直: 没问题, 你放心好了。我这个人说话算话!我说我会过去帮你,

我就一定会过去帮你。

四、

中国的包校长: 容校长, 我们两个学校是不是以后应该多交流一下? 美国的容校长: 好啊! 您这个主意实在太好了! 语言交流、文化交流、

都可以。我们今年九月就开始吧!

中国的包校长: 好, 一言为定!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、大家都说开车很容易,很多孩子十五、六岁就已经会开车了,可是我已经二十一岁了,还不会开车。我觉得开车不但一点儿也不容易,而且是一件很可怕的事情!我学开车学了好几个月了,真的尽了最大的力,但是每一次开车我还是会觉得很紧张。我妈妈叫我多练习,她说开多了,就好了。请问,你现在要到哪里去吗?我做司机,我送你去,怎么样?我应该多练习开车。上车吧!我们马上就走!
- 二、我今年21岁,女,大三,在北大学习。我的专业是日文。我从大一开始,就一直很尽力地学习日文。我对日本文化和日本人的日常生活特别感兴趣。虽然多年以来,中日之间有不少相当严重的问题,而且要解决这些问题也不那么容易,需要很长的时间,但是我还是觉得两国之间的文化交流很要紧。我打算明年到日本去留学,所以现在得尽快学好日文。我最近想找一位在北大学习的日本女同学,跟她进行语言交流,我可以帮她学中文,她帮我学日文。我最大的希望就是以后能帮忙解决中日之间的一些问题!

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 F 四 三 是王 是路中 後您 二跟從 464 門們今 道王 可有 那很 96 國 他大 的 1949 , 到地 。如天 他力 能時 這放 多 不 些心 的海 號國 會姓 有生 有候 東圖 果不 起 里 盡名 多我 事 易情 力雖 兩 沒的 邊上 沒但 -64201641 快和 氣然 的看 有專 大們 情我 了 什非 說 間到 可長 地電 做會 能 業 麼常 很 起 的 黄 回話 間 力是 得 容 盡 來 特冷 海 的 學 86-10-64489600, 不 化 河 别, 力 容 的我 交流年 裡 那 高 學 從 的而 忘 在 易 電聽 頭 流很左 麼 事且 了 下 , 話到 越少右 去 難 或 但 情風 人 做 個 來, 的 的 是 這 ,也 白 星 也 起 謝 越可中 全 個 西 盡很 不 話 期 來 個 謝 長邊 是國 留請 重 量大 的 可 了 專 ! 有一 最大 小 傳土 言 留 , 就 不 力 以 , 5直 出你 口 真城 以下 近陸 量 前 不

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

美

或

留

學

生

:

再

見

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 簡 簡 美 美 先 或 先 或 先 生 留 生 留 生 : 學 : 學 : 生 我 生 這 知 : 件 不真 走我 道 事 容是 ? 了 看 0 , 易太 我 我 時 打謝 盡 盡 候 聽謝 力 量 也 到您 會 就 幫 不 了 是 您 早 也 0 打 了 沒不 聽 , 關過 打 我 係萬 聽

> > 該

Ξ

簡 簡 美 先 或 留 生 : 學 生 忙 : 什 再不 麼 來 了 再 , 坐 我 真 兒 走 了 改 0 我 天

我不這對 也在個了 可台星 以北期我 五剛 您要想 星去起 期 六中件 打看 7朋話 電 給

簡 簡 美 先 或 先 生 留 生 : 學 : 我 那 生 好 : 送 不 您 0 慢 用 0 走 了 啊 , 請

留

再

見 步

!

美

或

留

學

生

:

好

的

男 女 生 生 : : 也 大為 5 有 什 女 麼 人 大 力 多 氣 數 比 男 男 人 人 的 大 力 ! 氣 比 女 人

> 四 美 中 或 的 白 校 長

> > 交學

流校

中 或 或 的 的 白 容 校 校 長 長 好 今化太好 年交好啊 九流了 ! 月, 言 ! 您 就都語這 為 開可 定 始 以交主 。流意 我、實 們文在

易 力 你 能 不 能 盡 快 過 來 幫 我

王 直 等我 會得 兒先 就做 過完 去 幫 你 很 緊 的 事 0 我

易 力 兒好 過 , 來可 是 還 是 請 你 盡 可 能 早 點

直 我說沒 就話問 算題 定 話, 會 ! 你 過 我放 說心 幫 我好 你 會 過 去 這 幫 個 你

王

: 一是容 下不校 ? 是長 以, 後我 應們 該兩 多個

個王 忙直

生 的有男 女想人 男 人過跟 活這女 得個人 比問就 男 題是 不 什樣 麼 大你 多有

數沒

女

生 當 數然 人我 知 道 可 是 我 說 的 是

大

男

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

能幫行位現緊我不嚴雖化一我我 幫我語在在。還那重然和直的今 開,問叫次月很車二五家

習機請媽一個件開經十大



(symbols under characters are Taiwan's Chinese Phonetic Alphabet and indicate Mandarin pronunciation)

Notes 注解

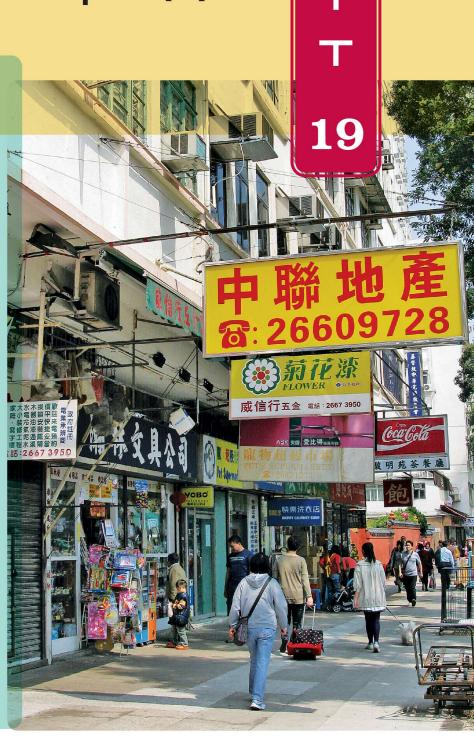
- A6. ●全长 (全長) quáncháng "total length" [N]
- A7a. ◆大陆 (大陸) dàlù "mainland" or "continent" [PW]. Learn the expression 中国大陆 (中國大陸) "mainland China."
- A7b. ●A跟B之间 (A跟B之間) A gēn B zhījiān "between A and B" [PT]. The phrase 中国大陆跟台湾之间的交流 (中國大陸跟台灣之間的交流) means "interaction between mainland China and Taiwan."
- A7c. ●两岸 (兩岸) liǎng'àn "the two shores" (of the Taiwan Straits) [N]. This is a politically neutral way of referring to mainland China and Taiwan.
- A8. ②留言 liúyán "recorded message" (N)
- A10a. 长得不高 (長得不高) zhǎngde bù gāo lit. "grew up in such a way that he is not tall" or, in better English, simply "is not tall."
- A10b. 人也不重 lit. "As a person he is not heavy" or, in more idiomatic English, "He's not heavy."
- B3. ●说话算话 (說話算話) shuōhuà suàn huà "do as one says one will do" or "mean what one says" [IE]
- C1a. 十五、六岁 (十五、六歲) "15 or 16 years old"
- C1b. The verb [14], which often means "call," here means "tell" (someone to do something).
- C1c. ◆练习 (練習) liànxí "practice" [v]
- C1d. 她说开多了,就好了 (她說開多了,就好了) lit. "She says when I have driven more, it'll be better."
- C1e. 你现在要到哪里去吗?(你現在要到哪裡去嗎?) "Do you want to go someplace now?" This sentence is already a question on account of the 吗 (嗎) at the end, so the question word 哪里 (哪裡) does not mean "Where?" but instead means "somewhere" or "someplace" (IWC 12-2: 10).
- C2a. ●日常 richáng "daily," "everyday" or "routine" [AT]. 日常生活 means "daily life." Another common collocation is 日常工作 "routine work."
- C2b. Pay careful attention to the grammatical structure of the long, complex sentence that begins with 虽然 (雖然). Everything before the 但是 goes with 虽然 (雖然). An English translation of the kernel of the sentence would be: "Although for many years..., I still feel that...."
- **C2c.** 多年以来 (多年以來) "for many years." This means the same as 很多年以来 (很多年以來), but has here been shortened for stylistic reasons. As we have noted before, according to the rules of Chinese prosody, there is often a preference for groups of four syllables or characters.
- C2d. 中日之间 (中日之間) "between China and Japan." This is an abbreviated, more formal way of writing 中国跟日本之间 (中國跟日本之間). Cf. A7b above.
- C2e. 两国之间 (兩國之間) "between the two countries." Again, cf. A7b above.
- C2f. ●进行 (進行) jinxíng "conduct," "carry out," or "do" [v]. 进行语言交流 (進行語言交流) means "conduct a language exchange."

Visiting People (II)

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Visiting a friend or classmate who is ill.
- 2. Explaining why you didn't come to visit your sick friend or classmate earlier.
- 3. Asking someone how they're feeling and urging them to get enough rest and take good care of themselves.
- 4. Offering to help someone if they need assistance.
- 5. Paying a formal call on a teacher at her or his home.
- Your progress in learning Chinese in the areas of pronunciation, grammar, vocabulary, accuracy, and fluency.
- 7. Different kinds of tests, your impressions of a test, how you did, etc.
- 8. Academic life: reports, term papers, theses, courses, grades, credits, and semesters.
- 9. A passage on simplified and traditional characters.
- 10. A passage involving a pun that is a reflection of modern Chinese society.



Visiting a Sick Classmate



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

481 考

kăo test, take a test

Radical is 老 lǎo "old" (61). This character is itself a phonetic, e.g., 烤 kǎo "bake." Note that 考 has an alternate form written 攷. Distinguish 考 from 老 lǎo (61) and 者 zhě (298).

考	kăo	test, take a test [v]
小考	xiăokăo	quiz [N]
大考	dàkăo	final examination [N]
●月考	yuèkăo	monthly test [N]
●期中考	gīzhōngkǎo	mid-term examination เทา

482 试(試) shì try; test

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic is 式 shì (598) as in 方式 fāngshì "way."

.....

试 (試)	shì	try [v]
试试(試試)	shìshi	try
试试看(試試看)	shìshi kàn	try and see

考试 (考試) kǎoshì test, examination [N]; take a test [vo]

期中考试 (期中考試) qīzhōng kǎoshì mid-term examination [PH]

483 病 bìng get sick; illness

Radical is \upredef chuáng "disease" [BF]. Phonetic is \upredef bǐng, which is third of the heavenly stems.

病 bìng get sick [v]; illness, disease [N]
大病 dà bìng major illness
小病 xiǎo bìng minor illness
生病 shēngbìng become sick [vo]

484 距 pǎo rur

Radical is 足 **zú** "foot" (546), since you "run" 跑 with your "feet" 足. Phonetic is 包 **bāo** (332). Distinguish 跑 from 包.

跑 păo run [V] 跑来(跑來) păolái run over here, come over 跑去 păoqù run over there 跑来跑去(跑來跑去) păolái păoqù run all over the place 跑步 păobù run paces, run [vo]; running [N] 慢跑 mànpăo jog [V]; jogging [N]

485 飞(飛) fēi fly

This character is itself a radical. The traditional form is a pictograph of a crane in flight, with the two \(\time\) depicting the crane's wings, and the straight line in the middle depicting the crane's body and tail.

●飞 (飛) fēi fly [v]

●飞机 (飛機) fēijī airplane [N]

●飞机场 (飛機場) fēijīchǎng airport [pw]

●开飞机 (開飛機) kāi fēijī fly an airplane

●坐飞机 (坐飛機) zuò fēijī take an airplane, travel by plane

486 角凸 (角凸) chuán boat, ship

Radical is **zhōu** "boat." The simplified form form simplified with "several" survivors or "mouths" Distinguish simplified from simplified **méi** (92).

●船(船) chuán boat, ship [N]

●坐船 (坐船) **zuò chuán** take a boat, travel by boat

New Words in ISC 19-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

工夫	gōngfu	time [N]
还不是…(還不是…)	hái bú shi	if it isn't [РТ]
花	huā	spend (money, time) [v]
花钱 (花錢)	huāqián	spend money [vo]
花时间(花時間)	huā shíjiān	spend time [PH]
直到	zhí dào	straight up to; until [PH]
人人	rénrén	everybody [PT]
天天	tiāntiān	every day [PT]
年年	niánnián	every year [PT]
有一点… (有一點…)	yŏu yìdiăn(r)	be a little [PT] (usually describes something negative
		or undesirable; e.g., 她有一点儿不高兴 [她有
		一點兒不高興] "She's a little upset.")

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、老高天天都抽这么多烟,他早晚一定会生病的。
- 二、学生怕考试,老师喜欢考试,中国、外国都一样。
- 三、我不能保证一定能解决你的问题,但是我愿意试试看。
- 四、小林因为明天要坐最早的一班飞机,所以得很早就去飞机场。
- 五、中国人常说:生、老、病、死是每个人这一生都会走过的路。
- 六、同学们,快来试试这道菜,我花了好大工夫才做好。你们喜欢吗?
- 七、我们的中文课天天都有小考,每个月有月考,还有期中考跟大考。
- 八、坐船去太慢了,得花好多时间;我没有那工夫,还是坐飞机去吧!
- 九、听说天天跑步的人不太容易生病,所以我决定从明天起,每天早上慢跑 半小时。
- 十、王大海的名字有一个"海"字,可是其实他很怕水,每次坐船都觉得有一点儿受不了。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

—

美国女生: 听说你病了。现在好点儿了吗?

中国女生:已经好多了。其实也没什么大病。谢谢你还跑来看我。

美国女生: 本来早就应该来看你, 只是这几天忙得很, 一直没有工夫, 所以

直到今天才来。对了,给你带了一点儿水果。

中国女生:谢谢你。你这几天忙什么呢?

美国女生:还不是忙着期中考试。天天都考,忙死了!

 $\stackrel{-}{-}$

张阳明:老王,找你找了好久了。你跑到哪里去了?

王明力:我刚到城里去买票去了,因为我最近要到日本去。

张阳明: 你要去日本啊? 你坐飞机去还是坐船去?

王明力: 我平常都坐飞机, 所以这次决定坐船。

张阳明: 船票现在要多少钱?

王明力:一个人两千五,跟机票差不多一样。

 \equiv \langle

孩子:妈妈,我好像生病了!

妈妈: 儿子, 你怎么每次学校要考试就会生病?

孩子:我……我……我……

四、

小李:小金,你怎么最近天天都去图书馆呢?同学们都看不到你啊!

小金:还不是因为我在准备考试!我每天一下课就去图书馆学习。直到

下星期四才能考完。快要受不了了!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我习惯每天早上去慢跑,可是已经有一个多星期没有跑步了。我这几天真是忙得很!不但学校里有很多考试得准备,而且家里还有很多事情得做。我觉得要是再这样,一定会生病的。我下个星期要坐飞机去香港替"人人公司"开一个很要紧的会,我一定得参加,怎么也不能生病!

二、我去年六月本来要坐飞机去上海,可是去机场的路上有很多车子。我本来应该提前两个小时就到机场,但在路上花了很长时间,好不容易提前半个小时才到。等我从停车场跑到机场的时候,小姐说飞机已经快要飞走了,时间太晚了,她不让我上飞机。所以我现在坐飞机一定会早三个小时到机场,这样不会那么紧张。

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

天

是

期

走

去

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 五 兀 +八 七 六 起聽 中我 過 中 飛小 我 老 每 王 坐 坐 你同 次大 飛 船 考 們 們學 的 或 機 生 說 林 不 高 , 坐 海 機夫 跟的 路 場 能 怕 天 每天 喜們 人 大 天天 船的 去 太 大中 歡 常 為 考 天 保 早跑 吧 慢 考 嗎 快 證 試 都名 文 說 明 都 課 ? 覺字 上步 天 抽 了 來 慢的 得 要 定 老 這 天 有 , 生 試 有 跑 能 師 麼 人 得 天 华 試 半不 都 喜 多 花 解 老 最 個 這 小太 點 決 歡 煙 早 好 有 道 時 容 你 考 海 多 11 病 的 菜 受 的 試 他 易 時 考 不 門 早 間 死 班 , 生 字 我 3 題 中 晚 病 ; 每 是 飛 花 或 我 個 每 機 可 了 但 定 沒 個 所 月 是 好 是 外 會 有 所 以 有 人 其 大 我 或 生 以 我 那 月 這 實 I 願 都 病 得 決 I 考 夫 他 意 的 生 很 定 夫 很 オ 試 樣 早 從 都 還 怕 做 試 明 還 有 會 就 水 好 看

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

兀

//\

金

大

為

我

在

準

備

考

試 都

我

每

天

-

課

就

去

몲

書

館

學

習

直

到

_

星

期

兀

オ 能

考

完

快

要

去

晑

書

館

呢

?

同

學

們

都

看

不

到

你

圆

ļ

不了了 不

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

張

陽

明

你

要

去

 \Box

本

?

你

쑤

飛

機

去

還

是

식스

船

去

 \pm

明

力

我

別川

到

城

裡

去

買

票

去

了

大

為

我

最

近

要

到

 \Box

本

去

張

 \pm

明 陽

力

個 票

人

지 3

Ŧ

 $\overline{\mathbf{H}}$

跟

機

票

差

不

多

樣

張 王

明

:

船

現

在

要

多

少 機

錢

?

明

力

我

1

常

都

坐

飛

所

以

這

次

決

定

华

船

孩 子 :

媽 媽 我

媽 媽 兒 子 你 怎 好 麼 像 生 每 次 病

學

校

要

考

試

就

會

生

病

了

1 孩 李 子 : 1 我 金 你 怎 麼 最 我 近 天 天

美

中

或

女

生

謝

謝

你

你

這

幾

天

忙

1+

麽

呢

美

或

女

生

中 美

或

女

生

或

女

生

聽

說

你

病

了

陽

明 : 老 王 找 你 找 了 好 久 了 你 跑 到 哪 裡 去 了

Sign in Zhenjiang

或 女 生 : 還 不 是 忙 著 期 中 考 試 0 天 天 都 考 忙 死 1

給本 己 你來 經 帶 早 好 了 就 多 應 點 該 兒 來 水看 果你 只 是 這 幾 大 忙 得 很 , 跑 直 來 沒 看 有 我 \perp 夫 所 以

直

到

今天

オ

來

對

了

其 現 實 在 也 好 沒 點 1+ 兒 麼 了 嗎 大 病 謝 謝 你 還

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

長時車海我 麼 要香病我而 樣一我飛的才時就子 去 也緊港的覺 , 不定上走時到 間到 。可年 不的替 能會一我要裡 機我是六 機,,等好場本去月生,人下是。時小我不,來機本 病我人個再 生,人下是還 早 機 一公星這定司期樣 姐從容但應場來說停易在該的要 我晚飛車提路提路坐 得一要 參開坐 現了機場前上前上飛 在,已跑半花兩有機 加一飛定 坐她經到個了個很去 ,個機會 飛不快機小很小多上 怎很去生

Notes 注解

- A4. ●班 bān (for scheduled trips of a plane, bus, or train) [M]. 最早的一班飞机 (最早的一班飛機) means "the earliest plane."
- **A5.** 这一生 (這一生) "(in) this life"
- A6. 好大工夫 "a lot of time"
- A8. 我没有那工夫 (我沒有那工夫) "I don't have that/so much time." Here 那工夫 means 那个工夫 (那個工夫). In colloquial conversation, the measure 个 (個) is sometimes omitted after the specifiers 这 (這) and 那.
- **B2a.** 我刚到城里去买票去了 (我剛到城裡去買票去了) "I just went into town to buy a ticket." The first 去 in this sentence is optional and could be omitted, but such usage is common in colloquial Beijing speech.
- **B2b.** 最近 "in the near future" or "soon." Though 最近 usually means "in the recent past" or "recently," it can also mean "in the near future." From the Chinese point of view, the meaning is the same: that is, at a time point very close to the present, whether moving back in time or moving ahead in time.
- C2a. 好不容易提前半个小时才到 (好不容易提前半個小時才到) "barely arrived half an hour in advance"
- C2b. 早三个小时 (早三個小時) lit. "early by three hours," or in idiomatic English, "three hours early"

Visiting a Sick Classmate (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

487 身 sh

shēn body; oneself

This character is itself a radical. Distinguish 身 from 谢 (謝) xiè (66).

488 体(體) tǐ body

Radical of the simplified form is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written \uparrow when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character 人." Radical of the traditional form is 骨 **gǔ** "bone." Distinguish simplified 体 from 本 **běn** (242) and 保 **bǎo** (329).

身体 (身體) shēntǐ body; health [N]

●简体字 (簡體字) jiǎntǐzì simplified Chinese character [N]

线(績) jī achievement, accomplishment; merit

Radical is 丝 (絲) **sī** "silk." When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 绞 丝旁 (絞絲旁) **jiǎosīpáng** "side made up of twisted silk" and is written as 纟(糸). Phonetic is 责 (責) "responsibility" (499).

成绩 (成績) chéngjī grade (e.g., on a test or in a course); results; achievements [N]

●成绩单 (成績單) chéngjīdān(r) transcript [N]

490 注 zhù concentrate or

Radical is 水 **shuǐ** "water" (333), which is written ? and is referred to colloquially as 三点水 (三點水) **sāndiǎn shuǐ** "three drops of water" when it occurs at the left-hand side of a character. Phonetic is 主 **zhǔ** "primary" or "main" (346). Distinguish 注 from 干 **wáng** (6), 主, 住 **zhù** "live" (138) and 往 **wǎng** "go to" (218).

注意 zhùyì pay attention (to) [v/vo]

●注解 (注解) zhùjiě annotation, explanatory note [N]

491 于(於) yú be located at, in, on, to

Radical of the simplified form is 二 èr "two" (2). Radical of the traditional form is 方 fāng "place" (158). The other components of the traditional form are 人 rén (30) and 〉 bīng "ice." Both simplified 于 and traditional 於 are phonetics, e.g., in the character 宇, which is used in the word 宇宙 yǔzhòu "universe"; and in the character 淤, which is used in the word 淤泥 yūní "silt." Distinguish simplified 于 from simplified 干 gān (275) and 千 qiān (114).

于 Yú Yu (also Woo, a Korean surname) [sn]

(Note that the surname Yu is written as \mp in both simplified

and traditional script.)

关于 (關於) guānyú about, concerning [cv]

492 论 (論) lùn discuss, debate

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzìpáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic is \hat{c} (龠) lún.

论文 (論文) lùnwén thesis, dissertation [N]

New Words in ISC 19-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

报告(報告) bàogào report [N/V] 学期 (學期) xuéqī semester, term [N] 学期报告(學期報告) xuéqī bàogào term paper [PH] 好好儿的 (好好兒的) hăohāorde well [PT] 来电话(來電話) lái diànhuà call on the telephone [PH] 门 (門) (measure for courses at school) [M] mén (e.g., 一门课 (一門課) "a course")

学分 (學分) xuéfēn credit, credit hour [N]

◎ Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、这位同学,请问,你的学期报告是关于什么的?
- 二、小李的论文是关于天文的;我的论文是关于语言学的。
- 三、学中文的学生一定得注意他们的声调,特别是第三声。
- 四、这本书是关于国际关系的,特别是中美关系,写得非常有意思。
- 五、小张,你这学期的学期报告得好好儿地准备,这样成绩才会好。
- 六、你们学校一门课算几个学分?一个学期最多可以上几门课呢?
- 七、我跟你讲,身体要紧!一定要注意身体,可别把自己的身体忙坏了!
- 八、要注意看那本书的注解,注解可以帮你很清楚地了解每个句子的
- 九、我男朋友从前有抽烟的坏习惯,可是因为很多朋友都告诉他抽烟对 身体不好, 所以他现在不抽了。
- 十、王大海上学期的成绩很差,所以他不敢让爸爸妈妈看他的成绩单。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

中国女生: 考得怎么样?

美国女生:还可以吧。成绩还没出来呢。(过了一会儿)我不多坐了。过

几天再来看你。

中国女生:吃了饭再走吧。

美国女生:不了,不了,谢谢你,我得走了。你多注意身体。有什么事的

话,来个电话,大家都可以帮你。

中国女生:太谢谢你了。有事我会说的。

美国女生: 再见! 中国女生: 再见!

_ \

金太太: 你最近身体怎么样?

马太太:还可以吧,不好也不坏。

金太太: 那就好。希望你以后也不会生病。

马太太:是啊,多谢你了!

 \equiv

小文:成绩出来了!你的成绩怎么样?

小万: 比上个学期好一点儿。你的成绩呢?

小文:我的成绩也还算可以吧。

小万: 你什么课最好?

小文: 我是数学最好, 法文最差, 差一点儿没通过。你呢?

小万: 我是化学课最好, 生物课最差。

四、

老师:各位同学请注意,明天的考试请你们好好儿地准备第三课。听到

了没有?

学生:可是老师,我们刚上完第二课,还没开始上第三课啊!

五、

小李: 小严, 你正在写的论文是关于什么的呢?

小严:我的论文是关于中国和西方最近一百五十年的文化交流的。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、有的学生愿意考试,可是不喜欢写学期报告,还有的学生比较喜欢用学期报告代替大考。我比较喜欢写学期报告,这样我可以慢慢儿地写,没有太大的压力。当然可能要花比较多的时间,但是不会像考试那么紧张。不过,我这学期的课,四门课里头有三门都有大考!怎么办?那么多考试会给我很大的压力,我怕我要是太紧张,一不注意,身体受不了,最后,这学期的成绩就会不好。
- 二、简体字和繁体字

中文可以说有两种文字,就是简体字(也叫简化字)和繁体字(也叫正体字)。中国大陆和新加坡使用简体字,台湾和香港使用繁体字。不过,有时候在中国大陆和新加坡也看得到繁体字;同样地,有时候在台湾和香港也看得到简体字。简体字在中国大陆从1956年以后越来越流行,不过,其实中国很早就有简体字。像两干多年前就有"从"这个简体字,而繁体字的"從"是后来才有的。不少简体

字是从草书来的,像"東→东"、"為→为"、"樂→乐"。还有的时候,一个简体字代替了两个繁体字,像简体字"面"相当于繁体字的"面"("side, face")和"麵"("flour, noodles")。当然,很多简体字和繁体字是一样的,例如下面这句话既是简体字,又是繁体字:"大家都是好朋友!"

有人提出来过,简体字比繁体字容易写,但是繁体字比简体字更容易认识。这是为什么呢?像"说话"的"话"和"生活"的"活",如果用繁体字来写,差别相当大,所以比较容易分清楚"話、活"这两个字。可是如果写简体字,这两个字只差一点点,很容易看错"话、活"两个字。另外一个例子是"工厂"的"厂"和"广东"的"广",如果写繁体字是"廠、廣",如果写简体字是"厂、广",差不多一样!不过,这都没什么太大的关系,要紧的是现在学习中文的人,简体字、繁体字都得能认。而写呢?我们认为大多数的外国学生会写一种也就够了。

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+九 八 七 六 $\overline{\mathbf{H}}$ 几 爸 王 他很我 要 可我 多你 備小 係 這 別學 於小 清 別跟 爸大 現多男 楚 可們 是 中 語李 的位 注 , 張 , 本 媽海 地意 把你 以學 第 在朋朋 這 寫 言的 書 文 媽上 上校 樣你 得是 學論 不友友 了 自 \equiv 的 看 學 講 抽都從 己 幾 聲 看學 解 成這 非 的文 那四 齧 學 , 他期 了告前 門 每 績學 常 的 門 本 身 於 生 문 請 的 個 身 課 才 有 課 期 的 書 訴有 體 或 關 問 體 成 句 呢 會 意 的 的 質 成 他抽 際 定 於 要 子 忙 好 思 績 幾 學 績 抽煙 注 弱 得 天 你 單 的 壞 解 期 文 的 很 煙的 個 係 注 了 意 學 差 對壞 學 報 的 的 意 思 注 身習 期 分 告 他 定 得 報 所 體慣 解 特 們 我 要 以 不, 可 好 別 的 的 注 是 他 好可 以 個 好 是 罄 論 意 不 ,是 幫 學 兒 中 文 關 調 身 期 敢 所因 美 是 於 你 地 , 以為 進 齧 特 累 1+ 讓 很 最

11

萬

我

是

14

學

課

最

好

生

物

課

最

差

//\ / \

文

:

我

是

數

學

最

好

法

文

最

差

差

點

兒

沒

通

過

你

呢

?

的

文

15

交流

的

萬

•

你

甚

麼

課

最

好

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

/ \ //\

文

:

我

的

成

績

也

還

算

回

以

吧

//\

文

:

成

績

出

來

了

1

你

的

成

績

怎

麼

樣

?

萬

•

比

上

個

學

期

好

點

兒

0

你

的

成 績

呢

?

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 美 中 美 中 或 或 或 或 女 女 女 女 生 生 生 生 • . 再 太 不 吃 1+ 謝 見 見 了 了 麽 謝 Ţ , 飯 事 你 不 再

> > 7

0

有

事

我

會

說

的

的

話

來

個

電

大

話我

了

,

謝

謝

你

得

走

了

你

多

注

意

身

體

美

或

女

生 生

還

口

以

吧 麼

0

成

績 再

還

沒

呢

過

了

兒

我

不

4

了

0

過

幾

天

來

看 出

你 來

走

吧

中

或

女

考

得

怎

樣

金 中 太 或 太 女 生 : 你 最 再 近 身 體 怎

麼

樣

?

馬 金 馬 太 太 太 太 太 太 : 是 那 還 就 口 以 好 多 吧 0 謝 希 望 不 你 你 好 了 以 也 不 後 也 壞 不

會

生

病

 $\overline{\mathbf{H}}$

//\ //\ 嚴 李 年和我 文小 是嚴 西的 關 方 論 於 最文 你 1+ 近是 IE 麼 關 在 的 百 於 寫 呢 五 中 的 ? + 或 論

"Pay attention to cars coming from the two sides" (侧[側]cè "side")

家 都 可 以 幫 你

兀

老 師 到兒天各 地的 付 準 考 備試學 第請 請 三 你 注 課們意 好 聽 好 明

生 了 沒 有

上 完 可 第 是 老 課師 還 我 沒 們 開 出 始上

第

課

啊

C. NARRATIVES 短文

的繁看比麼

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

而

成一 會頭 麼 能以大 不給 要 慢 考 的 就注我 張花 慢 學 0 意很門 比兒我有 生 0 大都不較地比的 願 較學 身 的 有過 多 寫 的 喜 生 考 猒 大 考我時 沒歡比試 1 這 間 有 寫 較 怎學 太 學 口 , 我 麼期但大期 歡 怕 辦的是的報用 最 我 後 課 不 壓 告 學 喜 要 那 會 力 期歡 是 這 麼 四 像 0 這 報 太 學 多門考 當 樣 學 告 絜

考課試然

試裡那可可替報

我代

期

簡 到和中 字 和 繁 體 字

會

不

好

期

的

面 乐 繁 後 繁 新 文 ide, 體 這 越 體 加 口 句 字來字坡 以 d 還 話 的越 ; 使 說 有 既 流同 用 有 的從 是 樣 簡 行 NA. 和時 地體 簡 種 候 體 字 文 後 過 字 有 字 來 個 才 時 其 "flour, 又 簡 有 就 候 害 是 體 的 在和 中 繁 香 簡 體 代不 港 灣 很 字 使 替 少 和 字 早 : 簡 用 了 香 就 ٨٨ 也 港 有 大 個 也 簡 家 繁 是 簡 看 當 都 從 16 字 是 草 到 好 過 簡 很 朋 來 和 λλ 多 友 簡 的 字 簡 ļ 0 體 候 簡 年 字 在 前 東 和面 十, 就 在 有 相东 體 中 IF 字當 陸 或 於 是 和 繁 新 這 陸 體 樣 加 從 個 字 为 的 中 坡 簡 1956 的 也 或 例 看 大 面 年得 如

齧 錯 較呢 ? 有 係字 一容 是话易像 學 分 提 廠活清說出 的 楚 話 來 是 過 廣 兩 現 話的 個 種 在 字 簡 學 如 體 活話 0 另 字 中寫 外這和比 文簡 繁 N 體 的 個生 體 個 字 字 例 活 0 容 易 可 的 寫 如 活 但 廠 是 如 簡 的 果 體 用 字 廠 繁 th 得 體 簡 能 這 和 字 認 λλ 來 個 字 寫 更 而 東 過 只 , 容 差 差 的 別 都 點相 我 識 沒 當 點 大 這 麼如很 , 果 太 容 所 為 大寫易以什



Street Sign in Taipei

Notes 注解

- A7. 把自己的身体忙坏了 (把自己的身體忙壞了) lit. "take your own body and make it busy to the extent that it goes bad," or in idiomatic English, "be so busy that you ruin your health"
- **B3a.** 还算可以 (還算可以) lit. "still can be considered as being all right," or in more idiomatic English, "O.K." or "not too bad"
- B3b. 差一点儿没 (差一點兒沒) "nearly didn't" or "almost didn't"
- B3c. 通过 (通過) tōngguò "pass (an examination or inspection)" [RC]
- C1. ◆压力 (壓力) yālì "pressure" [N]
- C2a. ◆繁体字 (繁體字) fántǐzì "complex characters" or "traditional characters" [N]
- C2c. ◆大陆 (大陸) "mainland" [PW]. Learn the common expression 中国大陆 (中國大陸) "mainland China."
- C2d. ◆新加坡 Xīnjiāpō "Singapore" [PW]
- C2e. ●同样地 (同樣地) tóngyàngde "in the same way," "similarly" [A]
- C2f. 流行 liúxíng "be prevalent, popular, widespread" [sv]
- C2g. •草书 (草書) cǎoshū "cursive script" (in calligraphy) [N]
- C2h. ◆例如 lìrú "for instance" or "for example" [CJ]
- C2i. ●既…又jì...yòu "both...and" [PT]
- C2j. ●提出来 (提出來) tíchūlái "bring up" or "mention" [RC]
- C2k. ●差别 (差別) chābié "difference" [N]. Note that 差 (差) is here pronounced chā and not chà.
- C21. 分清楚 lit. "separate so that something is clear" or "distinguish"
- C2m. 只差一点点 (只差一點點) "differ by only a very little bit"
- C2n. ◆例子 lìzi "example" [N]
- C2o. ●认 (認) rèn "recognize" [v]
- C2p. ●认为 (認為) rènwéi "think," "be of the opinion," or "consider" [v]

A Farewell Call on a Favorite Teacher



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

493 xiàng toward, to

Radical is 口 kǒu "mouth" (140). Distinguish 何 from 何 Hé (19) and simplified 问 wèn (75).

向 xiàng toward, to, from [cv] 向前走 xiàng qián zŏu go forward 向东走(向東走) xiàng dōng zŏu go east 向…告别(向…告别) xiàng...gàobié bid farewell to [PT] ●内向(內向) nèixiàng be introverted [sv] ●外向 wàixiàng be extroverted [sv]

Radical is the pictograph \exists mù "eye." Phonetic is \exists gèn. Distinguish 眼 from 很 hěn (58), 跟 gēn (302), and 根 gēn (313).

眼	yăn	eye [N]
左眼	zuŏvăn	left eve เทา

右眼 yòuyǎn right eye [N]

看他一眼 kàn tā yì yǎn look at him (lit. "look at him with one eye")

转眼 (轉眼) **zhuǎnyǎn** blink the eyes; glance [vo]; in the blink of an eye [A]

495 连 (連) lián even; link, connect

Radical is 之 **chuò** "walk, go." The colloquial name for this radical is 走之 **zŏu zhī** "the walking 之," because of its meaning "walk" and its resemblance to the particle 之. The other component is 车 (車) **chē** (224). Distinguish 连 (連) from 车 (車).

连 (連)	Lián	Lian [sn]
连 (連)	lián	even [cv]
连…都… (連…都…)	liándōu	even [PT]
连…也… (連…也…)	liányě	even [PT]

●大连 (大連) Dàlián Dalian (city in Liaoning Province) [PW]

496 👬 🛮 lì sharp (e.g., a knife); benefit

Radical is \mathcal{D} dão "knife," which is written \mathbb{I} when occurring at the right-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as \mathcal{D} lìdão "standing knife." The other component is \mathcal{K} hé "growing grain." Cutting "grain" \mathcal{K} with a "knife" \mathcal{D} results in "benefits" \mathcal{H} . The character \mathcal{H} also serves as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., \mathcal{H} li "pear." Distinguish \mathcal{H} from \mathcal{H} dào (205) and \mathcal{H} kè (116).

流利	liúlì	be fluent [sv]
意大利	Yìdàlì	Italy [PW]
意大利语 (意大利語)	Yìdàlìyŭ	Italian language [N

497 产 (產) chǎn produce

Radical of the simplified form is **____ tóu** "head." Radical of the traditional form is 生 **shēng** "be born" (22). This whole character can itself serve as a phonetic, e.g., in the character 铲 (鏟), which is used in the word 铲子(鏟子) **chănzi** "shovel." There are two variants for the traditional form of this character: 產 and 産.

生产(生產)	shēngchăn	produce, manufacture, make [v]
●出产(出產)	chūchăn	produce, manufacture, make [v]
●产品 (產品)	chănpĭn	product [N]

498 义(義) yì righteousness

Radical of the simplified form is $\dot{}$ zhǔ "dot." Radical of the traditional form is $\dot{}$ yáng "goat," the last stroke of which has here been shortened, with the other component being 我 wǒ (51). The whole character 义(義) can serve as a phonetic, e.g., in the character 议 (議), which is used in the word 建议(建議) jiànyì "suggest." Distinguish simplified 义 from 又 yòu (210).

●主义 (主義) zhǔyì doctrine [N]

●共产主义 (共產主義) Gòngchǎn Zhǔyì Communism [PH]

New Words in ISC 19-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

告别 (告別) gàobié bid farewell, take leave [v]

没少…(沒少…) **méi shǎo...** "not a little...," ...a lot [PT] (e.g., 她也没少花钱。[她也沒

少花錢。] "She sure spent a lot of money.")

语法 (語法) yǔfǎ grammar [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、请问,你们的工厂生产一些什么样的产品呢?
- 二、小马的左眼正常,可是右眼从小就有点儿毛病。
- 三、现在在中国还有多少人主张毛主席主张的那种共产主义?
- 四、四川是中国出产米最多的一个省,而成都平原又是四川省内出产米的中心。
- 五、常州离南京很近, 离上海也不太远, 人口有差不多四百万, 出产的鱼 和米特别多。
- 六、我认为内向的学生可能看书、写作比较好,但是外向的学生可能口语 比较流利。
- 七、有很多种主义;除了共产主义以外,还有爱国主义、和平主义、自由 主义、个人主义什么的。
- 八、最好把不如意的事情给忘了,一个人不可能完全没有问题,但是我们还是得向前走,对不对?
- 九、饭馆儿的那位中国服务员告诉我,她一转眼已经来美国二十年了,在这二十年里头,连一次国也没回过。
- 十、王大海的中文说得很流利,可是他的语法还有一些小错。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

— 、

美国留学生:请问,这儿是丁老师家吗?丁老师的爱人:对,请进。老丁,来客人了。丁老师:谁啊?是你啊!快请坐。 美国留学生:老师,我向您告别来了。

丁老师: 你什么时候走?

美国留学生:下星期三。

丁老师 : 时间过得真快! 转眼就一年了。记得你刚来的时候, 连一句简单的

中国话都不会说。现在已经讲得很流利了。

二、(在香港中文大学)

连一心同学: 老师好! 我来向您告别了。我下星期要回大连了。

李老师: 你下星期就回去啊?时间过得太快了! 一转眼就四年了。

连一心同学:对啊。非常感谢老师这四年以来教了我很多东西。老师去过大连

吗?

李老师: 没有。我连北京都没去过。不过,如果有机会,我到大连去看你。

连一心同学: 好啊! 那, 老师, 我该走了。谢谢老师! 请老师多注意身体!

李老师:好,我会的。慢走,再见!

= \langle

意大利人: 请问, 去意大利大使馆怎么走?

北京的行人: 意大利大使馆, 是吗? 离这儿不远。我告诉您, 您再向前走

差不多五分钟就到了。

意大利人 :谢谢您!

北京的行人: 不客气。请问, 您是意大利人吗?

意大利人 :是的。

北京的行人: Piacere di fare la sua conoscenza! 意大利人: 您会讲意大利语啊! 您讲得很流利!

北京的行人:哪里,差得很远。只会几句。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、快上大学前,我高中的男朋友告诉我他交了别的女朋友,不爱我了。 讲完以后,他连看都没看我一眼就走了。我听了又难过又生气,可是 又有什么办法呢?现在我上了大学,交了另一个男朋友,他是从中国 来的留学生,长得很好看,也很可爱,而且我们在一起非常快乐。所 以说,什么事情都应该向前看,一直想以前的事情没有用。
- 二、我小的时候很坏,经常做坏事,考试也考不好,成绩非常差。在学校 里不听老师的话,在家里更不听爸爸妈妈的话。所以爸爸没少打我, 妈妈也没少骂我。现在我长大了,才了解爸妈都是为我好,我非常感 谢他们。
- 三、最近几年在中国,很多人讲的一个笑话是,年轻人应该"向前看"还是"向钱看"?我觉得"向前看"虽然好,但要是没有钱,就什么事都做不了,所以我认为最好"向前",也"向钱",同时进行。人没有钱活不下去,但人也不是为钱而活。你说对吧?

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+九 八 七 六 兀 \overline{T} 兒小 法王 裡轉飯 好 我 的現 品請 前可最 人有有 多口常 都四 還大 頭眼館 走能好 主愛很 認 。有州 平川 那在 毛馬 呢 問 但 有海 完 把 差 原是 ? ,已兒 義國 多 為 離 種 在 病的 是 什 主 種 連經的 對 全不 入 又中 共 中 的 不南 左 你 外 是國 些中 產 來那 不沒如 麼義主 京 或 們 白 多 眼 四出 小文 對有意 主 次美位 的 義 的 四很 還 正 的 的 錯說 國 國 中 川產 問的 學 義 和 ; 百近 有 常 I 學 也 題事 4 省米 得 或 1/ 除 多 萬 , 廠 生 沒十服 內最 很 情 主 可 離 口 生 , 了 回年務 出多 義共 能 出上 流 但給 人 是 產 能 過了員 是忘 產的 主 產海 利 、產 看 右 米 — 我了 此 告 自主 的也 張 眼 語 的個 1+ 們, 在訴 由義 魚不 毛 從 比 寫 中 是 這 我 主以 和太 省 主 還一 11 麼 較 1 是個 義外 作 米 遠 席 就 樣 他 , 流 十她 特 的 得人 , EL , 而 主 的 有 利 向不 別人 語 年一 個 還 點 產 較 成 張

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

 $\overline{\omega}$

Sua

您

是

意

大

語

您

講

溒

只

會

幾

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

T

?

李 連 李 連 李 連 美 J 美 美 J J 在 或 老 或 老 老 老 老 老 老 或 香 心 師 1 師 心 師 師 留 師 留 師 師 留 港中 同 學 學 學 的 學 學 學 生 生 愛 生 文 : 人 大學 老 好 如 了 期 沒 對 你 老 好 : : 果 要 流中記 師 我 師 時 有 T 下 你 老 誰 對 請 很 國得 1 有 利 星 我 早 好 間 1+ 師 問 請 機 多 轉 大 了 話你 期 ? 請 會 麼 我 那 非 期 ! 调 會 連 老 東 眼 都 別 的 時 是 進 這 我 常 連 就 我 得 師 西 了 來 就 不 兒 候 向 你 0 老 感 來 北 我 多 兀 會 的 慢 您 老 是 走 師 謝 去 向 京 快 到 說時 注 老 年 走 告 1 J 老 您 啊 ļ 都 大 師 了 意 候 別 快 老 我 師 ? 告 轉 身 連 沒 去 現 再 來 請 來 師 該 這 時 別 體 去去 過 在連 眼 見 客 了 쓰 家 兀 間 了 走 看 大 已一 ļ 過 就 嗎 人 連 年 過 0 經句 你 5 0 以 得 我 嗎 講簡 年 不 謝 ? 來 太 下 得 單 3 過 謝 教 快 很的 北 北 意 北 意 意 北 意 京 大 京 大 京 大 京 大 的 利 的 利 的 利 的 利 行 人 行 人 行 人 行 人 人 人 人 人 : : Piacere 是 哪 得 您 利不 謝 到 再 意 請 句 scenza 這 麼 的 謝 很會 走問 裡 人客 了 向兒大 您 流講 嗎 ? 氣 前 不利 , ļ 利 差 意 走遠 去 大 <u>Q</u>. 得 ļ 大 請 差 0 使 意 d 不我館 很 利 D 問 大

多

鐘

告 ,

五訴是

就您離

嗎

?

分您

利

大

使

館

怎

C. NARRATIVES 短文

為一做向年

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

的所好

一是沒別

同不前輕最 成我 事以看 是媽 更 又看的 而時 了 近 為 也不 績 11 情 說 男 有 我女 非的 應 幾 我 沒 聽 沒 也朋 活進 甚 朋 , 行所雖該 年 好 少 常時 有什 爸 很友麼眼友學 候 用 你 0 以然 在 駡 爸 差 麽 辨就 前 向 很 中 我 說人我好 我媽 0 事 愛他法 走 前 沒 認 非 壞 在 情 或 0 媽 , 是 呢 了 我 吧 現的 有 但 學 都而從 高 為 我 要 感 錢 很 在話校 且中現我 中 最 還 了 是 謝 我 多 裡 該我國 在 聽 的 好 他 沒 長所不 向們來我 男 了 們大以 壞 講 向有 聽 前在的 上又 朋 錢 去 錢 的 了 爸老 留 了難 L 前 爸師 起學大過 後 但 就 沒的 非生學 個 オ X ? 試 也什 少 直常 生 , , 他 也 麼 話 解 打 快長交氣連他 向事 不 以樂得 爸 我 在 了 看 得 錢都 家 。很另可都 , 前 了 都媽裡



Real Estate Agency in Hong Kong

Notes 注解

- A2b. ●毛病 máobìng "disease," "illness," or "defect" [N]
- A4a. **○**平原 píngyuán "a plain" (i.e., large area of flat land) [N]
- A4b. 四川省内 (四川省内) "within the province of Sichuan"
- A6. ●□语(□語) kǒuyǔ "spoken language" [N]
- A7a. ●爱国主义 (愛國主義) àiguó zhǔyì "patriotism" [N]
- A7b. ●和平主义 (和平主義) hépíng zhǔyì "pacifism" [N]
- A7c. ●自由主义 (自由主義) zìyóu zhǔyì "liberalism" [N]
- A7d. ●个人主义 (個人主義) gèrén zhǔyì "individualism" [N]
- A7e. As you have seen in the previous examples, the Chinese suffix 主义 (主義) corresponds to the English suffix "-ism." Here are some other words written with characters you have learned that contain this suffix: 利他主义 (利他主義) "altruism," 现实主义 (現實主義) "realism," 平等主义 (平等主義) "egalitarianism," 利己主义 (利己主義) "egotism," 表现主义 (表現主義) "expressionism," 女性主义 (女性主義) "feminism," 人道主义 (人道主義) "humanitarianism," 大男子主义 (大男子主義) "male chauvinism," 现代主义 (現代主義) "modernism," 自然主义 (自然主義) "naturalism," 东方主义 (東方主義) "Orientalism," 完美主义 (完美主義) "perfectionism," 后现代主义 (後現代主義) "post-modernism," 实用主义 (實用主義) "pragmatism," 生食主义 (生食主義) "raw foodism," and 性别主义(性别主義) "sexism."
- A8. •如意 rúyì "be as one likes or as one wishes" or "satisfied" [sv]
- A9. 连一次国也没回过 (連一次國也沒回過) "hasn't been back to her native country even once"
- B1. ♦ T Ding Ding ISNI
- C1. 快上大学前 (快上大學前) "before I went to college," or "when I was about to go to college." The 前 here means the same as 以前.
- C2a. ●经常 (經常) jīngcháng "frequently," "constantly," or "often" [A]
- C2b. ◆骂(罵) mà "scold," "rebuke," or "curse" [v]. Notice the structure of the simplified character: two mouths, which give a sense of the meaning, plus the phonetic 旦.
- C3a. 活不下去 "can't keep on living." The verb ending 下去 sometimes means "continue" or "keep on."
- C3b. ●为A而B (為A而B) wèi A ér B "to B for A" [PT]. The example here is 为钱而活 (為錢而活) "to live for money."

A Farewell Call on a Favorite Teacher (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the Practice Essentials volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

499 责(責) duty, responsibility

Radical is \prod (otin) bèi "cowrie shell," which indicates value since cowrie shells were used in ancient times as a form of currency. Distinguish 责 (責) from 贵 (貴) guì (85) and 绩 (績) jī (489).

rèn duty; bear (a burden) Rén (as a surname)

(應盡的責任)

Radical is \bigwedge **rén** "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 rénzìpáng "side made up of the character λ ." Phonetic is \pm **rén**, which is the ninth of the heavenly stems. Distinguish \pm from († shén (127).

任	Rén	Ren (also Im or Rim, a Korean surname) [รง]
责任 (責任)	zérèn	responsibility [N]
尽责任 (盡責任)	jìn zérèn	fulfill a responsibility [РН]
应尽的责任	yīngjìnde zérèn	a responsibility that one should carry out [РН]

501 父

fù father

This character is itself a radical. Distinguish $\hat{\chi}$ from $\hat{\chi}$ wén (21), $\hat{\chi}$ jião (233), and $\hat{\Xi}$ bà (365).

502 mu mother; female

The character 母 is itself both a radical and a phonetic. 母 was derived from 女 nǔ (101), which is a picture of two breasts, to which two nipples have been added to create the character for "mother" 母. The character 母 occurs in various other characters as a phonetic, e.g., in the character 拇 mǔ, which is used in the word 大拇指 dàmǔzhǐ "thumb." Distinguish 母 from 每 měi (376) and 海 hǎi (26).

父母	fùmŭ	parents [N]
师母(師母)	shīmŭ	wife of one's teacher [N]

503 教

jiào teach; teaching; religion

jiāo teach

Radical is 支 pū "strike, tap," which at the right side of a character is written as 攵. Phonetic is 孝 xiào "filial."

教学有方(教學有方)	jiào-xué-yŏu-fāng	have an especially effective method for
		teaching [EX]
●教员(教員)	jiàoyuán	instructor [N]
教书(教書)	jiāoshū	teach [vo] (教 is here pronounced jiāo , not jiào
		as elsewhere)

504 (xìn letter; have faith in, believe

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written \land when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzipáng** "side made up of the character 人." The other component is 言 **yán** "speech" (336). The idea is that a "person's" 人 "speech" 言 is to be "believed" 信. Distinguish 信 from 言.

Xìn	Xin [sN]
xìn	letter [ท]; have faith in, believe
láixìn	send a letter (to where speaker is) [vo]
míngxìnpiàn	picture postcard [N]
huíxìn	respond with a letter [vo]
xìnyòng	credit; trustworthiness [N]
xiāngxìn	believe, believe in [v]
	xìn láixìn míngxìnpiàn huíxìn xìnyòng

New Words in ISC 19-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

代 dài for, on behalf of [cv] 代A向B问好 dài A xiàng B wènhǎo on behalf of A convey regards to B [PT] (代A向B問好) …后 (…後) ...hòu after... [PT] 进步(進步) jìnbù progress [N/V] 留 liú keep; ask someone to stay [v] 哪儿的话 (哪兒的話) nărde huà "not at all" [IE] 说实在的(說實在的) shuō shízàide to tell the truth [PH] 要不是… yào bú shi... if not..., if it weren't for... [PH]

● Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、父母对孩子有责任,当然孩子对父母也有责任,是不是?
- 二、小牛长得好看,可是说话不算话,是一个完全没有信用的人。
- 三、王老师已经死了,可是师母还在,不过她年纪已经很大了。
- 四、小金很难过,因为她常给父母写信,可是父母很少给她回信。
- 五、我星期六、星期日有空的时候,最喜欢给朋友们写信或者明信片。
- 六、我父母都是高中教员,他们是很多年前在高中教书的时候认识的。
- 七、最近你的中文进步得很快,相信你到了中国以后,还会进步得更快!
- 八、说实在的,我不是什么"语言教学专家",只不过是一个小教员而已。
- 九、这种工作责任很重,不知道我能不能尽那么大的责任,不过我愿意试一下。
- 十、王大海说他二十岁以前相信的很多东西,现在已经不相信了。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

_

美国留学生: 说实在的, 要不是您教学有方, 我也不可能进步得这么快。

丁老师:哪儿的话!这是老师应尽的责任。 美国留学生:老师,时间不早了,我该回去了。

丁老师: 再坐会儿吧!

美国留学生: 不了, 我还有点儿事。

丁老师: 好,那我就不留你了。回美国后,代我向你的父母问好。别忘了有空给

我们来信。

美国留学生: 老师, 再见! (对丁老师的爱人) 师母, 再见!

二、(在大街上)

石文美: 老师, 好久不见了! 我是石文美。您最近好吗? 老师看起来跟十年前没什么两样!

包老师: 不, 老了! 你是石文美, 我记得你!

石文美:对,对,石文美。老师还在学校教书吗?

包老师: 对! 我还在北一女教书, 不过今年可能是最后一年了。

石文美: 当年向老师学到了很多很多东西。要不是老师教学有方, 我那时候也不会进步得那么快。

包老师:哪儿的话,这是老师应尽的责任。

石文美: 老师多保重! 代我向师母问好!

包老师:好,谢谢你,我会的。再见!

石文美: 再见, 老师!

= \langle

信老师: 老高啊! 教书这工作可真不容易啊!

高老师:说的也是。父母把孩子交给我们,我们责任重大,一定要把学生 教好了。我今天早上五点就起床了,没办法!昨天的作业没改完。

信老师:我也差不多。上星期的考试和作文我也还没改完,今天夜里我大概要很晚很晚才能睡觉了。

高老师:希望学生知道老师的辛苦。

信老师:有的还不错。我有一个二十年前的老学生最近还来信感谢我!

高老师: 那是应该的。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我姓任,任万里,今年十九岁。家在中国湖北省应城市。父母都是在湖北的一个小镇出生长大的。那里人口不多,只有几百人。城里没什么大公司或饭店,只有一所小学和几家小店。我父母是高中教员,在应城市一所中学教书。他们每天从早忙到晚。说实在的,很多人不知道老师有多忙,他们拿的钱不多,可是工作量和责任好重啊!
- 二、我的父母很爱我,但是说实在的,他们可能有点儿太爱我了!我妈妈每个星期六都给我写信,爸爸每个星期天都给我打电话,管我管得很严。虽然我的父母一直对我很好,也尽了父母应尽的责任,而且要不是因为他们,我今天也不可能上这么好的大学,可是他们为什么那么喜欢管我?我妈妈今天又来信了,叫我不要抽烟、不要喝酒。我爸爸还加上了一句:"别忘了,上大学不可以交男朋友"。那,我在大学除了学习以外还能做什么?那种生活太没意思了!

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 六 兀 七 五 西干 最 前我 歡我 可// 過王 盡這 說 那種 雷 中近 在父 給星 是 她老 大 個牛 現海 國你 麼工 高母 朋期 父 年師 完長 責 對 在 很 只 中都 在說 大作 以的 母 的 友 六 難 紀 己 全得 任孩 不 的 們 沒好 己 後 教 很 他 書 中 분 1 然べ 子 调 渦 責任 書 小 經 經 寫 有看 是 星 我 高 死 有 文 是 任很 還 的中 給 不 信 很 不 不 淮 期 書 了 大 用可 她 相 會 時 或 大 歲 是 步 教 \Box 任 個 為 者 進 信 候 的 LY 得 분 甚 員 有 //\ 她 過 步 明 認 信 了 不 空 很 是 說 前 麼 當 教 常 我 知 得 識 信 快 他 的 相 話 然 師 給 更 願 片 的 道 語 時 孩 信 母 而 不 父 意 快 的 我 相 是 言 澴 笪 子 己 候 試 很 能 對 教 信 很 在 話 , 寫 多 學 多 父 不 最 你 信 東 能 車 到 年 不 是

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 美 或 留 學 生 : 我 說 也實 不 在 可 的 能 進 步 不 得 這 您 麼 教 快 學 有

> > 方

老 師 哪 兒 的 話 I 這 是 老 師 應 盡 的 責 任

美 或 留 學 生 老 師 時 間 不 早 了 我 該 去 5

J 老 師 再 坐 會 兒 吧

美 J 或 老 留 師 學 生 : • 給好 不 , 了 們那 來我 我 還 就 有 不 點 留 兒 你 事 了

美

或

後

代

我

你

的

父

問

好

0

別

忘

了

有 空

我

信

美 或 留 學 生 ! 見

老 師 再 見 對 Ţ 老 師 的 愛 師 母 再



Street Sign in Taipei

石文美 在大 街 老 麼 師 λλ

好

久

不

見

3

我

是

石

文

美

您

最

沂

好

嗎

?

老

師

起

來

跟

年

前

沒

1+

:

!

樣

包 石 文 老 老 美 師 師 : 對 對 不 我 老 還 了 , 在 石 文 北 你 美 是 女 石 教 老 文 書 師 美 還 不 在 我 過 學 記 今 校 得 年 教 你 書 可 能 嗎 是 最 後

包 年 了

包 石 文 老 師 美 • 哪 淮當 兒 步年 的 得 話 那老 麼 師 這 快 學 是 到 老 了 師 很 應 多 盡 很 的 多 責 東 任 兀 要 不 是 老 師 教 學 有 方 我 那 時 候 也

不

好

1

任

里

力

中

ļ

 \equiv

高 信 石 包 石 文 老 老 老 文 美 師 美 師 師 昨我們 說 老 好 再 老 責 的 高 見 師 的天任也 謝 多 , 作早重是 老 保 謝 上大 教 師 你 重 書 父 I ļ 改點— 這 我 代 完就定把 \mathbf{I} 會 我 作 要 孩 的 向 把 子 可 師 真 再 交 學 見 問 給 不

C. NARRATIVES 短文

高

老

師

那四

是

應

該

的

信

老

師

有

的

還

不

错

0

我

有

個

年

前

的

老

生

最

近

還

來

信

感

謝

我

高

老

師

希

望

學

生

知

道

老

師

的

辛

苦

信

老

師

七,

多

0

 \perp

星

期

改不

天 今

業

沒五

起

床

了

沒

法

ļ

#

好

了

0

我 教 辨

們

我

很也我

晚還

才 沒 差

能

睡 完

覺

了

今

天

夜

裡 的

我 考

要 作

大試

概和

很文

晚我

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

容

易

屷可

且對話都能我 道天教有幾小湖我 那那句要歡這 \mathbf{I} 給有的 作老 從 抽 管麼 要 我 , 員 百鎮北姓 我點父 管 量 人出省 我 好不很 師早 , 所 兒母 活在別 好 我 寫 和 ? 的 是 有 忙 在小 大忘 太 太 很 責 不 我 管 信 到應學城 大 大 多 , 長城 沒 學 愛 了 任 要 媽 學 愛 為 也得 忙晚城和裡 大市 我 爸 好 喝 媽 很 我 沒 的 他 盡 0 市幾 , 爸 重 酒 今可們 他說 家什 了 嚴 父 5 0 大 學 每 了 但 天 是 們實所小麼那母 , 父 學 習 是 個 我 我又他我 1 雖 在中店大 裡 說 今 應 然 爸 來 們 媽 的的學 公 0 可 期 實 爸信為天盡我 錢 教我司 在 天 在 什也的的 書父或不湖 每 不 很 交 了 都 的 。母飯多 男 麼不責父 多 力口 個 多 給 北 朋 上叫那可任母 人他是店 我星他 的在 我麼能 可不們高 了 ,一打期們 只 一不喜上而直電六可 是知每中只有個國

Notes 注解

- A8. ●只不过 (只不過) zhǐbúguò "only," "merely" [PH]
- **B1.** ◆丁 **Dīng** Ding [sn]. Chinese elementary school students with this surname are often the envy of their classmates, since this character is so easy to write! There also exists a *chengyu* (idiom) with this character, written with characters which you have learned: 目不识丁 (目不識丁) **mù-bù-shí-Dīng** meaning lit. "eyes not recognize (even the character) Ding," or in more idiomatic English, "illiterate."
- **B2a.** ●A跟B没什么两样 (A跟B沒什麼兩樣) **A gēn B méi shénme liǎngyàng** "A is no different from B" or "A is the same as B" [PT]. The sentence 老师看起来跟十年前没什么两样 (老師看起來跟十年前沒什麼兩樣) means "Teacher, you look no different from ten years ago."
- **B2b.** ●北一女 **Běiyī'nǔ** "Taipei Municipal First Girls' Senior High School" [**PW**]. This is an abbreviation for 台北市立第一女子高级中学 (台北市立第一女子高級中學). Notice which syllables are retained in the abbreviation.
- B2c. ●当年(當年) dāngnián "at that time" or "in those days" [TW]
- B2d. ●向A学到B (向A學到B) xiàng A xuédào B "to learn B from A" [PT]
- **B3a.** 这工作 (這工作) means the same as 这个工作 (這個工作) "this job." In rapid, colloquial conversation, the measure 个 (個) is sometimes dropped after the specifiers 这 (這) and 那.
- B3b. ●说的也是 (說的也是) shuōde yĕ shì "that's right" or "of course" [IE]
- **B3c.** ●交 jiāo "hand over" or "deliver" [v]. 父母把孩子交给我们 (父母把孩子交給我們) lit. "Parents take children and hand them over to us," or in idiomatic English, "Parents give us their kids."
- B3d. 我们责任重大 (我們責任重大) lit. "Our responsibility is weighty," or in idiomatic English, "We have a heavy responsibility."
- **B3e.** 要把学生教好了 (要把學生教好了) lit. "(We) are supposed to teach students so they turn out well."
- B3f. ◆昨天 zuótiān "yesterday" [тw]
- B3q. ◆夜里 (夜裡) yèli "at night" [TW]
- B3h. ◆睡觉 (睡覺) shuìjiào "sleep" [vo]
- B3i. ◆辛苦 xīnkǔ "hardship," "toil," or "hard work" [N]. This word also functions as a stative verb meaning "to be hard," "toilsome," or "laborious," and is used as an idiomatic expression meaning "You've worked hard!"
- C1a. ●应城 (應城) Yingchéng [PW]. This is a city of about 600,000 in eastern Hubei province. Notice that the character 应 (應) is here pronounced ying, not yīng.
- C1b. ◆小镇 (小鎮) xiǎozhèn "small town" [PW]
- C1c. 很多人不知道老师有多忙 (很多人不知道老師有多忙) "Lots of people don't know how busy a teacher is."
- C2. 管我管得很严 (管我管得很嚴) "(They) control me very strictly."

Leisure Time Activities (I)

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Hobbies.
- 2. Watching a film or attending a Peking opera performance.
- 3. Your future career plans.
- 4. Fractions, percents, and decimals.
- 5. Several amusing stories.
- 6. The Taiwanese language or dialect.

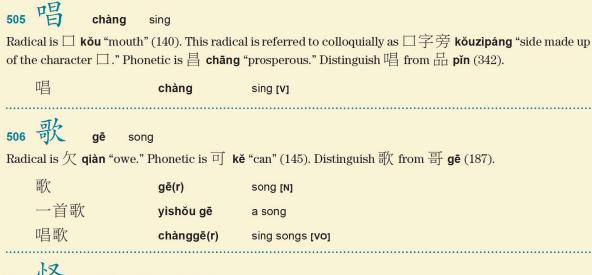


Hobbies



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.



507 Buài blame; strange

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262), which indicates that an emotion is involved. When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字旁 **xīnzìpáng** "side made up of the character 心" and is written as \land . Distinguish 怪 from 惯 (慣) **guàn** (394).

难怪 (難怪) nánguài no wonder [MA]

怪不得 guàibudé no wonder that [MA] (得 is here pronounced dé, not děi

or de)

●怪 guài blame [v]; be strange [sv]

508 观 (觀) guān look at

Radical is 见 (見) **jiàn** "see" (300). The other component of the simplified form is \mathbf{Z} **yòu** (210). Phonetic of the traditional form is 雚 **guān**. Distinguish 观 (觀) from \mathbf{x} (歡) **huān** (170).

参观(參觀)

cānguān

visit (as a tourist or observer) [v]

509 画 (畫) huà paint; painting

Radical of the simplified form is \longrightarrow yī (1). Radical of the traditional form is \coprod tián "field." Distinguish simplified \coprod from simplified \coprod guó (74), and distinguish traditional $\stackrel{*}{\equiv}$ from traditional $\stackrel{*}{\equiv}$ shū (321).

画(畫) huà paint [v]; painting [N]

一张画 (一張畫) yìzhāng huà(r) a painting

画画 (畫畫) huàhuà(r) paint a painting [vo]

国画 (國畫) guóhuà(r) traditional Chinese painting [N]

●山水画 (山水畫) shānshuǐ huà(r) landscape painting [РН]

510 **定 zhào** shine; illuminate

Radical is 火 huǒ "fire" (566), which is written and is referred to colloquially as 四点火 (四點火) sìdiǎn huǒ "four dots of fire" when it occurs at the bottom of a character. Phonetic is 召 zhào "call together." The third component is 日 rì "sun" (132), which also gives a hint as to the meaning. Distinguish 照 from traditional 魚 yú (411).

照 **zhào** shine; illuminate; take (photographs) [v]

照相 **zhàoxiàng** take a photograph [vo] (相 is here pronounced **xiàng**,

not xiāng)

●照相机 (照相機) zhàoxiàngjī camera [N]

●照相馆 (照相館) zhàoxiàngguǎn photo studio, photo shop [PW]

New Words in ISC 20-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

爱好 (愛好) àihào hobby, interest [IE] (好 is here pronounced hào, not hǎo)

调子 (調子) diàozi tune, melody [N] (Note that 调 [調] is here pronounced diào, not tiáo.)

好听 (好聽) hǎotīng be nice-sounding, pretty [sv]

看书 (看書) kànshū read books, read [vo]

书法 (書法) shūfǎ calligraphy [N]

是吗?(是嗎?) Shì ma? "Really?" [IE]

xià play (chess or checkers) [v]

小说 (小說) xiǎoshuō(r) novel [N]

写东西 (寫東西) xiě dōngxi write things, write [PH]

Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我的爱好是画画儿、照相、以及看小说儿。
- 二、这个照相机是在哪儿买的?价钱怎么这么贵?
- 三、白老太太不但喜欢画画儿,而且也很喜欢唱歌儿。
- 四、这首歌的调子太高了,我唱不了这么高的调子!
- 五、我们今天要参观的第一家工厂做鞋子,第二家工厂做手表。
- 六、老张从小只喜欢一个人在家看书,怪不得他没有什么朋友。
- 七、中国人非常喜欢天安门,每天都有好几万人到那里去参观。
- 八、那个意大利人从小就住在北京,难怪他的中国话讲得那么流利。
- 九、你说你的专业是音乐,是吗?怪不得我常看你一边儿走,一边儿唱歌儿!
- 十、王 大 海 告 诉 大 家 他 的 爱 好 是 唱 歌 儿 ,可 是 大 家 都 觉 得 他 唱 得 很 难 听 。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

张爱红:李文,你有什么爱好吗?

李文 : 我喜欢音乐。从小在美国学唱歌儿。 张爱红: 怪不得我常看你一边走一边唱歌儿。

李文:是吗?

张爱红:除了音乐,你还有其他的爱好吗?

李文:还喜欢看小说儿或是写东西。你呢?你的爱好是什么?

张爱红: 画画儿, 特别是国画儿, 还有书法。

_、

中国同学:好,现在请每位同学给我们唱一首歌儿!

美国同学:要唱歌儿啊?我们在美国很少唱歌儿,我不太会唱。一定得

唱吗?

中国同学: 你随便唱一首, 大家都是好朋友, 没关系。

美国同学:这样子。好吧,可是我真的不太会唱。如果唱得不好听,你们

可别笑我!

中国同学:不会的。

美国同学:好,一、二、三、唱:"王老先生有块地"。对不起,这个调子太

高了!我再来一次吧……

= \langle

严小姐:小管,你今天早上是不是出去了一会儿?

管先生:是的,我到对面很快地参观了一下最近开的公共图书馆,不过我

只去了差不多十五分钟而已。

严小姐:怪不得!我差不多十点钟的时候找你,可是怎么找也找不到你。

管先生:对不起,不好意思。有什么事情吗?

严小姐:有,事情是这样子的……

四、

美国人: 您好! 对不起, 不好意思, 请您帮我们照一张相, 好吗?

中国人:好,没问题。不过,等一下,这个照相机怎么用?

美国人:我教您……奇怪,好像坏了。怎么办?中国人:离这儿不远有一家照相馆,我带您去。

五、

女儿:妈妈,我这学期的成绩不太好,你别生气。

妈妈:来,成绩单拿给妈妈看看。什么?你这个孩子!平常不去上课,也不做作业,也不好好准备考试,难怪成绩会不好。妈妈怎么能不生气?

C. NARRATIVE 短文

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

"你好吗?"

我听过这样一个笑话。有一个男的外国大学生到中国去学中文。他很想多找机会讲中国话。有一天,他的中文老师的一个朋友请客,老师就带他一块儿去吃饭。去以前,老师提醒他,看见其他的中国客人,可以说一句:"你好吗?"

老师和学生到了饭店,坐下了。外国学生左手边坐着一位中国老太太。他就开口问老太太:"你妈好?"老太太觉得很奇怪,就问那位老师:"我妈已经死了很多年了,这个老外为什么会问我的妈怎么样?"

外国男生右手边坐着一位年轻小姐,年纪跟他差不多。他想再试一次,就跟那位小姐说:"妈,你好!"小姐听他这样说,很不高兴,就对他说:"我不是你妈!"说完站起来就走了。这个外国大学生觉得中文实在是太难了,决定回国去,不再学中文了。

从这个笑话,我们可以知道,在中文里,语法特别要紧:"你好吗?"、"你妈好?"、"妈,你好!"这三句话的意思太不一样!所以外国人要学好中文,一定得注意中文的语法。

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 $\overline{\mathbf{H}}$ 七 六 兀 1 不老 第我 白 \pm 我你 他那 幾中 高這 這 這 說我 們 是大 常說 的個 萬國 得張 的首 歡老 麼個 兒的 看你 家 今 大 海 中意 人人 他從 調歌 唱太 貴照 愛 家 或 到非 工天 子 歌 沒小 你的 大 的 太 相 好 都 話 那四 有只 廠要 兒 利 專 常 調 不 訴 機 是 覺 邊 講 裡 甚 做 參 業 人 喜 壴 子 旧 是 大 書 得 兒 得 去 麼 手觀 從 歡 歡 是 太 在 書 家 他 那 參 朋 表的 走 音 //\ 天 高 歡 哪 兒 他 唱 麼 觀 友 第 安 個 就 樂 了 書 兒 的 得 流 門 住 照 書 買 愛 邊 很 利 家 是 我 兒 在 在 的 相 難好 兒 \mathbf{I} 唱 嗎 每 北 家 是 唱 聽 廠 ? 京 天 看 不 而 價 以 歌 唱 做 都 了 且 書 錢 及 兒 歌 也 不 難 有 , 這 怎 看 兒 怪 怪 好 麼 很 //\

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

張 愛 紅 : 李 文 , 你 有 甚 麼 愛 好 嗎

文 : 我 壴 歡 音 樂 0 從 //\ 在 美 或 學 唱 歌 兒

張 愛 紅 : 怪 不 得 我 常 看 你 邊 走 邊 唱 歌

兒

李 文 是 嗎

張 愛 紅 : 除 了 音 樂 , 你 還 有 其 他 的 愛 好 嗎

的還 愛 好 歡 是 甚 麼

李

文

:

壴

看

11

說

兒

或

是

寫

東

西

0

你

呢

?

你

嚴

11

姐

:

可怪

是不

怎得

找我

也差

ļ

不

多

+

點

鐘

的

時

候

找

你

麼

找

不

到

你

0

張 愛 紅 : 書 書 兒 , 特 別 是 或 書 兒 , 還 有 書 法

中 或 同 學 : 兒好 ! , 現 在 請 每 位 一 學 給 我 們 唱 首 歌

中 美 或 或 學 : : 兒要 , 唱 我 歌 不 兒 太 會 ? 唱 我 0 __ 們 定在 都 得美 唱國 嗎 很 少 友 唱 沒 歌

美 或 學 學 : 如這 關你 係 隨 果樣 唱子 便 0 唱 不好 好吧 首 , , 可 大 你是 家 們我 可真 是 別的 好 笑 不 朋 我太 ! 會 , 唱 0

中 或 學 : 不 會 的

得

聽

,

 $\overline{\mathbf{L}}$

美

或 學 我塊好 再地 , 次對 不 起三 這唱 個: 調一 子王 太老 高先 了 生 !有

吧

嚴

11 先

姐 生

:

有

,

事

情

是

這

樣

子

的

管

:

對

不

起

,

不

好

意

思

0

有

1+

麽

事

情

嗎

?

几

美 或 人 : 照您 好 張 ı 相對 , 不 好 起 嗎 , 不 好 意 思 , 請 您 幫

我

們

中 或 人 : 好 機 怎 , 麼沒 用 問 ? 題 0 不 過 , 等 下 , 這 個 照

相

中 美 或 或 人 人 : 離 我 這 教 兒 您 E 不 遠 有 奇 怪 家 , 好 照 相 像 館 壞 了 , 我 0 帶 怎 您 麼 去 辨 ?

媽 女 媽 兒 : 麼好孩來 媽 能好子 媽 不 進 ! 成 , 生備平績 我 這 氣 考常 單 學 試不拿 期 ,去給 的 難上媽 成 怪課媽 績 成,看 不 績也看 太 會不。 好 不做甚 好作麼 你 。業? 別 媽 ,你 生 媽也這 氣 怎不個

 \equiv

嚴

姐

:

//\

管

你

今

天

早

L

是

不

是

出

去

了

會

兒

?

先 //

生

:

十開是

五的的

而圖到

共 我

書對

館面

,很

不快

過 地

我參

只 觀

去 了

了

差 下

不最

多近

分公

鐘

己

C. NARRATIVE 短文

緊 笑

你

好

句

的 ?

注太你

話嗎

意 _

思一

不媽

好

話

知

要

好

中

文

定

Read the following narrative, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read the narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

語所 語 實完很小紀 法以 在站不姐跟 法 外 特 是起高說他外 你 或 別這 太來興 或 : 差 好 要 個 難就

了

定

或 外

去

, 不

再

學

中

文

3

走就媽

對

這 說 好

不

他你

了

0

個

或 我

大學

得

中

生你

覺 媽

文說

這 就 老 生 問太左 個 那太手 老 外 位 : 為 老 1+ 師你著 麼 媽

會一

問我

媽

梁 太

死 太

很

很

已老

我

的

媽

好

?

不

多

想

再

試

//\

姐

他

這

生

手

4

位 怎

年

就小

跟姐

那

句 師 客 提 老 邊師 坐 和 學 好 , 生 嗎 看 位 ? 見 到 中 其 了 或 飯 老 的 太 或 太 他 就 開 問 學

話 牛 , 醒老 0 你他師 有中 過 就 或 帶 天 學 他 他 中 個 他塊的 中 兒 文他 去 很 吃 師想 飯 的多個 找 男 個機的 朋 會 外 前 友講國

老請

中大

好

或

Notes 注解

- B2. 王老先生有块地 (王老先生有塊地) "Old Mr. Wang had a plot of land." This is the first line of the Chinese translation of the American song "Old MacDonald Had a Farm." Note that the noun 地 "land," "ground" takes the measure 块 (塊) "piece of," "plot of."
- **B4**. ◆奇怪 qíguài "be strange" [sv]. The character怪 is one of the new characters for this lesson. Note that the word 奇怪 reoccurs in the Narrative for this lesson.
- C1. ◆提醒 tixing "remind" [v]. The character 醒 by itself is how one writes the verb xing "awaken" or "wake up."



"Chinese Calligraphy and Paintings" (store sign in Taipei)

Hobbies (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

511 Jyán grind; study

Radical is $\overline{\Box}$ shi "stone" (420). One "grinds" $\overline{\overline{\Box}}$ with a "stone" $\overline{\overline{\Box}}$. It's interesting to note that in colloquial English, the verb "grind" can also—just like Chinese $\overline{\overline{\Box}}$ —sometimes mean "study"! Distinguish $\overline{\overline{\Box}}$ and simplified $\overline{\overline{\Box}}$ kāi (122).

方12 完 ji**ū** study

Radical is 穴 xuế "cave" or "hole." Phonetic is 九 jiǔ "nine" (10). Distinguish 究 from 空 kòng/kōng (437).

研究	yánjiū	study, research [v/n]
中国研究 (中國研究)	Zhōngguo Yánjiū	Chinese Studies [PH]
美国研究 (美國研究)	Mĕiguo Yánjiū	American Studies [РН]
近东研究 (近東研究)	Jìndōng Yánjiū	Near Eastern Studies [РН]
对…有研究(對…有研究)	duìyŏu yánjiū	be an expert in, have expertise in [PT]
研究生	yánjiūshēng	graduate student [N]
●研究所	yánjiūsuŏ	graduate school [N]

513 懂 dŏng understand

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262), which here gives a hint as to the meaning. When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字旁 **xīnzìpáng** "side made up of the character 心" and is written as \uparrow . Phonetic is 董 **Dŏng**, which is a fairly common surname. Distinguish 懂 from 重 **zhòng** (462), traditional 種 **zhŏng** (320), and traditional 動 **dòng** (250).

懂	dŏng	understand [v]
听懂 (聽懂)	tīngdŏng	understand by hearing [RC]
听得懂 (聽得懂)	tīngdedŏng	be able to understand by hearing; understand [RC]
看懂	kàndŏng	understand by reading [RC]
看不懂	kànbudŏng	not be able to understand by reading; can't read [RC]

514 K min people

Radical is 氏 shì "name," "clan." Distinguish 民 from 及 jí (400), 很 hěn (58) and 眼 yǎn (494).

人民	rénmín	people [N]
●人民日报 (人民日報)	Rénmín Rìbào	People's Daily (name of a newspaper) [N]
民国…年(民國…年)	Mínguónián	in theyear of the Republic [РТ]
原住民	yuánzhùmín	native people [N]
美国的原住民 (美國的原住民)	Měiguóde yuánzhùmín	Native American [PH]
●三民主义 (三民主義)	Sān Mín Zhŭyì	The Three Principles of the People (consisting of nationalism, democracy, and the people's livelihood, as proposed by Sun Yat-sen) [N]

515 华(華) huá

huá China

Huà Hua (as a surname)

Radical of the simplified form is 十 **shí** "ten" (11). Phonetic of the simplified form is 化 **huà** "change" (479). Radical of the traditional form is 艸 **cǎo** "grass" (as an independent word this is written 草). When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, the "grass" radical is written as ⁺⁺ and is then known as 草字头 (草字頭) **cǎozìtóu** "top made up of the character 草." Distinguish simplified 华 from 化 and 花 **huā** (455).

华 (華)	Huà	Hua [sn] (Note the tone here is Tone Four.)
华人 (華人)	Huárén	Chinese person; Chinese people [N]
中华人民共和国 (中華人民共和國)	Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó	People's Republic of China [PW]
中华民国 (中華民國)	Zhōnghuá Mínguó	Republic of China (official name of Taiwan, and
		from 1912–49 the name for all of China) [PW]

516 亲(親) qīn parent, relative; to kiss

Radical of the simplified form is 立 lì "stand" (446). Radical of the traditional form is 见 (見) jiàn "see" (300). Distinguish 亲 (親) from 立, 見, 来 (來) lái (135), 平 píng (241), and 本 běn (242).

父亲(父親) fùqīn father [N] 母亲(母親) mǔqīn mother [N] 父母亲(父母親) fùmǔqīn parents [N] ●亲人(親人) qīnrén family member [N]

New Words in ISC 20-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

分	fēn	part, fraction [M]
…分之…	fēnzhī	(pattern for fractions) [PT]
百分之…	băifēnzhī	percent [PT]
…点… (…點…)	diăn	(pattern for decimals) [PT]
共和国(共和國)	gònghéguó	republic [N]
用	yòng	need to [v]
有用	yŏuyòng	be useful [sv]
没有用(沒有用)	méiyou yòng	not have any use [РН]
这还用谢?(這還用謝?)	Zhè hái yòng xiè?	"What are you thanking me for?"
们 (們)	-men	(plural suffix) [BF] (e.g., 朋友们 [朋友們] "friends")
正好	zhènghǎo(r)	just; as it happens [MA]
传 (傳)	zhuàn	chronicle; biography [N] (Note that the character 传 [傳] is here pronounced zhuàn , not chuán .)

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、《人民日报》是中华人民共和国的第一大报。
- 二、华国树的父亲对天文很有研究,他的母亲对数学很有研究。
- 三、母亲大声地叫:"孩子们!晚饭预备好了,快下来吃饭吧!"
- 四、"王爱华,女,民国三十七年出生于中华民国台湾省台东市。"
- 五、这个研究报告说美国的原住民占美国总人口的百分之一点七。
- 六、对不起,我没有完全听懂您刚才说的话,您能不能再讲一次?
- 七、听说在马来西亚,华人占总人口的四分之一,马来人占总人口的四分之三。
- 八、一个外国人如果认识差不多两千个中国字,就应该可以看懂《人民日报》了。
- 九、中华人民共和国的首都是北京,中华民国的首都是台北,不过也有人说中华民国 的首都是南京。
- 十、大海,我们今天一共是五个人,所以米饭你只能拿五分之一,懂不懂?

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

_ 、

张爱红:对了,你对京剧感兴趣吗?

李文: 京剧啊? 我虽然不太懂, 但是很爱看。

张爱红:这个星期六晚上我要跟父母一起去人民剧场看《白蛇传》。正好

多一张票,你愿意跟我一起去吗?

李文 : 太好了! 几点开始?

张爱红:八点。我星期六晚上七点一刻来找你。

李文:好,真谢谢你!

张爱红:这还用谢?星期六见!

 \equiv 、

李天乐:请问,你是华人吗?

高利民: 是啊, 我是华人。你呢?

李天乐:我也是华人。你在哪里出生的? 高利民:我在马来西亚出生的。你呢?

李天乐:我在新加坡出生的。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我的同学们都是研究生物和化学的,只有我一个人是研究文学的。 他们常常笑我说文学没有什么用。可是没办法,我真的只对文学感 兴趣。

- 二、一九七一年中华人民共和国和美国开始了对话,但是那时候,对话是 不公开的,所以知道这件事情的人很少。
- 三、我父亲在一个研究所服务,母亲是一位中学教员。我们一家都是华人。我们的老家是上海,但是现在全家都住在美国。虽然我已经学了很久的中文了,说得也还算流利,但还是有一些话我听不太懂。中国字当然不用说,除了那些最简单的字之外,我都看不太懂。

四、何老头

从前,可能是民国二十年左右吧,我们家对面住着一个老头姓何,大家都叫他何老头。何老头很喜欢唱歌儿。记得有一天早上,何老头走到街上,站在一张桌子上,跟很多人说:"我想人人都知道我很会唱歌儿。我也知道有很多朋友都喜欢听我唱。现在我要给你们唱几首最好听的歌儿,你们听一听!"他还说了很多别的话,说了半天。何老头说话,听的人真不少,大概有一百多个人。何老头就开始唱了。唱了一会儿,人就都走了,只有我跟我父亲没走。何老头跟我父亲说:"先生,我唱的歌儿就是您和您的女儿懂。他们都不懂,所以都走了。"我父亲说:"先生,您唱的歌儿我们也不懂。我们没走,是因为那张桌子是我们的,我们还需要用!"

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

九 七 六 五 兀 1 1 話對 好 母 華 米 大 民中 分聽 這 或 日 \pm 飯海 民國 字 之說 華 了 親 親 華 個 不 人 個 或 愛 民 你, 國的人 外 一 在 您起 口研 民 大 對 樹 報 就 華 日 快 馨 只 我 的首民 能 的究 或 數的 或 馬 應 馬 台 報 能們 學 首都共 來 不我 百 報 下 批 父 該 來 能沒 灣 女 今 都是和 如 九 分告 來叫 很親 可 是台國 是 $\overline{\mathbf{L}}$ 果 再 之說 省 吃 天 亞 有 有 茶牛 以 佔 認 中 南北的 講 台 民 分 完 美 飯一 研 天 看 總 吧孩 之共 識 點 東 華 京, 華 全 或 究 首 文 懂《 人口 次 七的 市 ! 人 是 。不都 差 聽 子 很 人 佔 懂 們 民 過是 不 原 $\overline{\mathcal{H}}$ 有 的 懂個 民多 七 共 也北 總 您 住 研 兀 不 年 人 有京 日兩 和 出 民 晚 究 分之三 懂 報干 出 或 人 , 才 佔 飯 ? 所 学 說中 個 的 說 美 生 預 他 的 以 中華 中 几 的 或 於 備 的 第

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

高 高 李 張 張 李 張 文 天 天 天 愛 文 利 利 愛 愛 文 愛 樂 樂 樂 紅 紅 紅 民 民 紅 : 是 我 我 我 請 這 好 太 去好起這 來八 對 很 在 在 也 問 還 找 點 好 嗎 多 去 愛 個 劇 了 新 馬 是 , 用 真 你 了 看 0 星 加 來 華 我 你 謝 謝 你 張民 ? 我 期 坡 是 西 人 是 謝 幾 對 劇 星 我 票 六 出 35 華 華 星 你 場 期 晚 雖 你 生 出 期 開 劇 ! 看 你 H 在 的 生 嗎 O 六 始 感 晚 願 我 不 哪 的 你 見 興 白 上 意 太 裡 呢 趣 蛇 七 跟 跟 懂 出 你 我 父 生 呢 1 但 的 0 ? 刻 起正 是

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

太那太算經現華是我 是 的 開 興 可他的我 九 些懂流學在人 始 趣 是 們 父 人 不 的 七 位親 很 沒 常 只同 最 利 了 全 公 了 少 常有學 開 簡 中 很家我中在 辨 , 對 笑 我 們 國但久都們 學 的話 法 中 我 字還的住的 都 教 個 說個 我 字當是中在 老 所 但 文 然有文美家 直 研 究 是 0 民 是 學 是我所 的 究 或 知 那 # 沒 研 此上 只 們服 # H 道時 用 0 和 有究 我說話說雖海 對 物 這 務 候 或 甚 文 文 我 得 然 件 家 和 和 學 麼 學 看除聽也我但都母 事對 美 15 用 的 感 了不還已是是親 情 話國

四、何

跟唱一老說好聽歌人到歌家我從 百頭了聽我兒說街兒都們 了 多說很的唱 我懂說他 親會個話多歌。我一,記他對可 別兒現也我站得何面 。: 們 沒 兒 的我一都 聽 ,在知想在有老住 的你我道人—— 的歌兒老 何就是 話們要有人張天 真競給很都桌早何個不說一你多知子上老老 都頭真 就頭 是跟走就 ,您所 開少了聽們朋道上,頭頭 是唱以您我 了 因的都和父 , 半 ! 唱 友 我 , 何 很 姓 始 您親 只 大天一幾都很跟老喜 唱 的說有 概。他首喜會很頭歡 了 : 我 有何還最歡唱多走唱大

Notes 注解

- A1. 第一大报 (第一大報) "biggest newspaper"
- **A4.** This sentence is in formal written register or style. The word \mp (\hbar) corresponds to \pm in spoken register.
- A7a. ◆马来西亚 (馬來西亞) Măláixīyà "Malaysia" [PW]
- A7b. ●总人□ (總人□) zŏngrénkŏu "total population" [N]
- A7c. ●马来人 (馬來人) Mălái rén "Malay" [PH]
- **A9.** Though the majority of people in Taiwan consider Taipei the capital of Taiwan, Republic of China, there are some who argue that, for historical and legal reasons, Nanjing is still the *de jure* capital of the Republic of China.
- B1a. ◆京剧 (京劇) Jīngjù "Peking opera" [N]
- B1b. ◆人民剧场 (人民劇場) Rénmín Jùchăng "People's Theater" (in Beijing) [PW]
- B1c. ◆蛇 shé "snake" [N]. The measure for 蛇 is 条 (條), so one says 一条蛇 (一條蛇) "one snake." 白 蛇传 (白蛇傳) Bái Shé Zhuàn is the name of a famous Peking opera which is often translated as "The Chronicle of the White Snake."
- B2. ◆新加坡 Xīnjiāpō "Singapore" [PW]
- C2a. ◆对话 (對話) duìhuà "dialog" [N]
- C2b. ◆公开 (公開) gōngkāi "be public," "be open" [sv]
- C4a. ◆老头 (老頭) lǎotóu(r) "old man" [N]
- C4b. 住着一个老头姓何 (住著一個老頭姓何) "there lived an old man with the last name of He"

Going to the Movies



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

517 **yǐng** shadow; image; film

Radical is shān "feathers." Phonetic is 景 jǐng "view," which in turn consists of li (132) and 京 jīng (17). Distinguish 影 from 京.

电影 (電影) diànyǐng(r) movie [N]

看电影 (看電影) kàn diànyǐng(r) see a movie

看场电影 (看場電影) kàn chẳng diànyǐng(r) see a showing of a movie

518 新 xīn new, fresh

Radical is 斤 jīn "catty" (326). Distinguish 新 from 亲 (親) qīn (516).

新 xīn be new, fresh [sv]

●新年 xīn nián New Year [тw]

●新年好! Xīn nián hǎo! "Happy New Year!" [IE]

●新年快乐!(新年快樂!) Xīn nián kuàilè! "Happy New Year!" [IE]

519 故

gù cause, reason; therefore

Radical is $\not \Sigma$ **pū** "tap" or "strike," which at the right side of a character is written $\not \Sigma$. Phonetic is $\not \equiv$ **gǔ** "old." Distinguish $\not \boxtimes$ from $\not \boxtimes$ **zuò** (378).

故事 gùshi story [N]

说故事 (說故事) shuō gùshi tell a story [PH] 讲故事 (講故事) jiǎng gùshi tell a story [PH]

520 将(將) jiāng will, be about to; take

Radical is 寸 **cùn** "inch." The whole character can serve as a phonetic, e.g. in 桨 (樂) **jiǎng** "oar." Distinguish 将 (將) from 特 **tè** (310).

将来 (將來) jiānglái in the future [тw]

521 计(計) jì calculate; plan

计 (計) Jì Ji [sn]

计算机 (計算機) jìsuànjī computer; calculator [N]

522 划 (劃) huà plan

Radical is \mathcal{D} dão "knife," which is written \mathbb{I} when occurring at the right-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as $\mathbb{L}\mathcal{D}$ lìdão "standing knife." Phonetic of the traditional form is \mathbb{E} huà (509). Distinguish traditional \mathbb{E} from traditional \mathbb{E} huà (509) and traditional \mathbb{E} shū (321).

计划 (計劃) jìhua plan [N/V]

New Words in ISC 20-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

场 (場)	chăng	(measure for a showing of a movie) [M]
当 (當)	dāng	serve as, work as [v]
家	-jiā	(noun suffix indicating professions) [BF]
画家 (畫家)	huàjiā	painter (artist) [N]
小说家 (小說家)	xiăoshuōjiā	novelist [N]
音乐家(音樂家)	yīnyuèjiā	musician [N]
讲 (講)	jiăng	tell the story of; be about [v]
名叫	míng jiào	be named [PH]
年代	niándài	decade [N]
片子	piānzi	film, movie [N] $(\stackrel{\coprod}{\vdash} $ is here pronounced piān , not piàn $)$

生意 shēngyì business [N]

做生意 zuò shēngyì engage in business, do business [PH]

月 yuè moon [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、最近有一个新片子,讲的是五十年代法国一个画家的故事。
- 二、一九七六年,毛主席死了以后,中国走上了一条全新的道路。
- 三、中国的新年不是一月一号,有的时候在一月,有的时候在二月。
- 四、今晚的电影名叫《活着》,是关于中国人民五十年代生活的电影。
- 五、五十、六十年代在中国,大人、小孩儿、男人、女人穿的衣服都一样。
- 六、听说王先生以前是小说家;他每次到我们家都会讲很多有意思的故事。
- 七、我的同屋差不多每天晚上都看一场电影,我真不懂他什么时候做作业!
- 八、白小姐在一家新开的进出口公司做事, 听说那家公司的生意做得很不错。
- 九、张新民的老大是画家,老二是音乐家,老三做生意;所以做爸爸的他现在可以放心了。
- 十、王大海最怕有人问他"你将来有什么计划?",因为他还没有计划,也不知道将来要做什么。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

小牛:进来。小李! 小李:做什么呢?

小牛: 学习呢。

小李: 是吗? 你晚上有空吗? 想不想去看场电影儿?

小牛: 可以啊。有什么好片子吗?

小李:最近有一个新片子,名叫《月的主人》,听说不错。讲的是三十年代中国一个音乐家的故事。

二、(中国新年的时候) 张老师:校长,新年快乐! 校长:张老师,新年好!

 \equiv

班立新:小班,我不会用这个计算机。你可不可以教我怎么用?计国明:我看看。这个计算机好像坏了。你最好换一个新的吧!

四、

女生: 你将来有什么计划?

男生:我喜欢小孩子,所以将来想当小学老师。你呢? 女生:我从小就对音乐感兴趣,所以将来打算当音乐家。

男生: 你这个计划不错!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我哥哥特别喜欢看电影。每次有新片子出来,他就一定得去看。他有时候也带我去看,可是我不懂电影有什么好看的。我觉得花钱去看电影还不如花钱去书店买书。
- 二、我小的时候非常喜欢看故事书,我什么样的故事都喜欢看。我也很喜欢画画儿,可是画得不太好。很多人常问我将来有什么计划,我告诉他们长大了以后想做小说家或画家。现在我已经长大了,可是如果有人问我将来打算做什么,我会有一点儿紧张,也不知道该说什么,因为说真的,我还没决定我将来的计划。

三、牛吃草

王大川先生是一位非常好的画家,人人都听过他的名字。他最近画了一张新画儿叫"牛吃草",所以我跟我父亲、母亲都去看了。我们看他的这张画儿看了很久,是一大张白纸,上面什么都没有。所以我

就问王先生:"这张画儿为什么叫'牛吃草'?草在哪儿呢?" 王先生告诉我们说牛把草吃完了,所以没有草了。后来别人问王先生:"那,牛呢?牛在哪儿?"王先生先看了画儿,然后看了那个人,就告诉他因为没有草了,所以牛也走了。



New Town Plaza, Hong Kong

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

五 儿 九 八 七 六 \pm 張 我 聽 今 中 以老 聽 白 影 我 兒五 或 在 走 最 知計 法 =新 說小 們 H 道 劃 大 放 的 說 人 或 九 , 晚 或 沂 那姐 了 七 海 心做民 我同 王 民 月 的 ? 家 男 的 有 來 最 了生的 家 在 真 屋 都 先 人 五 個 , 新 雷 要 不差 條年 畫個 意 老 公 會 生 1 年 怕 + 有 大 做 大 司家 懂不 講以 女年 年 全 有 的 家新 不 名 為 代 是 新 的 人 什 人 所 他多 很 前 代 時 是 新毛 的 片 什每 他 生開 生 畫 多 的主 故子 麼 問 穿 LY 是 候 在 意 的 活 還 家 麼 天 有 的 道 事 在 他 做 1 中 月 席 , 活 沒 做 進 時晚 意 的 路 衣 爸 說 或 死 講 着 老 出 得 思 電 月 候 服 有 爸 上 家 號 你 了 的 做都 的 影 很 都 計 的 大 將 以 是 是 公 作 故 不 他 看 他 是 來 有 後 五 音 司 錯 事 樣 包 關 現 + 有 的 樂 做 ! 0 場 次 在 11 於 時 中 年 也 甚 家 事 到 代 不麼 孩 中 電 候 或

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

 \equiv 計 班 校 // 11 11 1 1 中 長 老 李 # 李 # 李 # 或 1 或 明 新 師 : 新 講 最 可 學 做 進 年 月 新像我 想 麼算 的 //\ 以 習 張 校 沂 嗎 1+ 來 的 的 用機 家 的 壞 是 去 班 老 長 呢 廖 看 ? 有 時 吧 的 主 0 看 了 師 呢 11 看 , 你 候 有 你 故 場 + 人 新 我 李 , 0 晚 個 甚 口 電 事 年 年 新 Ţ 不 你這 H 麼 不 影 快 年 會 代 最個 有 聽 好 兒 好 計 用 子 以 說 ! 或 換質 教 這 嗎 子 不 機 名 嗎 ? 我 個 個 好 個 想 怎 計

兀

女 生 牛 生 生 師以 算興 我 劃 你 我 你 當趣從 這 將 喜 將 音 你 來 個 , // 歡 來 計 呢 想 所就 11 有 劃 家 以對 當 孩 甚 不 將 音 // 子 錯 麼 來樂 學 , 打感 老所 計



Street Sign in Taipei

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

#

吃

告叫所很親兒都王 都叫聽大 以 那哪後我 牛我 過 去 是 們吃 就 個兒來 看牛他先 別說 ? 問 草 了 吃的生 大 王 名 0 張 ? 先 王問 把 我 白 草生 們 位 王 草 在 看 生先 吃 : 他 哪 以 他 先生 完 最 F 的我近好 兒 這 面 呢 張 這跟 畫的 為 甚 張我 畫那所 ? 畫 了 沒 麼 兒 畫父一 都 為 兒親張 沒 \pm 草 沒 然呢有 先 1+ 新 有 草生麼 母畫人

我 我 我 是小甚可 樣 說 說麼 是 去來 如 的 //\ 真 點果 家計 書 故 的 得 看 的兒有 或 劃 得 事 時 花 他 回 緊 都 候 錢 就別 人 書 , 不 是 我張問 家我 喜 非 去 太 還 歡 定歡 我 告 常 看 好 不 電 也將 現訴 懂 決 影 不來 在 他 很 電 我 定 還 知打 我 也 我 道 不 長 很 將 該做經 常 如 他 每 甚 來 花 問 說什長 了 有次 一麼好 歡 的 錢去 大以 時 甚 麼 我 有 畫 後 將 麼 候新 了 書 看 劃 想 書 我 , 來 也 的 大 會可做有

Notes 注解

- **A1.** 今晚 is an abbreviation of 今天晚上.
- A8. 新开的进出口公司 (新開的進出口公司) "a newly opened import-export company"
- A9. 做爸爸的他 lit. "he, who is the father"
- C1. 我不懂电影有什么好看的 (我不懂電影有什麼好看的) "I don't understand what's so good about watching movies."

Going to the Movies (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

523 类 (類) lèi kind, type

Radical of the simplified form is # mǐ "hulled rice" (368), the other component being # dà (13). Radical of the traditional form is 頁 yè "page," the other components being # and # quǎn "dog." Distinguish simplified # from #, and traditional 類 from traditional 頭.

类 (類)	lèi	kind, type, category [M]
这类 (這類)	zhèilèi	this kind
那类(那類)	nèilèi	that kind
哪类(哪類)	něilèi	which kind?
人类学 (人類學)	rénlèixué	anthropology [N]
●人类 (人類)	rénlèi	mankind, humanity [N]

524 pái row, line

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which at the left side of a character is written as ‡ and is referred to colloquially as 提手 **tíshǒu** "raised hand." Phonetic is 非 **fēi** "not" (385). Distinguish 排 from 非.

排	pái	row, line [M]
第八排	dìbāpái	Row 8
第几排 (第幾排)	dìjĭpái	which row?
排行	páiháng	(refers to one's rank or order in a family) [N]

525 楼(樓) lóu building; floor

Radical is the pictograph 木 mù "tree." This radical is referred to colloquially as 木字旁 mùzìpáng "side made up of the character 木." Note that when 木 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Phonetic is 娄 (婁) lóu "weak." Distinguish 楼 (樓) from 数 (數) shù (424).

楼 (樓)	lóu	building [N]; floor [BF]
上楼 (上樓)	shànglóu	go upstairs [vo]
下楼 (下樓)	xiàlóu	go downstairs [vo]
楼上(樓上)	lóushàng	upstairs [PW]
楼下 (樓下)	lóuxià	downstairs [PW]
三楼 (三樓)	sānlóu	third floor
专家楼 (專家樓)	zhuānjiā lóu	(foreign) experts building [PH]

T1 11

部分	bùfen	part, portion [M]
大部分	dà bùfen	majority, greater part, most [PH]
外交部	Wàijiāo Bù	Foreign Ministry [PH]
部	bù	(measure for films) [м] (e.g., $ \sharp$ \sharp \sharp yíbù piānzi "a film")
●东部 (東部)	dōngbù	eastern part (of an area), the East [PW]
●南部	nánbù	southern part (of an area), the South [PW]
●西部	xībù	western part (of an area), the West [PW]
●北部	běibù	northern part (of an area), the North [PW]
●中部	zhōngbù	central part (of an area) [PW]

527 理 lǐ pay attention to

Radical is ${\mathbb E}$ yù "jade." Phonetic is ${\mathbb E}$ lǐ "mile." Distinguish 理 from ${\mathbb E}$.

理	lĭ	pay attention to [v]
理解	lĭjiĕ	understand [v]; understanding [N]
经理 (經理)	jīnglĭ	manager [N]
总经理 (總經理)	zŏngjīnglĭ	general manager [N]

地理 dìlǐ geography [N]
物理 wùlǐ physics [N]
心理学 (心理學) xīnlǐxué psychology [N]

●心理学家 (心理學家) xīnlǐxuéjiā psychologist [N]

528 **t**ā it

Radical is 中 mián "roof." This radical is referred to colloquially as 宝盖头 (寶蓋 頭) bǎogàitóu "top made up of a canopy." The part that is under the "roof" is 上 bǐ, which is a type of ancient spoon, an object, so we could say that "it" 它 is under the "roof" 中. The whole character 它 can serve as a phonetic, e.g., in the character 鸵 (鴕), which is used in the word 鸵鸟 (鴕鳥) tuóniǎo "ostrich." Distinguish 它 from 他 tā "he" (55) and 她 tā "she" (56).

它 tā it [PR]

别管它! (别管它!) Bié guǎn ta! "Don't concern yourself with it!"

把它放在这儿吧。 Bǎ ta fàngzai zhèr ba. "Put it here."

(把它放在這兒吧。)

New Words in ISC 20-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

爱情片(爱情片) àiqíngpiàn romantic movie [N] 北京图书馆(北京圖書館) Běijīng Túshūguăn Beijing Library [PW] 从来(從來) cónglái all along, always [A] 从来没…过(從來沒…遇) cónglái méi...-guo have never ever before... [PT] 电影明星 (電影明星) diànyĭng míngxīng movie star [PH] 咸 găn touch, move; affect (emotionally) [v] 明白 míngbai understand [V/RE] 内容(内容) nèiróng content [N] 听不太明白(聽不太明白) tīngbutàimíngbai can't understand very well [RC] 主要 zhŭyào main, essential [AT]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我今天到书店买了书和地图,可是已经忘了把它放在什么地方了!
- 二、长白山的林区是中国东北边的主要林区,大概有28万平方公里。
- 三、我的中国同屋有一次告诉我他希望将来在中国外交部工作。
- 四、美国老一代的华人,大部分是从广东省来的,他们的母语是台山话。
- 五、我们的司机老何告诉我他从来没有在大城市开过车,但是他愿意试 一试。
- 六、我在我们家排行老四,我上面有一个哥哥、两个姐姐,下面还有一个 弟弟、三个妹妹。
- 七、我们大二得决定专业,我准备学人类学,我的一个同屋要学心理学, 另一个同屋要学物理。
- 八、美国的中国饭馆,相当一部分都叫"北京楼",不过他们卖的菜不一定是北京风味儿的菜!
- 九、北京市西部、北部和东北部都有山,西部的山叫西山,各位听说过的 香山也就是西山的一部分。
- 十、那部爱情片王大海已经看了十多次了,可是主要内容他还是不太理解。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

_ 、

小牛: 太好了! 我还从来没看过这类的电影儿呢。在什么地方? 几点开始?

小李:北京图书馆,三点半。三点我来找你,怎么样?

小牛:好啊。

小李:好,再见。

小牛:再见。…… 几排的?

小李:位子不错,楼下十五排,十六、十八号儿。我们进去吧。……你觉得 这部片子怎么样?

小牛:太好了!很感人。

小李:他们说的话,你都能听懂吗?

小牛:大部分都懂,有的地方说得太快,听不太明白。不过电影的主要内容我都能理解。

_ \

林美华:京京,早!好久不见了!听说你最近换工作了,是吗?你现在在哪

儿工作啊?

管京京:对,我现在在第十五街的"北京楼"饭馆做经理。

林美华: 经理?不简单! 你喜欢这个工作吗?

管京京:喜欢,只是我们工作实在太忙了。

林美华:"北京楼"我早就听说过,可是从来没去过。

管京京:那么,这样好了。今晚你跟你爱人过来看看,你们是我的客人,我

请你们吃饭。楼上有包间,大部分人不知道。你们五点半过来吧,

那个时候客人还不是太多。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我觉得爱情片根本不好看!每个爱情片的主要内容都差不多一样: 一个人爱上另外一个人,可是另外那个人不爱他。中间还加上很多别的小故事。过了一、两个小时以后,那两个人又爱上了别人。我真是觉得像爱情片这类的电影一点儿意思也没有!

二、台语

在台湾说得最多的一种语言就是台湾话,也叫台语。说台语的人口大概有一千五百多万,占台湾总人口的三分之二。不过,台湾其他人大部分多少也听得懂一点儿台语。台语这种方言相当难学,比北京话要难得多。台语一共有七个声调,它的字也很特别,跟北京话或广东话不太一样。你如果住在台湾会讲台湾话真的很有用,这样很多事情办起来比较方便。

三、搬家

有一年,我搬家。我的东西特别多,所以我请了几个好朋友帮我的忙。有一个朋友有汽车,用汽车搬家当然比较快。我家里有一个大钟,是我父亲给我的,是我父亲的父亲很多年以前给他的。听说那个钟是三百多年以前的老钟,所以我有点儿不放心,不想让我的朋友搬,一定要自己搬。我跟朋友说:"这个钟我可以自己搬,你们不用搬。别的东西请你们帮我搬,好吗?真谢谢你们!你们真是好朋友!我们搬完了东西我请客,已经定了一桌酒席,我请你们吃很多好吃的东西,喝很多的酒!"

后来我就一个人开始搬钟。从楼上搬到楼下,从门里头搬到门外头。但是那个钟又大又重,真不容易搬。搬起来,也不容易走路。搬了半天,我最后搬出去了。因为那个钟实在太重了,所以我只好在

街上搬一会儿,休息一会儿,再搬一会儿,再休息一会儿,这样走得 很慢!

在街上有一个人看我搬钟。他看我搬了一会儿,然后放下,又搬了 一会儿,又放下了。他一直看我,看了半天。然后他走到我身边,对我 说:"先生,我可以问您一个问题吗?"我说:"当然可以。有什么问 题,您问吧!"那个人先看了看我,然后看了看钟,就说了:"先生,我 真不知道您为什么不买一只手表呢!"

D. SUPPLEMENT: 台湾的地理

台北在台湾的北部, 台南在台湾的南部, 台东在台湾的东部。 那么,请问,台中在台湾的哪里?



Harbin Institute of Technology

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

不

過

他

們

曹

的

菜

不

定

是

風

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

七 六 F 兀 九

我

們

的

司

機

老

何

訴

我

他

從

來

沒

有

在

大

城

市

開

過

車

但

是

他 告

願

意

試

試

是那 山的北 的樓美 的山京 菜 部 一叫市 愛 部西西 情 分山部 片

主 內 容 他 Ŧ , 還 大 各北 是 海 位部 不 己 聽和 太理 經 說東 過北 _ 的部 香都 多 山有 次 也山 了 就, 是西

西部

口

學我我 兩我 物的們 個在 或 理 -姐我 的 大 姐們 中 個 家 或 同得 下 屋決 排 飯 面行 要 館 定 還老 學 車 有 四 相 心 業 理 個 我 學 我 弟 上 部 , 準 弟 面 分 備 有 北都 學 京叫 個 個個 同 類 妹 哥 味北 屋 學 妹 哥 兒京 要

的 美 或 或 , 外中 他 老 們 交 部 的 代 母 I 的 語 作 華 是 台 Щ 大 話 部 分 是 從 廣 東 省

來

中我 概 的 它天 有 Ш 放到 或 的 在 林 萬 甚 屋 店 平 麼 有 買 是 方 地 了 中 公 方 次 書 或 里 了 和 東 訴 地 北 我 몲 邊 他 的 希 主 望 是 要 己 將 林 經 來 品 在 忘

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

1

1

1 //\ 11

李

:

北

京

몲

書

館

=

點

+

0

 \equiv

點 這

我

來

找

你

怎

麼

樣

4

太

好

了

我

還

從

來

沒

看

调

類

的

電

影

兒

呢

0

在

甚

麼

地

方

?

幾

點

開

#

:

好

圆可

//\ //\ //\ /]\ 李 # 李 : : 位 再 好 子 見 , 不 再 0 見

÷ 太 好 了 錯 Ţ 很 ,

樓 幾 排 人 下 + 的 ?

 \overline{A} 排 號 兒 我

進

去

吧

0

你

覺

得

這

部

子

怎

麼 樣

4 李 . ÷ 他 們 說 的 話 你 都 能 聽 懂 嗎 ?

大 部 分 都 懂 有 的 地 方 說 得 太 快 , 聽 不 太 明 白 0 不 過 電 影 的 主 要 內 容 我 都 能

京 京 : 對 , 我 現 在 在 第 五 街 的 北 京 樓 飯 館 做 經 理

美 華 : 經 理 ? 不 簡 單 你 喜 歡 這 個 \perp 作 嗎 ?

美 京 華 京 : 喜 北 歡 京 樓 只 是 我 我 早 們 就 \perp 作 聽 說 實 過 在 太 , 可 忙 是 了 從 來

管

京

京

林

管

林

管

林

美

華

京

京

,

早

1

好

久

不

見

了

Ţ

聽

說

你

最

近

換

I

作

了

是

嗎

?

你

現

在

在

哪

兒

I

作

理

解

間那 麼 大 部 這 樣 分 好 不 了 知 0 今 道 晚 你你 們跟 五 你 點 愛 调 過 來來 吧 看 看 那 個你 時們 候是 客我 人的 還客 不人 是 太我 多 請 你 們 吃 飯 樓 上 有 包

沒

去

過

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

> 佔 在 廣 方 言 東

不

樣

你

如

果

住

在

台

灣

會

講

台

灣

話

真

的

很

有

用

這

樣

很

多

事

情

起

來

方

便

跟 比

北 台

或 種

京語

話這

語

干

T

多

萬

我 又 可 愛 是 台 上 另 得 話相灣灣 當總說 外愛 太難 別那情 人得 片 學口 最 人個 根 , 的 多 人 我 不本 th 的 真 不 北 分 愛 是 好 他 京 之 種 覺 話 語 得 中 要 0 言 像 每 間 難不 就 愛 還 個 得 過 是 愛 多 加 台 台 \vdash 灣 這 很 灣 話 類 的 語 其 多 的 主 別 他 十, 電 共 的 內 有 大 台 七部 故 語 點 個分 事 兒 差 聲多 說 意 不 調 少 调 台 思 多 了 也 語 也 它聽 的 沒 樣 \ 的得 有 字 ۸۸ 懂 也 個 大 個 很點 11 椒 時 特兒 有 愛 以 別台

後

那四

杁

個

另

外

個

三 搬 家

你好一 前 用 汽 嗎 給 定 ? 要 他車年 後 吃 來 很 真 自 的 搬 我 多 謝 己 0 家 我 好謝搬聽 就 當 搬 吃你 說然家 我那比 的 們 跟 東 個 我 人 較 西你朋 鐘 的 快 友 們 是 東 喝 說 我 西 真 很 百 特 是 家 鐘 多 多 好 裡 別 0 這 的 年 多 從 朋 有 個 酒 以 樓 友 鐘 前 所 上 ! 個 我 的 走 搬 我 大 老 我 鐘 以 到 鐘 請 樓 搬 自 了 \Box 下 完 所 幾 我 了 搬 個 父 東 我 好 你 親 月月 西 朋 有 們 我 裡 給 不點 友 請 我 幫 兒 客 用 的 我 搬 不 到 的 放 =別 忙 1 經 我 出外 的 定 父 東不 有 親 了 想 西 但 的 個 讓 請 是 父 你我 朋 親 酒 那四 們的 友 很 席 幫朋 有 多 汽 我 友 年 我

搬

樣實大

在又 走 得 太 重 直在 很重 , 看 街 慢 了 真 上 1 不 有 , 所 容 看 以 易 個 我搬個 人 只 0 看 搬開 好 0 我 在起始 搬 街來搬 Ŀ , 搬也 走他 不 會容 兒易 身 搬 邊 了 休路 息 0 举十 搬 會 了 說 兒半從 : 然 天 後 再 , 先 放 搬我頭 # 下 最 搬 會 後 我又 兒搬門 可搬 以 了 再去頭 믬 休了 您 息 0 兒 大 個 為 會 問 又 兒那個 題放 個鐘 嗎 下 這鐘 又

我 先 說 生 我 當我 真 不 口 知 以了 道 您 有 天 為 甚 1 麼然 麼 問後鐘 不 題他 買 您到 隻 問我我 手 吧 錶 呢 個 我 兒 人 先 看 了 看 我 然 後 看 了 看 鐘 就 說 5 了

D. SUPPLEMENT: 台灣的地理

台 台 東 南 北 在 在 在 台 台台 請 問 灣 灣 的 的的 台 東 南 北 中 部部部 在台灣



(芙蓉 fúróng means "lotus")

Notes 注解

的

- A1. ●老一代 lǎo yídài "the older generation"
- A8. 相当一部分 (相當一部分) "quite a number of," "a considerable portion of"
- C3a. ◆搬家 bānjiā "move" (one's home) [vo]
- C3b. ◆休息xiūxi "rest" [v]
- C3c. 他走到我身边 (他走到我身邊) lit. "He walked to my body" or in idiomatic English, "He walked over to where I was."
- D. The answer to the question, of course, is 中部.



(This sign was posted erroneously at Taipei Railway Station.)

Leisure Time Activities (II)

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Sports and leisure activities.
- 2. Competitive games that are in progress: Who is playing whom? What is the score? Who is likely to win and lose? etc.
- 3. Watching television.
- 4. The Great Wall of China.
- 5. A Chinese joke.
- 6. A passage comparing home education in China and the U.S.
- 7. A passage on Taiwanese society.
- 8. A famous story from ancient China about adding legs to a snake.
- 9. A passage about the geography of mainland China, Hainan, and Taiwan.
- 10. A story called "The Three-Character Donkey."



Talking About Sports



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

529 J qiú ball, globe

Radical is Ξ yù "jade," but notice that as a radical the last stroke (the dot) is dropped, so that the radical looks like Ξ wáng "king" (6). For that reason, the colloquial name for this radical is 王字旁 wángzìpáng "side made up of the character Ξ ." Notice also that when used as a radical, the bottom line of Ξ slants up toward the right, so as not to get in the way of the other component. Phonetic is \ddot{x} qiú "implore."

球	qiú	ball [N]
打球	dăqiú	play a ball game [vo]
排球	páiqiú	volleyball [N]
球鞋	qiúxié	sneakers, athletic shoes [N

530 队(隊) duì team, group

Radical is 阜 **fù** "mound," which is written when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as 左耳旁 **zuŏ'ĕrpáng** "side made up of a left ear." The simplified form reflects the fact that a "team" or "group" 队 is composed of "people" 人. Distinguish simplified 队 from simplified 从 **cóng** (211) and simplified 认 **rèn** (395).

队 (隊) duì team, group [N]

校队 (校隊)	xiàoduì	school team [N]
●球队 (球隊)	qiúduì	ball-playing team [N]

531 运(運) yùn move, transp

Radical is 之 **chuò** "walk" or "go." The colloquial name for this radical is 走之 **zŏu zhī** "the walking 之," because of its meaning "walk" and its resemblance to the particle 之. Phonetic of the simplified form is 云 **yún** "speak." The phonetic of the traditional form is traditional 軍 **jūn** "army." Distinguish simplified 运 from simplified 过 **guò** (136), simplified 过 **biān** (159), and simplified 远 **yuǎn** (220).

运气(連氣)	yùnqi	luck [N]
运动 (運動)	yùndòng	sport, exercise, athletics [N]
运动鞋(運動鞋)	yùndòng xié	athletic shoes [PH]

532 功 gōng merit; achievement

成功	chénggōng	succeed [v]
功夫	gōngfū	kung fu (type of martial art) [ท]
中国功夫 (中國功夫)	Zhōngguo gōngfū	Chinese kung fu (type of martial art) [РН]
用功	yònggōng	be hardworking, studious [sv]
功课 (功課)	gōngkè	homework; schoolwork [N]

533 室 shì room

室友

Radical is 中 mián "roof." This radical is referred to colloquially as 宝盖头 (寶蓋頭) bǎogàitóu "top made up of a canopy." Phonetic is 至 zhì "arrive" (604). Distinguish 室 from 定 dìng (270), 完 wán (296), and 家 jiā (191).

roommate, dorm mate [N]

办公室 (辦公室)	bàngōngshì	office [PW]
教室	jiàoshì	classroom [PW]
地下室	dìxiàshì	basement [PW]
◉室	shì	room [BF]
348室	sān sì bā shì	Room 348

dào on the contrary, and yet

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written \if when occurring at the left side of a character. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzipáng** "side made up of the character \if ." Phonetic is 到 **dào** "arrive" (205). Distinguish 倒 from 到 and 利 **lì** (496).

倒是	dàoshi	actually; to the contrary [A]

shìyŏu

New Words in ISC 21-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

比方说(比方說)	bĭfāng shuō	for example [PH]
比如	bĭrú	for example [MA]
比如说(比如說)	bĭrú shuō	for example [PH]
打	dă	play (a sport) [v]
个子(個子)	gèzi	stature, build [N]
公园(公園)	gōngyuán	a park [PW]
和	hàn	and [cJ] (Hàn is the pronunciation of the word in
		Taiwan; in Beijing it is pronounced hé .)
毛	máo	feather, fur, hair (on body) [N]
哪些	năxiē	which ones? which?
太极 (太極)	tàijí	t'ai chi (short for 太极拳 [太極拳] tàijíquán
		t'ai chi, "shadow boxing" [N])
有没有+VERB (有沒有+VERB)	yŏu méiyou + VERB	(to indicate Yes/No questions) [PT] (e.g., 你有没 [沒] 有去?"Did you go?")

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、各位同学,现在请你们把今天的功课交给老师!
- 二、我的运气常常不太好;我室友的运气倒是不错。
- 三、我的室友参加校队以后,都没有时间和我去看电影了。
- 四、你早上可以去人民公园学中国功夫、打太极或者做其他的运动。
- 五、"容力为先生,容力为先生,请您尽快到办公室来接电话!"
- 六、我虽然没有参加什么球队,但是我还是很喜欢跟朋友随便打打球。
- 七、各地吃饭的习惯都不一样,比方说中国人吧,北方人喜欢吃面,南方人爱吃米饭。
- 八、中国人觉得好的开始很要紧,比如说,有一句老话说:"好的开始是成功的一半儿。"
- 九、我们中文课的教室在楼上,可是老师的办公室在地下室,这样跑来跑去对大家都不太方便。
- 十、王大海不怎么用功,他妹妹倒是很用功,也上了很多很难的课,比方说,化学、物理、心理学什么的。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

—,

台湾同学: 你喜欢做哪些运动?

美国同学:我喜欢打排球。其实,我以前高中的时候在排球校队,不过现

在已经很久没打了。

台湾同学:不简单!那你来台湾这么久了,有没有做一些不一样的运动,比

如说,中国功夫、太极什么的?

美国同学:我自己没有,不过我的室友倒是每个星期天早上都会到对面的

公园去学中国功夫。

— .

马川:明天去哪里打球?

王可:要不要去加油站后面的那个小公园?

马川: 我觉得我们应该换一个地方, 比方说领事馆后面那一大块空地或

者食品店前面的那个公园都行。

王可:随便你,去哪里都行。

=

妈妈: 你手里拿着什么呢?

儿子:是个球,我等一下要到公园去跟同学打球。对了,妈,我的运动鞋放

在哪里了?我找不着了!

妈妈: 今天不能打球, 会下雨的!

儿子:这么干的天气,下什么雨?

妈妈:我刚才听天气预报说会下雨的。再说,你的功课还没做完呢!

儿子:好吧,好吧,不去就不去!

四、

美国华人:妹妹,你不是从小就不喜欢学中文

吗?怎么现在倒学起中文来了?

女儿 :我小的时候你跟爸爸天天要我学,所

以我就不学。现在我长大了,知道学中文有用,所以倒想学中文了。你跟爸爸

高兴吧?

美国华人:孩子,你现在这么用功地学习中文,我

跟你爸爸好高兴啊!



"Huàzhuāngshì"

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、我这个人个子长得比较高,跑步跑得也不慢。以前在成功大学学习的时候,我很喜欢运动。比如说跟室友们一起打球或是到公园去打太极、学中国功夫什么的。可是现在我已经参加工作了,每天从早到晚得在办公室里头上班,实在太忙了,根本没有空到外头去运动。
- 二、金金小妹妹今年六岁了,今天是她上小学一年级的第一天。她的老师王老师开始教班上的小朋友写中国字了。老师告诉他们,开始总是最难,只要用功学习,写第二张就容易得多了。"那么,老师,"金金说,"我一开始就写第二张吧!"

Q Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+九 七 六 $\overline{\mathbf{H}}$ 兀 學了王 老中 北各 我 你 電我 我 在我 跟 什很大 地們 朋 雖 來 早 影的 的 話國 方 地 做 位 力 下中 接 說人 麼多海 人吃 友 然 其 上 了 室 運 同 為 學 的很不 隨 沒 電 他可 友 氣 室文 覺 喜飯 先 常 話 參 難怎 課 得 歡的 便 有 的以 現 生 常 這的 好 好 吃習 打 1 運 去 加 的麼 在 , 不 打 樣教 的的 麵 加 動 校 課 用 慣 容 太 跑室 開開 , 球 甚 民 隊 功 都 你 好 力 以 來在 始始 南不 廖 公 為 是很 跑樓 方 袁 後 方他 球 我 先 成要 說妹 去上 人 學 隊 樣 室 生 對 愛 妹 功緊 中 都 友 大可 的 吃 旧 沒 化倒 或 , 的 tk 的 米 請 是 家 是 EL 有 是 功 功 方 運 都老 半如 飯 您 時 很 我 夫 說 氣 兒說 物用 不師 盡 間 還 交 中 倒 太的 快 理 功 是 打 和 或 方辦 很 到 我 有 太 老 便公 去 心也 喜 辨 極 師 理上 句 歡 公 或 看

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

馬

111

覺

得

我

們

應

該

換

個

方

,

空地

者比

地

或

食方我

品說

店領

前事

面館

的後

那面

個那

公

袁 大

都 塊

行

王

可

隨

便

你

去

哪

裡

都

行

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

> 美 美 台 台 或 灣 灣 或 學 學 學 學 : 倒 動 過前我 1+ 了 血 我 不 你 的是 麼 現高 自 簡 喜 公 每 的比有 在中 己 單 歡 袁 已 個 如沒 的 做 沒 1 去 經 星 說 有 時 那 有 學 做 期 很 候 你 球 中 中 久 天 在 不 來 此 沒 或 早 或 排 動 台 過 其 打 功 不 功 球 灣

夫

樣 這

太的麼

極運久

111 明 天 去 哪 裡 打 球 那 夫 都 個 會 到 對友

馬

王

:

要

不

要

去

加

油

站

後

面

的

11

公

几

或 華 嗎 妹 妹 怎 麼 你 現 不 在 是 倒 從 學 //\ 起 就 中文 來 歡 · 了

學

中

文

或 兒 華 你道所我 我 孩 跟學以小 跟子 爸中我 你 的 爸文就 你 時 高有 現 不 候 用學 興 在 你 吧 這 跟 所 麼 現 爸 用 以 在 爸 倒 功 我 天 想 地 長 天 學 大 要 + 了 我 中 文 了 文 知

爸

爸

好

高

興

啊

媽 : 你 手 裡 拿 著 甚 麼 呢

子 是 個 對 球 了 我 媽 等 我 下 的 要 運 到 動 公 鞋 袁 放 去 在 哪跟 裡同 學 了 打

兒 媽 子 媽 : : 你我 這 今 天 剛」 麼 不 乾 才 的 能 聽 打 天 天 氣 球 氣 預 報 甚 下 說 麼 1 會 雨 的 下 1 雨 的 再

說

子 : 好 的 吧 功 課 好 還 吧 沒 做 不 去 完 就 呢 不 去

我

的

室

兒 我 球 找 不 著 了 !

了 校

隊

我

不以

?

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

金 就老張難老班天 天 沒頭每是極起歡功跑 寫師就 是金 師上 有上天現 打運大步 , 容 只 告 的 她 她 小 要訴小的上妹 3外頭去運動。 #到晚得在辦公家 用他朋友寫本學一 如的不子 少學習,寫第二二,開始總是最 一年級的第一 一年級的第一 一年級的第一 参加 麼 T 市 的 去 友 我 前 , 根室 那寫總

Notes 注解

- A4. ●人民公园 (人民公園) Rénmín Gōngyuán "People's Park" [PW]. There are public parks with this name in many mainland Chinese cities, the most famous of which are in Shanghai, Tianjin, Guangzhou, and Chengdu.
- B3a. ●再说 (再說) zài shuō "furthermore," "besides," or "moreover" [PH]
- B3b. 好吧,好吧,不去就不去! "O.K., O.K., then I just won't go!"
- **B4a.** The mother addresses her daughter as 妹妹 not to indicate that the daughter is her own younger sister, but rather to describe her position among the children in the family. 哥哥,姐姐, and 弟弟 are used similarly as terms of address by parents and grandparents in many Chinese families.
- **B4b.** 学起中文来了 (學起中文來了) "have started learning Chinese." This structure consists of the compound verb 学起来 (學起來) with the object 中文, resulting in a so-called split resultative compound verb construction. When 起来 (起來) is added to verbs, it often adds the sense "begin."
- B4c. 我小的时候你跟爸爸天天说要我学,所以我就不学 (我小的時候你跟爸爸天天說要我學,所以我就不學) lit. "When I was little, you and Dad said every day you wanted me to learn, so I on the contrary refused to learn." When used with negatives, 就 may emphasize something that is in contradiction to a previous statement.
- C1. 参加工作 (参加工作) "participate in work," "work"

Talking About Sports (cont.)



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the Practice Essentials volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

535 假 vacation, leave

false; if

Radical is \bigwedge rén "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 rénzìpáng "side made up of the character 人." Phonetic is 叚 jià.

if... [PT]

假 jià vacation, leave [N] 假日 jiàrì holiday, day off [N] 放假 fàngjià take a vacation [vo] 请假(請假) qĭngjià request leave [vo] 假如 jiărú if [MA] 假如…的话

jiărú...-de huà

(假如…的話)

536 春 chūn spring

Radical is \square ri "sun," which is a pictograph of a squared-off sun with a sunspot in it (132).

春假 chūnjià spring vacation [N] 春天 chūntiān spring [TW]

●春节 (春節) Chūnjié "Spring Festival," Chinese New Year [Tw]

537 整

zhěng exact (of clock times)

Radical is $\not \Sigma$ **pū** "tap" or "strike," which at the right side of a character is written $\not \Sigma$. Phonetic is $\not \sqsubseteq$ **zhèng** "just" (276).

整 **zhěng** exact, sharp (of clock times) [BF]

六点整 (六點整) liùdiǎn zhěng six o'clock sharp

调整 (調整) tiáozhěng adjust [v]

538 育 (育) yù education

Radical is 肉 ròu "meat" (338).

教育(教育) jiàoyù education [N]

体育 (體育) tǐyù physical education [N]

体育馆 (體育館) **tǐyùguǎn** gymnasium [PW]

Note that the difference between the official simplified form and the official traditional form of this character does not show up in all fonts; in some fonts, they both look the same.

shè society; organized body

Radical is $\overrightarrow{\pi}$ shì "omen," which at the side of a character is written $\overset{?}{\land}$. The other component is $\overset{!}{\perp}$ tǔ (343).

社会 (社會) shèhuì society [N] 社会学 (社會學) shèhuìxué sociology [N] ●社会主义 (社會主義) shèhuì zhǔyì socialism [PH]

●手球社 shǒuqiú shè handball club [N]

●国乐社 (國樂社) Guóyuè shè Chinese music club [N]

●山地服务社 (山地服務社) shāndì fúwù shè mountain service club [N]

540 **才**(專 **)** tuán group; organization

Radical is □ wéi "enclose." This radical is referred to colloquially as 围字框 (圍字框) wéizikuàng "frame made up of the character 围 (圍)." The other component of the simplified character is 才 cái "just" (325). Phonetic of the traditional form is 專 zhuān (315). Distinguish simplified 团 from 因 yīn (181) and 园 (園) yuán (252), and traditional 團 from traditional 專.

社团 (社團) shètuán organization; club [N]
●团 (團) tuán group; organization [N]

●记者团 (記者團) jìzhě tuán reporters group (name of college club) [N]

●团体 (團體) tuántǐ group [N]

New Words in ISC 21-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

对…来说(對…來說) duì...lái shuō as regards..., for..., to... [PT] 加入 jiārù join [V] 难道…吗?(難道…嗎?) nándào...ma? "Don't tell me that...?," "You mean...?" [РТ] 年轻人(年輕人) niángīng rén young person [PH] 起来 (起來) qĭlái get up [RC] 中年 zhōngnián middle age [N] 中年人 zhöngnián rén middle-aged person or people [PH] 老年 lăonián old age [N] 老年人 lăonián rén old person or people [PH] 中老年人 zhōnglăonián rén middle-aged and elderly people [PH] 手球 shŏuqiú handball [N] 原来 (原來) yuánlái actually [MA]

💿 Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、老师,我假如需要请假的话,应该跟谁说?跟老师请假就可以了吗?
- 二、老李刚告诉我大学的体育馆春假也开; 他是学体育的, 他应该知道。
- 三、春天快到了,也快要放春假了;难道春假的时候,你哪儿都不去吗?
- 四、你放心,假如那天是法定假日,公司一定放假,你也就不需要请假了。
- 五、马可虽然是一位相当爱国的美国人,但是他觉得社会主义也有它好的 地方。
- 六、中国的新年也叫"春节",春节的时候,中国人都放三天的假。
- 七、明天是假日,而且听说从后天起,油价又要调整了,难怪今天加油的车特别多。
- 八、对我来说,这道菜调料还不够,我看最好叫他们调整一下,要不然味 道就不对了。
- 九、我的室友大一那年加入了九个社团,有手球社、歌唱队、国乐社、数学社、物理社、化学社、记者团、国际问题研究会还有山地服务社,当然他最后忙得根本没有时间学习!
- 十、"王大海,原来你是学社会学的,同学们都告诉我你的专业是教育!"

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

—,

美国同学:他说跟他一起学的人差不多都是中老年人。难道年轻人都不喜欢打太极吗?

台湾同学: 打太极得四、五点钟就出门, 对年轻人来说太早了, 起不来。

美国同学:原来是这样。

台湾同学: 你刚才说你以前喜欢跑步。我倒是每天早上六点到六点半跑

半个钟头。怎么样?有没有兴趣和我一起跑?

美国同学:好啊!我也好久没跑了。明天我们在哪里见面?

台湾同学: 我六点整在体育馆前面等你, 怎么样?

美国同学:好,一言为定!

= $^{\setminus}$

李春生: 你今天什么时候下班?

于津平: 五点, 跟平常一样。

李春生:好,那我五点十分在体育馆的入口等你。你一定要五点整到! 于津平:放心吧,我不会像上次那样让你久等,这次一定会准时到。

 \equiv \langle

妈妈: 女儿, 你怎么最近每天都早上十点才起来?

女儿:妈妈,难道你忘了吗?这星期放假!其实,我们年轻人都很晚才起来。十点起床对年轻人来说已经算很早的了。

四、(在美国加州)

加州人:您好!刚才听您说中国话。您是中国人吧?

湖南人:是的。您的中文说得好流利! How are you? My name is Li. 对不起,我是在湖南小地方受的教育,我这个美国话讲不好!

加州人:原来是这样。不过,其实您说得不错!

湖南人:哪里。对了,我爸爸现在也跟我们住在一块儿。他已经七十多岁了。您知不知道,这儿有没有什么社会团体,老年人也能加入?

加州人:我想一定有,不过我也不太清楚。我帮您打听打听,明天再告诉您,行吗?

湖南人:不急,不急。这是我的电话。先谢谢您!

加州人: 不客气。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我记得有一次放假,跟爸爸妈妈一起参加了一个团体,大家一起坐船去日本。我那时候还是一个孩子,才七岁。可是团里大部分人都是一些中老年人。他们每天七点整就起来吃早饭,中午吃了饭一定要休息一、两个钟头。他们讲的话也非常没意思。我一个礼拜后差一点受不了,不过正好我们也要回家了。

二、台湾

台湾可以说是有两个社会:一个是台北市,另一个是台湾的中南部。在台北市,大多数人讲国语,而且觉得台湾是中国的一部分。可是在中南部,多数人在家里讲台语或客家话,那儿的文化和社会习惯也跟台北不太一样。对很多住在台湾中南部的人来说,中国根本是外国,所以假如有人问他们"你觉得自己是台湾人还是中国人?",他们大概会说自己是台湾人,不是中国人。

三、家庭教育

在中国,孩子一定要听父母的话,听话的孩子就是好孩子。最近有一个中国教育专家出了一本新书,说中国和美国的家庭教育有很大的差别。她说在美国,孩子听话或者不听话不是最要紧的,最要紧的是孩子有没有能力,比方说,孩子能不能找到一个工资比较高的工作,能不能为社会多做一点有用的事。不知道你们同意不同意这位教育专家的看法。



"Vehicles Not From This Community Please Do Not Enter" (sign in Taipei)

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+兀 九 七 六 $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$ 明 山化球我 紫 馬 你 老 中中 春 他 放 說 的 王 間地學社 調 天 假 放 時 天 學 李 ? 的 他 我 或 或 覺 口 師 大 訴 們 是 雖 體 剛 學 室 來 整 人 得 1 候快 跟 服社 的 , 海 歌 我 習 友 調 說 了 假 社然 你 到 告 都 育 老 務 新 我 唱 你 大 整 \Box 放 會 是 也 假 你 了 的 訴 師 , 社 記 年 假 原 隊 的 這 難 主 就 如 哪 我 請 十, 如 者 來 位 專 那 道 天 義 那 假 F 怪而 不 兒 也 他 大 當 需 專 或 你 業 年 菜 今 且 的 也 相 需 都 快 應 學 , 天 就 然 要 樂 是 是 加 要 天 聽 調 假 要 是 不 要 該 有 當 的 回 或 請 他 社 學 教 料 法 以 不 加說 它 愛 請 去放 知 體 際 節 最 假 社 育 然 還 油從 好 或 假 定 嗎 春 道 育 了 後 問 的 味不 的後 的 的 假 ? 假 館 嗎 了 0 , 題 學 忙 學 話 個 \Box 春 道 夠 車天 地 美 春 得研社 的 赤士 就 特起 假 方 或 節 根 究 應 專 不我 別 公 難 也 人 物 的 本 會 該 多油 開 同 司 對 看 道 理 時 學 沒 還 跟 最 但 ; 有 0 價 春 了 社 候 有 好 又 定 假 他 誰

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美 台 美 台 美 台 美 或 灣 或 灣 或 灣 或 同 同 同 學 學 學 學 學 學 說就打 哪 跑 和麼半天歡 好 前我 好 你 原 他 太 出 裡 喜 面 我樣跑早跑 太 差 六 了 出川 來 說 早 門 等 見 極 歡 是 點 不跟 0 * 上 步 7 難 了 打 你 面 起 得 言 這 明 整 我 有個六 說 多 他 對 道 太 跑 樣 兀 天 沒鐘點我你 在 也 都 怎 起年 年 極 定 我 好 有頭到 倒以 體 是起 麼 輕 五 車徑 不 嗎 久 0 六 是前 中學 育 點 來 ? 館 在沒 趣怎點每喜 來鐘 都老的

 \equiv

於 李 於 李 津 春 津 春 生 平 生 : : 放 到 好 \overline{A} 你 ļ 1 點 今 , 夫 吧 那 , 跟 1+ 我 平 麼 我 \overline{T} 常 時 不 點 會 候 樣 下

等

你

0

你

定

要

 \overline{D}

點

整

時

到

0

班

?

像 分 上 在 次 體 那 育 樣 館 讓 的 你 入 久

等 , 這 次 定 會 淮

媽 女 兒 媽 女 媽 媽 兒 難 你 怎 道 你 麼 忘 最 了 近 嗎 每 ? 天 都 這 早 星 期 上 放 點 假 オ 起 其 雷 來 我 們 年

兀 在 美 或 加 州

才

起

來

+

點

起

床

對

年

輕

人

來

說

己

經

算

很

早

的

5

輕

都

很

晚

加 州 人 您 好 1 剛 T 聽 您 說 中 或 話 您 是 中 或 人 吧

南 人 對 是 不 的 起 0 我 您 的 是 中 在 文 湖 說 南 得 /]\ 好 地 流 方受 利 ļ 的 How are 教 育 , 我 you ? My 這 個 美國 話 name 講 不 S 好

州 人 . 原 來 是 這 樣 0 不 過 其 實 您 說 得 不 錯 !

湖

南

加

湖

能多 哪 加歲 裡 入 5 ? 0 對 您 7 知 , 不我 知 爸 道 爸 現 這 在 兒 七 有 跟 沒 我 有 們 甚 住 麼 在 址 會 塊 專 兒 0 他 , 老 己 年經 人七 也十

加 州 人 告 我 訴 想 您 定 行 有 嗎 ? 不 過 我 也 不 太 清 楚 0 我 幫 您 打 聽 打 聽 明 天 再

湖 加 小 南 人 人 不 不 急 , 不 急 0 這 是 我 的 電 話 0 先 謝 謝 您 I

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

我受 一也鐘定飯七老部七還去體起假我 們不個非頭要 點年分 歲 是 H 記 中整 也 了禮常 0 休 0 本 大 跟 得 加 拜沒他息午就 都可個 0 家 爸 有 不後意 們 吃起他是是孩 我 爸 家 一專 過差思講 了來們 子 那 起 1 5 次 的兩 飯吃每些裡 時 坐個媽 IF , 好點我話個一早天中大才候船團



Sign in Taipei

緊

這點比

Ξ 家 資力要在美 話在 庭 教的中 美國 教 位有較比的國 的 育 孩 國 專 子 , 家

教用高方 的事。一 育的的說最孩庭 家就孩 子 教聽 育 教 出 要 翠 前話有 的不, 孩 定 看知能能 或很本 是 法道不不 者大 你能能孩 不的 們為找子聽差 近 母

同社到有話別說有的 會一沒不。中一話

不多個有是她國個 同做工能最說和中聽

人國問說一兒多灣北北台 樣的數是市市 人他 不?們中 文人中 是一一國對中,但相相 化在國大另 和家的多一 中 你根很 國 他 覺得 是 是 外 在 - 數個 社 裏 會講 大 習台分 概 或 台 或 灣 個 慣 語 可語的社 會 是 ,灣 台所中也或 說 自灣以南跟客 而南 在 己人假部台家 中且部 是還如的北話 覺 南 部得在是 台 是 有 人 不 , 灣 中 人 來 太 那

Notes 注解

- ●法定假日fădìng jiàrì "legal holiday" [PH] A4.
- A9. Distinguish the different tones and meanings of 加入 jiārù in this sentence and of 假如 jiǎrú in A1.
- B1. ● 见面 (見面) jiànmiàn "meet face to face," "meet," "see each other" [vo]
- 像上次那样 (像上次那樣) lit. "resembling last time that way," or in idiomatic English "like last time"
- ●准时 (準時) zhǔnshí "be on time," "punctual" [sv] B2b.
- B4a. ●受教育 shòu jiàoyù "receive an education," "be educated" [РН]
- 讲不好 (講不好) "can't speak (it) well"
- ◆中午 zhōngwǔ "noon, at noon" [TW] C1a.
- ◆休息 xiūxi "rest" [v] C1b.
- ◆礼拜 (禮拜) lǐbài "week" [N]
- ◆家庭 jiāting "family" or "home" [N]. The phrase 家庭教育 means "home education" or "family education."
- ●听话 (聽話) tīnghuà "be obedient" [vo]. This literally means "listen to words." Of course, in English also we sometimes say that a naughty child "just won't listen."
- ●出 chū "make something come out," "come out with" [v]. The phrase 出了一本新书 (出了一本新 書) means "came out with a new book."
- C3d. ◆工资 (工資) gōngzī "wages," "pay" [N]
- 为社会多做一点有用的事 (為社會多做一點有用的事) "do more useful things for society"
- C3f. ● 同意 tóngyì "agree with," "agree" [v]

Watching a Soccer Game on Television



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

541 # shì generation; world

Radical is 一 yī "one" (1). Distinguish 世 from 五 wǔ (5), 也 yě (52), 老 lǎo (61), and 在 zài (149).

jiè boundary; circles

Radical is \boxplus tián "field." Phonetic is the character 介, which is used in the word 介绍 (介紹) jièshao "introduce."

世界 shìjiè world [N] 世界第一 shìjiè dìyī number one in the world 全世界 quán shìjiè the whole world 世界上 shìjièshang in the world 世界有名 shìjiè yŏumíng be world-famous 世界和平 shìjiè hépíng world peace

543 E mù eye

This character, which is a squared-off pictograph of an eye, is itself a radical. Distinguish 目 from 日 \mathbf{r} i (132), 白 \mathbf{b} ái (328), 真 \mathbf{z} hēn (173), 首 \mathbf{s} hǒu (225), 且 \mathbf{q} iě (410), simplified 县 \mathbf{x} iàn (194), 具 \mathbf{j} ù (304), and 自 \mathbf{z} ì (379).

节目 (節目) jiémù program [N]
●价目表 (價目表) jiàmùbiǎo price list [N]

544 视 (視) shì look at, regard, inspect

Radical is 见 (見) **jiàn** "see" (300). Phonetic is $\vec{\pi}$ **shì** "show," "reveal." Distinguish traditional 視 from traditional 親 **qīn** (516).

电视 (電視) diànshì television [N] 看电视 (看電視) kàn diànshì watch television 电视台(電視台) television station [N] (also written 電視臺 in traditional) diànshìtái 电视节目(電視節目) diànshì jiémù television program [РН] ●电视机 (電視機) diànshìjī television set, TV set [N] ●电视记者(電視記者) diànshì jìzhě television reporter, television journalist [PH]

545 强(強) qiáng strong, powerful; superior

Radical is 弓 gōng "bow" (as in bow and arrow). Phonetic is the character 虫, which is used in the word 虫子 (蟲子) chóngzi "insect," or "worm." The simplified form of this character consists of 12 strokes while the traditional form consists of only 11 strokes! Distinguish 强(強)from 虽(雖)suī (430).

强(強) Qiáng Qiang (also Khang, a Korean surname) [sN] 强(強) qiáng be strong, powerful [sv] 强队(強隊) qiáng duì strong team

546 Zú foot; enough

This character is itself a common radical, as in the characters 跑 pǎo "run" (484), 跟 gēn "follow" (302), and 路 lù "road" (36). At the left-hand side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 足字旁 zúzìpáng "side made up of the character 足." When 足 is written as a radical, its last two strokes are different, with the last stroke angling up to make room for the component on the right. Distinguish 足 from 走 zǒu (70), 是 shì (76), and simplified 虽 suī (430).

足球 zúqiú soccer (lit. "football") [N]

●足球队 (足球隊) zúqiú duì soccer team [PH]

●足球社 zúqiú shè soccer club [PH]

New Words in ISC 21-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

…比… ...bĭ... ...to... (in contrasting scores) [PT] 二比一 èr bĭ yī 2 to 1 对(對) duì oppose, pair off against; versus [v] 法国对日本(法國對日本) Făquo duì Rìběn France vs. Japan 开(開) kāi turn on (a machine, a light, etc.) [v] 难说(難說) nánshuō hard to say [PH] be flat, even; tied (score) [sv] ping 三平 sān píng 3 to 3; 3 tied 晚会(晚會) wănhuì evening party [N] 有名 yŏumíng(r) be famous [sv]

💿 Reading Exercises (Simplified Characters) 简体字

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、这么多有名的足球队,哪个队最强真的很难说。
- 二、听说法国香水是世界上最好的香水,当然价钱也不低。
- 三、我们学校的足球队强是强,可是我想另外那个队可能更强。
- 四、"台北101"从2004年一直到2010年算是全世界最高的楼。
- 五、张大干是中国非常有名的画家,你看,这是他画过的一些画儿的价 目表。
- 六、何先生是电视台的总经理,不过他自己倒是很少看电视,他说好的节目实在太少了。
- 七、黄河从中国的西边流到东边,一共有五千四百六十四公里长,是世界第六长河。
- 八、明天的晚会有很多有名的人要参加, 听说也会有电视记者在场, 你最好穿好一点儿的衣服。
- 九、马友友是一位非常有名的音乐家,他的父母是中国人,不过他是在法国出生,在美国长大的。
- 十、王大海说他最近跟他女朋友一起看了两部很有名的中国电影,一个叫《黄土地》,另一个叫《人到中年》。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

—,

美国人: 现在有什么好节目?

中国人: 有足球, 也有文艺晚会。你想看哪个?

美国人:还是看足球吧。哪个队对哪个队?

中国人: 意大利对加拿大。

美国人: 那快开电视吧!(电视机开了以后)已经开始了!

中国人:还好,刚开始。已经一比〇了。

美国人:好球,太好了!小王,你说谁能赢?

中国人:难说。这两个队都是世界有名的强队,谁运气好,谁就赢。

=

李国强:老关,你在看什么?

关先明:我在看电视。

李国强:我的意思是说,你在看什么节目呢?

关先明:我在看足球。很好笑! 李国强:你为什么说很好笑?

关先明:因为这两个足球队实在太差了。

李国强:现在几比几?

关先明: 我已经看了半个小时了, 还是〇比〇!

 \equiv

张三:小李,你觉得小王、小白他们,谁将来会比较有名?

李四:这实在很难说。小王、小白他们两个人都是很强的音乐家。我看以后两个都会相当有名!

四、

强文星:姐姐,你跟我看一会儿电视,好吗?北京台的节目看起来不错!强文美:不行,我现在没时间看电视。我们学校晚上要开晚会,他们请我

帮忙准备,我十分钟之内就得出门了。

五、

香港人: 什么队对什么队?

天津人:海地对越南。香港人:现在几比几? 天津人:五比二了。

六、

河南人:我们看足球吧!今天是什么队对什么队啊?

湖北人: 今天是南非对比利时。

河南人: 现在几比几?

湖北人: 三平。

七、

上海人:足球,足球,我要看足球!快把电视机打开!

广州人:好。已经打开了。上海人:什么队对什么队?

广州人:马里对多哥。对不起,我说错了,是也门对黑山。

上海人: 也门对黑山啊? 现在几比几?

广州人:现在四比〇。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、大部分的美国小孩,每天都看好几个钟头的电视节目,而且想看什么就看什么,没人管。虽然我也是美国人,但是我们家不是那样。我们家只有一台小小的电视机,放在爸爸妈妈的房间里。爸爸从来不让我跟哥哥看电视,每次我们想看的时候,他就叫我们去做作业。有时候父母不在家,我们就会到他们的房间打开电视机,站在那儿看几分钟。一听见爸爸妈妈开车回来的声音,就马上把电视机关上,跑回自己的房间去学习。我刚上大学的时候,觉得很自由,没人管,要做什么都可以,当然也可以随时看电视。不过后来才知道,根本没有什么好看的节目,还不如不看。这样不但可以节省时间,还能省电!

二、画蛇添足

从前有几个人得到一壶酒。这壶酒只够一个人喝。应该给谁喝呢?有一个人提议说:"我们每个人都在地上画一条蛇吧。谁先画完,这壶酒就给谁喝。"大家都同意这个办法,就开始在地上画。有一个人很快就把蛇画完了。他看别人都还没画完,就很得意地说:"你们实在画得太慢了!你们看,我的蛇已经画完了,我现在再给它添上几只脚吧!"当他正在给蛇画脚的时候,另一个人已经把他的蛇画完了,就把酒壶拿过去,说:"蛇是没有脚的,你现在给它添上了脚,就不是蛇了。所以第一个画完蛇的人应该算是我而不是你!"说完了这句话,他就把酒喝完了。这个故事叫"画蛇添足",一直到现在,如果有人做了什么完全不需要做的事情,中国人可能会说:"你这真是画蛇添足!"

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

七 六 五 兀 1 \pm 不馬 記明 黃 視 何 張 更 我 聽 這 或 的 公 里河 者 天 先 此 樓 強 說 麼 大 過 友 大 北 多 法 海 他友 在的 長 從 他 生 書 Ŧ 學 101" 是是 場晚 或 有 說 , 中 說 是 兒 是 校 名 香 在 是 的中 他 會 或 好 電 的 法位 世 水 的 個 你 的 價 最 有 的 視 或 足 從 是 國非 最 界 節 目 足 沂 很 西 臺 非 球 2004 出常 第 世 球 好 目 表 跟 多 邊 的 常 隊 界 黃 生有 穿 六 實 隊 他 有 強 流 總 有 年 \pm 名 好 上 在 名 長 是 to 到 經 名 地 最 哪 在的 河 太 朋 的 東 理 強 的 點 少 直 美 音 好 個 友 邊 書 5 或 樂 兒 到 的 隊 要 不 家 的 2010 香 最 長家 起 是 调 大 強 水 衣 加 共 你 我 看 他 個 的他 服 真 想 自 了 有 看 年 當 的 的 己 另 五 NA. 算 然 很 父 倒 外 說 干 這 部 是 人 母 價 難 那 到 很 世, 兀 분 분 全 錢 說 是 中有 會 很 # 個 他 白 也 中 年名 六 少 書 界

看

雷

過

的

最

高

+

兀

有

視

或

的

中



隊

可

能

不

低

"Lùyĭng Jiānshì Zhōng Qĭng Wēixiào" (In Midst Of Video Surveillance, Please Smile; sign in Taipei)

中

或

有

足

球

也

有

文

藝

晚

會

你

想

看

哪

個

?

美

或

人

:

現

在

有

甚

麼

好

節

 \exists

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

鱪 李 關 李 關 李 關 李 中 美 中 中 美 美 或 先 或 或 或 先 或 先 或 或 或 或 先 或 明 強 明 強 明 強 明 強 人 人 人 人 : : : : 我 現 因 你 我 老 誰難 好 還 那 還 我 我 意 運 經 關 說 球 好 是 在 為 為 在 的 在 快 大 開 經 幾 這 看 意 看 氣 利 看 開 比 剛 始 看 足 好 思 電 太 對 足 N 麼 你 這 電 **三**半 幾 個 說 球 是 視 好 開 加 球 在 ۸۸ 視 誰 始 吧 足 很 說 看 個 了 拿 吧 個 好 球 很 甚 就 隊 大 0 0 笑? 隊 哪 //\ 好 你 贏 都 己 麼 //\ 時了 實 笑 在 經 個 是 王 電 在 看 隊 ## 視 太差 某 th 柴1 你 界 還是〇比〇 機 麼 說 0 哪 有 開 J 節 誰 個 J 名 了 目 隊 的 能 呢 以 贏 強 後 隊 五 兀 香 李 天 天 香 強 強 張 港 津 兀 津 港 文 文 人 美 星 人 人 都 • 這 來小 : : : 會 都 現 實 $\overline{\mathcal{L}}$ 海 甚 姐 李 備校行 ? 相 是 比 比 在 在 地 麼 姐 晚 北 當 很 較 幾 茶4 隊 很 你 了 業4 我 上我 京 有 強 有 EK 越 難 覺 你 名 要現 臺 的 名 說 得 幾 南 甚 跟 ? 分 開 的 音 在 麼 0 //\ 我 鐘 節 晚沒 樂 隊 // 王 之 會 目 時 家 王 內 看 間 , //\ 會 就 起 他 看 我 小 白 兒 得 們 來 雷 他 出 不 電 請 視 以 他 們 我 錯 視 們 後 0

了

幫我

忙們

好

兩 兩

個個

誰

將

六 七 廣 上 廣 上 上 湖 河 湖 河 州 海 小 海 州 海 北 南 北 南 人 人 人 人 人 人 人 人 : . : : 現 比也 山我 馬 甚 好 球 足 今 甚 現 我 幾 說 麼 胃 0 平 天 在 甲 麼 0 球 在 兀 錯 快 隊 隊 對 己 幾 是 紫 , 看 把 對 LL 了 對 經 足 EL 南 黑 足 多 電 非 甚 0 打 球 幾 球 Ш 甚 哥 是 開 視 紫 麼 肥 麼 , 機 隊 ? 也 隊 了 我 EL 1 對 打 門 要 現 利 今 不 ? 開 對 看 時 天 在 起 幾 黑 足 是

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

間

還 好

能 看

省

甚

麼

的

節

還

不

如

不

看

這

樣

節

省

時

畫 們 蛇說候 現 蛇 該 從 添說 同 上 蛇 畫 意 畫給前 足 完 了 在 實 另 完 添 在 這 再 誰 有 蛇 了 條 足 這 所 給 書 個 喝 幾 中 是 個 以 得 0 蛇 呢個 句 它 辨 或 第 沒 他 吧 話 添 法 ? 太 到 己 看 有 L 慢 有 得 , 口 個 經 別 誰 腳 終 就 他 了 到 在 的把 能 畫 先 售 開 個 就 1 會 他 都 腳 你 始 , 壺 如 的 還 蛇 完 們 酒 你 吧 在 提 酒 果 的 蛇 沒 現 喝 地 ! 看 議 有 書 畫 這 在 \vdash 說這 完 完 你 應 完 壺 給 當 畫 我 了 : 壶 做 這 該 了 就 酒 它 他 的 0 酒 3 真 就 添 IE 蛇 有 我 只 很 什 是 是 就 給 個 上 在 們 己 夠 得 麼 書 我 把 誰 完 故 了 給 經 個 每 意 而 酒 事 腳 蛇 個個 書 全 地 添 壺 不 完 不 畫 說 很 人 足 拿 就 腳 快 都 喝 了 大 : 你 過 畫 不 的 就 家 , 在 0 去 時我你把都地 應 做

大 當 上就站時 視 放 而 是 部 然 大 馬 在 候 在 Ħ 上那 父 爸 我 想 分 也 每 的 把 兒 母 次 們 看 的 口 谷 看 不 甚 美 LY 時 雷 我 媽 家 幾 在 不麼 或 隨 候 視 媽 是 分 家 就 /]\ 時 機 想 的 鐘 那 看 孩 看 關 看 层 得 我 甚 樣 , 的 間 雷 很 0 麼 每 時 裡 視 白 聽 我 就 天 跑 候 0 由 見 會 們沒 都 谷 不 到 爸 家 過 他 谷 沒 自 管 他 只 好 爸 就 從 後 己 媽們 幾 有 0 管 的 來 來 媽的 雖 個 我 不 オ 房 台然 開 鐘 房 不知 間 讓 做 車 間 // 我 頭 但道 去 我 去 打 小也 的 學 做 跟 來開 的 是 雷 麼 以根 習 作 哥 都 的電 電 美 視 本 業 哥 聲 視 視 或 節 口 沒 我 看 0 機 音 有 剛 有 電

Notes 注解

- A1. 强是强 (強是強) "as for being strong, it's strong all right" or, in idiomatic English, "is pretty strong"
- A8. 在场 (在場) zài chẳng "be present, be on the scene" [PH]
- A10. The film 黄土地 (黄土地), known in English as *Yellow Earth*, appeared in 1984. The director was Chen Kaige and the cinematographer was Zhang Yimou. The film 人到中年 is known in English as *At Middle Age*, and appeared in 1982. It was directed by Qiming Wang.
- B1a. ◆文艺 (文藝) "literature and art"
- B1b. ◆文艺晚会 (文藝晚會) "variety show" [PH]. This literally means "literature and art evening party."
- **B1c.** ◆赢 (赢) yíng "win" [v]
- B2. 我的意思是说 (我的意思是說) "What I mean is"
- **B3.** The Chinese names 张三 (張三) and 李四 are used much like English "John Doe" and "Jane Roe" as placeholder names to stand for Chinese people who are unnamed.
- B4. 北京台 (北京臺) "the Beijing (television broadcasting) station"
- B5. ●海地 Hǎidì "Haiti" [PW]
- B6. ●比利时(比利時) Bǐlìshí "Belgium" [PW]
- **B7a.** 马 里 (馬 里) Mǎlǐ "Mali" [PW]
- B7b. ●多哥 Duōgē "Togo" [PW]
- B7c. ⑥世门 (世門) Yĕmén "Yemen" [PW]

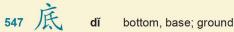
- C2a. ◆蛇 shé "snake" [N]. The measure used with 蛇 is 条 (條), so to say "this snake," one would say 这条蛇 (這條蛇).
- C2b. ◆添 tiān "add" [v]
- C2c. The character 足, as you learned in this lesson, means "foot." The well-known four-character expression 画 蛇添足 (畫蛇添足), which is the title of the story you are about to read, literally means "draw a snake and add feet." It refers to ruining an effect by adding something superfluous.
- C2d. ●得到 dédào "obtain," "get" [RC]
- C2e. ◆壶 (壺) hú "flask," "jar," pot" [M]
- C2f. ◆提议 (提議) tíyì "propose," "suggest" [v]
- C2g. ●得意 déyì "be pleased with oneself," "complacent," or "self-satisfied" [sv]
- **C2h.** ●只 (隻) **zhī** (measure for feet) [M]. The phrase 给它添上几只脚 (給它添上幾隻腳) means "add several feet for it."
- C2i. ◆脚(腳) jiǎo "foot" [N]
- C2j. ●当…的时候 (當…的時候) dāng...-de shíhou "when" or "while" [PT]

An Excursion to the Great Wall



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.



Radical is 广 yǎn "eaves." This radical is referred to colloquially as 广字头 (廣字頭) guǎngzìtóu "top made up of the character 广." Phonetic is 氐 dī. Distinguish 底 from 低 dī (268) and 纸 (紙) zhǐ (324).

到底	dàodĭ(r)	after all, really [MA]
底下	dĭxia	underneath [PW]
桌子底下	zhuōzi dĭxia	underneath the table
●年底	niándĭ	end of the year [TW]
●月底	yuèdĭ	end of the month [TW]

548 建 jiàn establish, build

Radical is $\underbrace{ }$ yǐn "go," which should be distinguished from the completely different radical $\underbrace{ }$ chuò, which also happens to mean "go." The whole character $\underbrace{ }$ serves as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in the character $\underbrace{ }$ the word $\underbrace{ }$ jiànkāng "be healthy."

建	jiàn	build [v]
●建成	jiànchéng	build so that something is completed, build, construct [RC]

549 xiū build, repair; study, take (a course)

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written 1 when occurring at the left side of a character. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character 人." Phonetic is 攸 **yōu** "distant." Distinguish 修 from traditional 條 **tiáo** (240).

修	xiū	build, repair; study, take (courses) [v]
修起来 (修起來)	xiūqilai	in the building of something
主修	zhŭxiū	major in [v]; major [N]
●修建	xiūjiàn	build, construct [v]

St.

550 kào depend on, lean on

Radical is 非 fēi "not" (385). Phonetic is 告 gào "tell" (441). Distinguish 靠 from 告, 非, and 排 pái (524).

菲	као	depend on [v]	
●可靠	kĕkào	be reliable, dependable [sv]	

551 战(戦) zhàn battle, war

Radical is 文 **gē** "spear." Phonetic of the simplified character is 占 **zhàn** "occupy" (439) while the phonetic of the traditional character is 單 **dān** "single" (388). Distinguish simplified 战 from simplified 占, and traditional 戰 from traditional 單.

战国时代 (戰國時代) Zhànguó Shídài Warring States Period [Tw]
●第一次世界大战 (第一次世界大戰) Dì'yīcì Shìjiè Dàzhàn World War I [Tw]●第二次世界大战 (第二次世界大戰) Dì'èrcì Shìjiè Dàzhàn World War II [Tw]

552 争(爭) **zhēng** compete; fight

Radical of the simplified form is 刀 **dāo** "knife," which appears in slightly altered fashion on top of the character. Radical of the traditional form is 爪 **zhuǎ** "claw," which also appears in altered fashion on top of the character. The character 争 (爭) can itself serve as a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in the character 静 (靜), which is used in the word 安静 (安静) **ānjìng** "be quiet."

战争 (戰爭) zhànzhēng war [N] 战争片 (戰爭片) zhànzhēngpiàn war film [N]

New Words in ISC 21-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

可不是	kĕ bú shì	"that's for sure" [IE]
可真够不容易的 (可真夠不容易的)	kě zhēn gòu bù róngyide	really quite hard
够…的(夠…的)	gòude	quite, rather [PT]
公里	gōnglĭ	kilometer [M]

人工 réngōng human labor [N] 时代 (時代) shídài period [N] 算上 suànshang include; count [RC]

算得上 suàndeshang can be regarded as [RC]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、中国的万里长城是战国时代修建的。
- 二、中国人常说:"在家靠父母,出门靠朋友。"
- 三、今天天气很热,牛和马都在树底下吃草。
- 四、桌子底下到底是什么东西啊?好像是什么小动物的样子!
- 五、我们生活在这个时代,特别需要世界和平,战争对谁都不好。
- 六、希望我今年年底之前能修完人类学专业的四十五个学分。
- 七、听说最近在中国,越来越多的女人觉得爱情不可靠,房子比男人更可靠。
- 八、那部电影是战争片,是关于第二次世界大战的时候美国和日本之间 的战争。
- 九、现在中国哪儿都在建新房子,可是因为人口太多,可能十年以内房子还是不够住。
- 十、那天王大海问我:"什么样的朋友才算得上是一生的朋友呢?"

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国人:长城到底有多长?

中国人:好像有六干多公里长。 美国人:长城是什么时候建的?

中国人:大概是在两千多年前,战国时代就开始建了。不过这里的这一部分是明朝的时候修的。

美国人:那个时候修起来可真够不容易的。

中国人: 可不是! 全得靠人工, 死了不知道有多少人。

_ \

张建树: 小王, 我刚看了一部新电影, 战争片, 是关于第二次世界大战的。 战争实在太可怕了!

王建中:对啊。我最近看了一本书,是关于第一次世界大战的,也是够可怕的。

张建树:世界各国人民都要和平,谁都不要战争。

王建中: 可不是。

张建树: 所以大家都应该学习外国的语言和文化!

王建中:一点儿也不错。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、从前的楼和房子都是靠人工修建的。虽然建起来很慢,但是建成了以后都是很可靠的好房子,很多年都不会坏。现在随便要在哪儿建房子,只要几个月就建好了。现在的新房子好看是好看,可是不一定比老房子好。因为房子应该要慢慢儿地建,几个月建好的房子常常这里坏,那里坏,你可能还得花很多钱去修。虽然很多人喜欢买新房子,可是以后我买房子还是比较愿意买老一点儿的房子。所以很多人说:"鞋子是新的好,房子跟朋友是老的好!"
- 二、中国大陆东西有差不多五千两百公里长,南北有差不多五千五百公里长。中国的海岸线有一万八千多公里。海南东西有一百六十九公里长,南北有一百五十五公里长。海南的海岸线有一千五百多公里。台湾东西有一百四十四公里长,南北有三百九十四公里长。台湾的海岸线也有一千五百多公里。

三、三字驴

三国时代有一个大将名叫孙权。他手下有一个人叫诸葛子瑜。诸葛子瑜是一个非常能干的人,可是长得不大好看,因为他的脸太长,看起来像一只驴子。

有一天孙权请了很多朋友来喝酒。诸葛子瑜也去了,还带了他年纪不到十岁的儿子。大家都知道那个孩子特别聪明,也很会说话。孙权看见诸葛子瑜的儿子也来了,就想跟他开个玩笑。

孙权叫他的用人找来一只驴子,他在驴子的头上贴了一条白纸,纸上写了四个字。孙权跟他的朋友喝酒喝到最高兴的时候,就让那只驴子出来,让它走来走去。喝酒的人看见纸上写的是"诸葛子瑜"四个字,都笑了起来。

可是只有那个孩子不笑。他想了一想,就站起来,走到那只驴子前面,在那四个字下面又加了三个字。然后他笑着回到原来的座位坐下。大家一看,都觉得这个孩子实在太聪明了。孙权一句话也没说,就把驴子送给了诸葛子瑜。原来那个孩子在他父亲的名字底下加了"的驴子"三个字!

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

或

的

萬

里

長

城

是

戰

或

時

代

修

建

九 七 六 $\overline{\mathbf{L}}$ 兀 是現 之次那 聽 希 我 中 的中 更 世 們 天 覺說 望 天 子 大 在 間 ## 部 專 界 是 吃 或 オ 可 的界 業我 草天 算 王 還為中 電 靠 得 最 和 生 甚 底 朋 今 或 影 的 活 氣 常 得 大 是 人 戰 愛 沂 1 磢 T 友 大 海 不口 哪 爭 是 四年 到 很 上 情 在 在 1 說 0 戰 是 戰 問 兒 不中 年 戰 熱 夠太 這 動 底 : 的 爭 都 我 住多 或 五 底 爭 個 物 是 時 生 之 1+ # : 在 靠 個 對時 的 在 候 建 學 的 越 誰代 麼 和 家 前 樣 美 是 朋 什 能新 房 來 分 能 都 子 東 馬 靠 , 或 子越 友 麼 十房 關 修 不 特 西 都 父 1 和於 呢 樣 年子 比 多 1 完 好 別 在 的 以 \Box 第 男的 需 樹 , 人 0 , 朋 內可 本 人女 類 要 好 出 底

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

誰

都

不

的

語

言

是

,

夠是

可關

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

 \mp 張 王 張 \pm 張 中 美 中 美 中 美 或 或 或 建 建 建 建 建 建 或 或 或 中 樹 中 人 樹 中 樹 人 人 人 人 : 怕於對 戰 分就大 和所 要 爭 口 # //\ 口 那 長 好 長 文以 戰 的第啊 爭 界 有 是開 點 不 概 城 Ŧ 不 個 像 城 多 化 爭 實 明始是 兒 , 時 是 各 是 是 到 大 有 少 朝建 在 ļ 是 也 候 1+ 次我 底 家 或 我 1 在 太關 的 不 修 麼 干 有 世 最 別 全 了 λλ 都 人 口 時 時 於 起 多 多 錯 得 0 干 民 界近 看 應 怕 第 候 公 來 候 長 不 多 大 看 了 該 都 靠 修 了 里 建 過 年 學 要 戰 了 人 次 的 真 的 長 部 這 和 的 \mathbf{I} 前 世 夠 裡 外 本 新 , 界 不 死 也書 的戰 或 電 容 大

影

戰

的

了

不

知

易

的

這 國

部代

時

你可很

的能不年的

多

都 樓

會 屠

壞 子

在

要

哪

房 然

幾

月

建

好

了

現

在

的 都

新 常

房 很

好

那是好

裡 好

壞 看

該建

兒

地

幾

個

月

建

好

的

子

常

裡

定不

子 現

因便

可是

花比

很老

多 房

0

雖 為

然 房 在 建

人

喜 要

新

口

LY

後

置

房

子

EL

較

願

意

買

老

的我

房 還

子 得

0

所

很 錢

多 去 好

人 修 0 隨

說

鞋 很 子

子 多 應 兒

是

新

的 歡 慢 子 建

好 買 慢

房 房

子 子 建

跟

朋

友 是

是

老

好

從

前

和

都

是

T

修

的

雖

起

來 要

慢 個

但 就

是

建

成

1

後

是

口

的 看

房

C. NARRATIVES 短文

個

是 他

葛

字

,

了

起

來就

隻

讓

它

去

喝

人

看

紙

寫

權

的跟

的

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

 \equiv

字

百

多

公

里

萬 干 或 千五 干 大 五百 陸 多 多 公 東 公 甲 兀 里 0 有 海 差 台 南不 灣 東多 東 西五 西 有 + 有 NA. 百 百 白 六公 兀 甲 九 長 几 公 里南 里 長北 長 有 南 差 南 北不 北 多 有 有 $\overline{\mathbf{h}}$ 百 干 五五 九 + 百 + 五公 兀 里 公 公 里 長 里 長 長 中 0 海 台 南的 的的海 海 岸 海

岸岸線

線線有

也有

口 是 或 長時 得 代

有

個

大

將

名

孫

權

他

丰

F

有

個

諸

葛

子

瑜

諸

葛

子

瑜

是

個

非

常

能

幹

的

大

家

都 知 道有 諸朋孫 友權 那 子喝叫 個天 不 孩孫 大 瑜酒他 子 好 喝的 權 四到用 特 請 看 個 最 別 人 了 聰 高找 很 因 興 來 明 多 為 都的 他 朋 笑時隻 也 的 友 很 候驢 來 臉 會 太 子 喝 說 長 酒 話 讓 他 0 看 那 在 諸 孫 起 驢 葛 權 來 子 驢子 看 像 子的 瑜 見 也 出頭 諸 隻 去 上 來 驢 葛 貼 了 子 , 了 瑜 還 的 帶 走 條 兒子 來白 了 走紙 他 也 年 , 來 紀 紙 5 上 不 酒寫 到 就 的 了 想 兀 歲 跟 個 的 他 字 見 兒 開 子 個 上孫 玩

權 加 7 句 =話個 也, 字 只 沒 0 有 說 然那 後個 就 他 孩 把 笑 子 驢 著 不 子 回笑 送 到 給 原他 了 來 想 諸 的 了 葛 卒 子 位想 瑜 쓰 就 原 0 站 來 大 起 那 家來 個 孩 看 走 子 到 在 都那 他 覺 隻 父 得 親 這 子 的 個前 名 孩面 字 底 實 在 在那 加 兀 太 了 聰 個 明 字 的 下 5 面 孫 又

Notes 注解

- A4. 好像是什么小动物的样子 (好像是什么小動物的樣子) lit. "It seems like it's some kind of little animal."
- A5. 生活在这个时代 (生活在這個時代) "live in this period." Note that 在 here functions as a postverb.
- A10. 一生 yìshēng "whole life long," "life-long" [AT]
- **B1.** ◆明朝 Míngcháo "Ming Dynasty" (1368–1644 CE) [тw]
- C2a. ◆大陆 (大陸) dàlù "continent" or "mainland" [PW]. The very common collocation 中国大陆 (中國大陸) means "mainland China."
- **C2b.** 东西 (東西) **dōng xī** "east and west" or "from east to west." Be careful to distinguish this from the noun 东西 (東西) **dōngxi** "thing."
- C2c. ●海岸线 (海岸線) hǎi'ànxiàn "coastline" [N]
- C3a. ◆三字驴 (三字驢) Sān Zì Lǘ "The Three-Character Donkey." This is the title of a well-known story from 三国志 (三國志) Sān Guó Zhì Records of the Three Kingdoms, a famous Chinese historical text from the third century C.E.
- C3b. ●三国时代 (三國時代) Sān Guó Shídài "Three Kingdoms Period" (220–280 CE) [TW]
- C3c. ●大将 (大將) dàjiàng "high-ranking general" [N]. Note that the character 将 (將) is here pronounced as jiàng, not as jiāng.
- C3d. ◆孙权 (孫權) Sūn Quán (person's name). The surname 孙 (孫) is rather common in Chinese and well worth learning.
- C3e. ①手下 shǒuxià "under someone's command," "under someone's leadership" [N+L]
- C3f. ◆诸葛子瑜 (諸葛子瑜) Zhūgě Zǐyú (person's name). The surname 诸葛 (諸葛) is one of the few two-syllable surnames in Chinese. Another fairly common two-syllable surname written with characters you have already learned is 司马 (司馬).
- **C3g.** ●能干(能幹) **nénggàn** "be capable," "able," or "competent" [sv]. Note that simplified干 is here pronounced **gàn**, not **gān**.
- C3h. ◆脸 (臉) liǎn "face" [N]
- C3j. ◆驴子 (驢子) lúzi "donkey" [N]. To say "one donkey," you say 一只驴子 (一隻驢子).
- C3k. ◆聪明 (聰明) cōngming "be smart," "clever" [sv]
- C3I. ◆跟…开个玩笑 (跟…開個玩笑) gēn...kāi ge wánxiào "play a joke on" [PT]
- C3m. <a>●用人 yòngren "servant" [N]
- C3n. ◆贴 (貼) tiē "paste" or "stick" [v]
- C3o. 一条白纸 (一條白紙) "a strip of white paper"
- C3p. ◆座位 zuòwèi "seat" [N]



Street Sign in Taipei

Emergencies

COMMUNICATIVE OBJECTIVES

Once you've mastered this unit, you'll be able to use Chinese to read and write about:

- 1. Becoming ill, going to see the doctor, staying in the hospital, etc.
- 2. Explaining to a passerby or the police that your purse or wallet has been stolen.
- 3. Going to the police, security guard station, or lost or found to retrieve a missing item.
- 4. Dealing with a vehicular accident: Anyone hurt? Whose fault? Should you call the police or try to negotiate a settlement privately on the spot? etc.
- 5. Various passages on the brain drain, the history of Chinese immigration to the U.S., and famous stories from Chinese culture.
- 6. Several Chinese jokes.



Illnesses



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

医医型 yī medical doctor; heal

Radical of the simplified form is $\sqsubseteq xi$ "box." Radical of the traditional form is $\sqsubseteq yŏu$ "wine vessel." Note that wine was an important ingredient of traditional Chinese medicines. Distinguish simplified \sqsubseteq from $\sqsubseteq yin$ (181), simplified \sqsubseteq (252), and simplified \boxtimes **tuán** (540).

医生(醫生)	yīshēng	medical doctor [N]
西医 (西醫)	Xīyī	Western medicine; doctor of Western medicine [N]
中医 (中醫)	Zhōngyī	traditional Chinese medicine; doctor of traditional Chinese medicine [N]
医学(醫學)	vīxué	medicine, medical science [N]

554 **yuàn** courtyard; institute; branch of government

Radical is 阜 **fù** "mound," which is written \(\Bar{\substack} \) when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as 左耳旁 **zuŏ'ĕrpáng** "side made up of a left ear." Phonetic is 完 **wán** "complete" (296). Distinguish 院 from 除 **chú** (405).

院子	yuànzi	courtyard, yard [N]
医院 (醫院)	yīyuàn	hospital [PW]
●住院	zhùyuàn	be in a hospital, be hospitalized [vo]

电影院 (電影院) diànyǐngyuàn movie theater [PW]

●研究院 yánjiūyuàn research institute; graduate school [PW]

●医学院 (醫學院) yīxuéyuàn medical school [PW]

变(變) **biàn** change, transform

Radical of the simplified form is $\dot{}$ **tóu** "head." Radical of the traditional form is $\dot{}$ **ján** "speech" (336). Distinguish 变 (變) from 爱 (愛) **ài** (422).

变 (變)	biàn	change, be transformed [v]
变成 (變成)	biànchéng	turn into, become [v+pv]
变化 (變化)	biànhuà	change (N)

556 许(許) xǔ permit

Radical is i (言) yán "speech" (336). The colloquial name for this radical is 言字旁 yánzipáng "side made up of the character 言." Phonetic is 午 wǔ "noon." Distinguish 许 (許) from 计 (計) jì (521), 诉 (訴) sù (442), and 信 xìn (504).

许(許)	Xŭ	Xu, Hsu (also Heo or Ho, a Korean surname) [s n]
也许(也許)	уӗхй	perhaps, maybe [MA]

557 zhì aspiration; ideal

Radical is 心 **xīn** "heart" (262). When at the bottom of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 心字底 **xīnzìdǐ** "bottom made up of the character 心." Phonetic is \pm **shì** "scholar." Distinguish 志 from 告 **gào** (441).

同志	tóngzhì	comrade (politically); fellow gay person [N]

yīng hero; England, English

Radical is 艸 cǎo "grass," which as an independent word is written 草 (456). When it occurs as a radical at the top of a character, the "grass" radical is written as ++ and is then known as 草字头 (草字頭) cǎozìtóu "top made up of the character 草." Phonetic is 央 yāng "center."

英	Yīng	Ying [sN]
英国 (英國)	Yīngguo	Britain, England [PW]
英国人(英國人)	Yīngguo rén	Englishman, citizen of England [PH]
英文	Yīngwén	English language [N]
英语 (英語)	Yīngyŭ	English language [N]
英里	yīnglĭ	mile [M]
马英九(馬英九)	Mă Yīngiiŭ	Ma Ying-jeou (President of Taiwan, R.O.C., 2008–.)

New Words in ISC 22-1 Written with Characters You Already Know

不大 bú dà not very much; not very well [A+A] (e.g., 他不大会 写中国字 [他不大會寫中國字] "He can't

write Chinese very well.")

大夫 dàifu doctor [N] (大 is here pronounced dài, not dà.)

看病 kànbìng see a doctor; see a patient [vo]

气温 (氣溫) qìwēn temperature [N] 生病 shēngbìng become sick [vo]

头 (頭) tóu head [N]

用不着 (用不著) yòngbuzháo do not need to [RC]

早晚 zǎowǎn morning and evening; sooner or later [MA]

转成 (轉成) zhuǎnchéng turn into [v+Pv]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、小许、别动、我正在画你的头、快画完了。
- 二、那家医院有中医也有西医,看病非常方便。
- 三、先生在屋子里修家具,太太在院子里种花儿。
- 四、最近几十年,气候变化是全世界一个很严重的问题。
- 五、医院的人都说那位大夫是好人,他是怎么变成坏人的呢?
- 六、你们用不着叫我"许志明同志",叫我"小许"就行了。
- 七、你可不可以帮我一个忙?可不可以教我怎么样把JPG转成PDF?
- 八、那位外国医生好像不大会说 中国话,也许我们应该跟他 说英语。
- 九、世界各国早就使用公里了, 只有美国和英国还在用英 里,实在很难埋解。
- 十、王大海跟他女朋友常去学校 后头那家电影院看电影。



"Cháng Míng Dòngwù Yīyuàn" (sign in Taipei)

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

一、(在北京)

美国留学生: 志文, 我今天觉得身体不太好……

中国大学生: 你是不是生病了?要不要去医院看看?

美国留学生:我想用不着去医院。

中国大学生:现在早晚气温变化很大,一不注意就容易生病。我想你最好

还是去医院看看。(到了医院)同志,我这位朋友病了。她是 美国人,不大会说中文。能不能给她找一位懂英语的大夫?

医院的人 : 您等一下儿。那位医生正忙着呢。

二、(在广州)

高英华夫人: 您上次是什么时候来广州的?

马爱华夫人:七、八年前吧。

高英华夫人:难怪您说什么都不认识了。最近几年广州的变化很大!

马爱华夫人: 是啊, 今天的广州跟我上次来的时候比, 很不一样。

高英华夫人:过几年,广州也许还有更大的变化。

马爱华夫人:有可能。

\equiv 、

许国信:您好!我姓许,叫许国信。"许"是"言午许","国"是"中国"

的"国","信"是"相信"的"信"。您贵姓?

林志英:我姓林,叫林志英。"林"是"双木林","志"是"立志"的"志", "英"是"英国"的"英"。

四、

孩子:妈妈,人真的是从猴子变来的吗?

妈妈:可以这么说。

孩子:(想了一下)怪不得猴子越来越少了。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、许志明同志从英国回来了。他瘦多了,变得我们都认不出来了。当《人民早报》记者问到他这次英国之行的时候,他说:"还好,该办的事情都办完了,不过这次运气不太好,在英国的几个月也过得不太如意。"原来许同志刚去英国的第二个星期就病了,住了两个多星期的医院。他觉

得虽然英国的医生还不错,但是医院里的饭太难吃了。他也说虽然学了很多年的英文,可是英国英文的口音特别难懂,有时候他根本听不懂大家在说什么。他还说英国的天气不大好,常常下雨。最后他告诉记者:"现在回家了,我非常高兴!"

二、有一个小学老师想考考他的学生,看看他们的英语能力到底怎么样。他把"How are you?"三个字写在黑板上,问学生谁能说说这句英文的意思?没有人敢说话,所以他就随便点了一个学生。那个学生想,这几个单字他都认识,只是连在一起是什么意思,他真的不太清楚,只好猜猜看。他说,"这句话的意思是不是'怎么是你'?"老师听后,笑了一下说:"不对,再来一句试试"。他就写了"How old are you?",问另一个学生。那个学生说:"'How old are you?'的意思应该是'怎么老是你?',对不对,老师?"

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

七 六 兀 九 Ŧ. 院王 國 世 變醫 兒先 那 我 那 麼你 許你 重最 1 看大 還界 樣可 們位 們 成院 的近 生 家 許 把不 雷海 在各 應外 就用 壞的 問幾 在 醫 別 用國 院 影跟 該國 JP 題十 屋 行 不 人人 動 英早 著 他 跟醫 G 以 了 的都 子 有 年 里就 他生 轉幫 呢 說 裡 中 女 我 醫 說好 ?那 朋 ,使 成我 我 氣 修 正 英像 實用 也 友 家 PDF 位. 候 在 許 在公 語不 有 常 個 具 大 變 畫 志 西 去 很里 大 忙 夫 化 明 你 學 難了 太 醫 是 是 的 司 理, 太 校 說 口 全 好 看 頭 志 解只 後 中 不 人 世 在 病 界 頭 。有 或 口 院 非 快 子 那 美 話 以 他 常 畫 裡 家 或 是 個 教 我 方 完 電 和 也 我 怎 很 種 便 了 影 英 許 怎 1 丽 嚴 花

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

馬

高

在

廣

高

愛

華

兀

孩

媽

媽

人

真

的

是

從

猴

子

變

來

的

嗎

?

馬 高 馬

許 或 信

林 信 的 信 您叫 貴 姓 ?

志 英 : 我 姓 林 林 志 英 林 是 雙 林 志 是 立 志 的 志 英 是 英 或 的 英

媽 媽 子 口 以 這 藤 說

孩 子 想 了 下 怪 不 得 猴 子 越 來 越 15

中 美 中美 醫 或 或 或 或

在 北 留 大 留 京 學 學 學 學 生 生生 : 現 我 你志

想 在 是 文 早 用 不 晚 不 是我 今

要

去 太

院

看

看

醫好

不

了 英醫 語院 大同 著 生 氣 夫? 志 溫 去 病 天 醫 覺 了 我化 ? 院 得 這 要 身 很 體 不

位大 朋 友 病 不 了 注 意 她 就 是 容 美 易 或 牛 病 我 大 想 會 你 說 最 中 好 文 環 是 能 去 不 醫 能 院 給

看 她

看 找

位到

院 的 人 : 您 懂 等 的 下 兒 那 位 醫 生 正 忙 着 呢

州

英 愛 英 華 華 華 夫 夫 夫 夫 : 七 您 上. 次 年 是 前 什 吧 麼 時 候 來 廣 州 的

人 人 : : 是 難 呵 怪 , 您 **今** 說 其 天 的 麼 廣 都 1 不 跟認 我 識 -了 次 0 來 最 的 近 時 幾 候 年 廣 比 州 很 的 變 不 化 樣 很

大

!

夫 人 過 幾 年 廣 孙 也 許 還 有 更 大 的 變 化

愛 英 華 華 夫 : 有 口 能

您 好 1 □我 姓 許 許 或 信 許 是 言 午 許 或 是 中 或 的 或 信 是 相

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

意另再是不個話板力有 . 太單 上到 怎清字所 底個 該學句麼禁他以問 怎 是生試 是 都他 麽 你只認就 試 好識隨 誰 師 個 便能他 猜 , 學他 只 點說 押 猜 生就 是 了 說 看 師 How 你說寫 連 這 他 他在個 了 句 的 後 學英 學 說 How 起 生 文 笑 的 是 不對 這 其 那 意 句 麼 個 思 話 意 學 他 老 說 的 思 生沒 個 師 意 想有 字的 思他, 寫英 是真這敢在語 不的幾說黑能

醫 多原痘的不 星來次時出志 院 大可裡期 許 運 最家是的的同 氣 飯醫志不他 在英 太院剛太說當 說國 什 去好 難 他英 吃 在 的 覺 或 還 民回 了 記 英 他口 得的 好早來 者 或 還音 雖 第 他 的該 然 說特 也 個 幾 別 辦記他 英 英 現 說 或 難 或 星 個 的者 雖 在 的 懂 月事問 的期 然 口 天 醫 就也情到 學 家 氣有 生 病 過 都他 T 得 不時 還 了 辨 這 大候很 不 不 完 , 我好他 多 錯住太 T 非,根年, 如 T 或 常常本的但兩意不 高常聽英是個。過行認

Notes 注解

- A3. 修 here means "build."
- B3a. ◆ 午 wǔ "noon" [вг]. The phrase 许 (許) 是言午许 (許) means "许 (許) is the 许 (許) that is made up of言 and 午." This is the pattern for describing a character according to its component parts (BSC 4-2: 2). Chinese people often feel the need to clarify which of several similar-sounding characters they mean, especially in the case of personal names. In this case, there is another common surname 徐 Xú with which 许 (許) Xǔ is sometimes confused. Note also that the character 午 is used to write the following spoken words that you have learned previously: 上午 "morning," 中午 "noon," and 下午 "afternoon."
- B3b. ◆★ mù "tree," "wood" [BF]. The pictograph ★ is a common radical.
- B3c. ●立志 lìzhì "resolve to do something" (lit. "establish one's will") [vo]. The phrase 立志的志 means "志 as in the expression 立志." In this pattern, a character is described in terms of a common expression in which it occurs (BSC 4-2: 2).
- B4. ◆猴子 hóuzi "monkey" [N]

- C1a. ◆瘦 shòu "be thin" [sv]
- C1b. 变得我们都认不出来了 (變得我們都認不出來了) "He had changed to the extent that we were not able to recognize him." The compound 认出来 (認出來) means "recognize." It is often used in its negative potential form 认不出来 (認不出來) "can't recognize."
- C1c. The word 当 (當) at the beginning of the third sentence means 当…的时候 (當…的時候) "When...." In this usage, 当 (當) can be pronounced either dāng or dàng.

- C2a. ◆黑板 hēibǎn "blackboard" [N]
- C2b. ●点 (點) diǎn "select," "choose," or "call on" [v]. This meaning is related to that of 点菜 (點菜) "order food," which you learned in ISC 14-1.
- C2c. ●单字 (單字) dānzì "individual vocabulary word" [N]
- C2d. ●连 (連) lián "join," "link" [v]. In this sentence, 连在一起 (連在一起) means "joined together" or "linked together."
- C2e. ◆猜 cāi "guess" [v]. 猜猜看 means "try and guess" (BSC 3-2: 2B).
- C2f. ●老是 lǎoshi "always" [A]
- C2g. There are numerous versions of this story, some involving high-level Chinese political leaders testing each other's English. In that case, the incorrect Chinese translations of the English expressions "How come it's you?" 怎么是你 (怎麼是你) and "How come it's always you?" 怎么老是你 (怎麼老是你) carry a subtext of veiled criticism of the other person, i.e., "How come it's always you (who causes me political problems)?" Many Chinese speakers delight in this type of double entendre.



"Shìmín Dentist"

(牙医[牙醫] yáyī means "dentist"; the symbols to the right of the rare character 旻 are from Taiwan's Chinese Phonetic Alphabet and indicate the pronunciation of the character)

The Pickpocket



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

tōu steal; stealthily, secretly

Radical is \bigwedge **rén** "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is \bigwedge ? \ncong **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character \bigwedge ." The other component is \inf **Yú** (surname).

偷 tōu steal [v] 小偷 xiǎotōu thief [N] •偷看 tōukàn secretly look at, steal a glance at, peek at [v]

560 赶(趕) gǎn rush, hurry, make a dash for

Radical is 走 zǒu "walk" (70). The colloquial name for this radical is 走字旁 zǒuzìpáng "side made up of the character 走." When 走 serves as the radical in another character, its last stroke is lengthened, with the component on the right side placed above the last stroke of 走. Phonetic of the simplified form is 干 gān "shield," while the phonetic of the traditional form is 旱 hàn "drought." Distinguish 赶 (趕) from 走, 起 qǐ (177), 越 yuè (265), and 趣 qù (438).

赶(趕) găn rush, hurry, catch up [v] 赶到(趕到) găndào rush to a place [RC] 尽快赶到 (盡快趕到) jìnkuài găndào rush as quickly as possible to a place 赶快 (趕快) gănkuài quickly [A]

561 读 (讀) dú read, read aloud; study

Radical is \bigwedge **rén** "person" (30), which is written \bigwedge when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is \bigwedge 字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character \bigwedge ." The other component is 卖 (賣) **mài** (254). Distinguish 读 (讀) from 卖 (賣).

读(讀) dú read, read aloud; study [v]
读书 (讀書) dúshū study [vo]
①读者 (讀者) dúzhě reader [N]
②读研究生 (讀研究生) dú yánjiūshēng study as a graduate student [PH]

562 护(護) hù protect, guard

护照 (護照) hùzhào passport [N] 保护 (保護) bǎohù protect [V]

563 pí skin; leather

This character is itself both a radical and a phonetic. It serves as a phonetic in numerous other characters, e.g., in 被 **bèl** (passive marker) (564) and 破 **pò** "break" (572), both of which are taught in this unit.

皮包píbāopurse [N]皮带 (皮帶)pídàibelt [N]皮鞋píxiéleather shoes [N]皮鞋厂 (皮鞋廠)píxié chăngleather shoe factory [PH]

564 夜 bèi quilt; by (indicates passive)

被 bèi (indicates passive) [cv]
被打了 bèi dǎle was hit
被偷了 bèi tōule was stolen
被她拿走了 bèi tā názŏule was taken away by her
●被子 bèizi quilt [N]

New Words in ISC 22-2 Written with Characters You Already Know

非…不可 fēi...bù kĕ must [PT] 国语中心 (國語中心) Guóyŭ Zhōngxīn Mandarin Training Center [PW] 回来 (回來) -huílai come back [RE] 找回来(找回來) zhăohuílai find and get back [RC] 回去 -huiqu go back [RE] 跑回去 păohuíqu run back [RC] 急 be worried, anxious [sv] įί 那些 nèixiē those [SP + M] 跑到 păodào run to [V+PV] 钱句(錢句) qiánbāo wallet [N] 师大(師大) Shīdà National Taiwan Normal University [PW] 怎么回事?(怎麼回事?) Zěnme huí shì(r)? "What's the matter?" [IE] 证件(證件) zhèngjiàn identification papers, ID [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、我将来要读医,我男朋友决定读人类学。
- 二、我的行李被别人拿走了,我非赶快找回来不可。
- 三、考试的时候,那个同学偷看手机,被老师看见了。
- 四、他新买的皮鞋和皮带都是意大利进口的,好看极了。
- 五、小谢在校时,不用功读书,现在只好在一家皮鞋厂工作。
- 六、我刚才放在桌子上的土司不见了,是不是被你吃了?说实话!
- 七、虽然有人说过"偷来的水果最香",不过最好还是不要偷水果!
- 八、十二点的那班公车快要开了,我们得快一点儿赶到车站,要不然就来不及了。
- 九、清代的时候很多孩子一开始读书,都从《三字经》、《千字文》和《百家姓》读起。
- 十、王大海的护照被偷了,他非找回来不可,要不然怎么回国呢?

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

一、(在台北)

美国留学生:有小偷!有人偷了我的皮包!

行人 :什么?怎么回事?

美国留学生:我是美国人,在师大国语中心读书。我的皮包、护照、各种

证件都被偷了。现在怎么办?那些东西我非找回来不可!

行人 :别急,别急!我一定尽力帮你找。我们先到警察局去报告

警察。

美国留学生: 好吧。

- 、

男生:我的钱包不见了!好像被偷了!

女生:真的吗?是什么时候被偷的?你看见小偷了吗?

男生:我没看见,可是我非找回来不可。里头除了五千多块钱以外,还有

我的护照和别的证件。怎么办?

女生: 你先别急, 让我帮你想个办法……

 \equiv ,

小许: 你下班以后怎么不赶快回家? 在这儿等什么呢?

老张:我非得在这里等一会儿不可。你不知道,我和我爱人说好了,下班

后谁先到家谁做饭。

小许:怪不得你爱人也在前面等着呢!

老张:什么?!

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我爱说英文

我有个男同学,他的女朋友叫李文英。他有一次送了她一本英文书,前面写了他的名字和日期,还加了一句"我爱说英文"。请注意,"我爱说英文"这句话从左往右读也通,从右往左读也通。你们想这位男同学大概希望他的女朋友怎么读这个句子?为什么?

二、笨孩子

在北京城外头住着一个白老头儿。他的太太早死了。他有一个儿子, 叫白二。这时候白二也有二十多岁了。白二的朋友给他介绍了一位张小

姐做他的太太。不到一年她就生了一个男孩子,他们叫他"小三儿"。 小三儿从小就不爱读书,到了十几岁,认识的字也不多。他不大会讲话,也不大会做事,大家都说小三儿是个笨孩子。

有一天,白老头儿给了小三儿两块钱和两个碗,对他说:"这一块钱买酒,这一块钱买糖。快去,我等着喝呢。"小三儿说:"我这就去!"他拿着钱走了。没有多大工夫,就见小三儿跑回来了,很急的样子对白老头儿说:"忘了问您,哪个碗买酒用,哪个碗买糖用?"白老头儿很不高兴地说:"你真是个笨孩子!哪个碗不都一样吗?"小三儿听了这句话,又走了。

过了一会儿小三儿又回来了,对白老头儿说:"我忘了哪块钱是买酒的,哪块钱是买糖的?"白老头儿听见这句话很生气,就打小三儿,小三儿被他打得大哭。

正在这个时候,白二从饭馆儿回家来了。一进门儿就看见他父亲打他的孩子小三儿。白二一句话也没说,就用手打他自己的头。白老头儿觉得很奇怪,就问他:"你这是怎么回事?"白二说:"你不是打我的儿子吗?现在我也打你的儿子!"

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+ 九 七 六 \mathcal{T} 兀 最 雖 要王 字清 點十 被我 家小 好他 看考 不 我 我 不大 兒二 皮謝 可的 經代 好然 你剛 看 新 見試 然海 > 的 趕點 還有 吃才 鞋在 了的 行 極買 來 怎的 時 到的 了放 李 要 是人 廠校 了的 時 麼護 千 候 車那 不說 ? 在 工時 皮 候 被 讀 字很 要過 說桌 作, 別 回照 站班 醫 鞋 文多 偷 一 實 子 或 , 公 不 那 人 , 被 和 》 孩 呢偷 要車 水偷 話上 用 拿 我 個 皮 和子 不快 走 男 果來 ! 的 功 百 帶 T 然要 壆 土 讀 了 用用 白勺 都 百開 就開 古 友 書 偷 他 JK 是 家始 我 決 來了 不 看 果 非 意 姓 讀 現 不 手 非 定 見 找 最 大 書 及 我 在 機 趕 讀 了 口 香 利 了 們 快 只 讀都 來 進 起從 得 是 找 類 好 被 不 快 不 不 在 老 口 壆 可 的 猧 是 師 來

美

或

留

學

生

是

美

或

包我

照

各

種 在

證師

件大

都國

被語

偷中

讀

了 1/1

現 書

在

怎 我

麼皮

美

或

留

學

生

:

有

1

偷

!

有

人

偷

T

我

的

皮

包

!

甚

麼

?

怎

麼

口

事

在

台

北

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

老

張

小

許

你

K

班

以

後

怎

麼

不

趕

快

口

家

在

這

兒

等

什

麼

呢

和

我

女

生

你

先

別

急

讓

我

幫

你

想

個

辨

法

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

女

男

男

美 或 留 學

生 :

好

吧

辨 ? 急 那護 , 別 些 東 急 西 ! 我 我 非

到別 找 定 口 盡 來 力 不 幫 口 你 找

我

們

先

警 察 局 去 報 告 警

生 生 生 我 多 真 我 塊沒 的 的 嗎 錢 看 錢 以 包 見 外 是 不 什 見 口 還 麼 T 是 有 時 ! 我 我 好 候 非 的 被 像 找 護 偷 被 口 照 的 偷 來 和 T 不 別 你 口 的 看 證 見 1 頭

偷

了

嗎

?

除

了

Ŧ.

千

麼

辨

愛 我 人非 說 得 好 在 了 這 裏 下 等 班 後 會 誰 兒 先 不 到 口 家 誰 做 不 飯 知 道 我

許 怪 不 得 你 愛 人 也 在 前 面 等 著 呢

老

張

甚

麼

?

1

"High Voltage, Do Not Approach" (sign in Beijing)

說頭父

親見

這

一白打正

你老他在

是兒孩個

我得小候

怪

問

就二

他句兒

也家

你没來

這 說

怎 就

麼用

白己

二的他

回手門

事打兒

他就

白 看

見

是

話回

覺子時

奇兒白

白從

飯

館

了

進

不頭的

打

的很

兒

子

嗎

現

在

我

也

打

你

的

子

C. NARRATIVES 短文

就錢

打 是

兒的

買過

酒

小哪兒

毯

買

糖

? 了

老

頭

兒

聽

見.

這

句

很

生

氣

話我

塊小

是 兒

的來

白對

白

老

頭

兒

說

:

忘

T

哪

塊

又

口

了

會

11

兒

被

他

打

得

大

哭

不買很這

用的

白對

頭老

?

老

兒

很兒

不說

高

興

你

真

是個

個碗

笨 買

子

!

個

孩 酒

哪哪

碗碗

用

個

地忘

T

問

您

哪

樣

嗎

111

兒

聽

T

這

句

話說

走

都 糖 急 就 塊

樣!買

子

É

頭

去

他

錢

走

沒

有

多

大

工

夫

就

小

兒

的

口

來

錢

塊頭

錢

買

糖

去

我

等

著

喝

呢

1

兒

錢

和

ᄶ

個

碗

举十

是識

個的他

笨字們紹兒

他

介個

兒他

說說

我這

有

酒 天

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

笨 也叫 了子在 意 子 不 他 北 孩 想 多 狺 一位叫 京 我 位 小張 白城 愛 他 說 不兒姐 冒 頭 英 學 做 這 他時 概 的候 這 希 話 太 白 個 兒 句 望 太 從 話 他 也老 11 從 的 不 有 頭 就 左 到 不 往 朋 會 愛 右 友 做 年多他 讀 讀 怎 她歲的 事 書 也 就 了 太 通 讀 生 太 大到 這 白 家 早 T T 從 個 死 都十一 右 說幾個的 往 子 小歲 男 朋 左 孩 友 他 讀 兒認子給有 也

書 我

前個

面男

寫同

了 學

他

字

和朋

H

還

加

T

句

我

說

英

通

期叫

的他

名的

女

友

英

他

有

次

送

她

本

請英

你注文

有

我

愛

說

英

文

Notes 注解

- A1. ●读医 (讀醫) dúyī "study medicine" [vo]. Another way to say this is 学医 (學醫).
- **A5.** The character 时 (時) at the end of a clause is an abbreviated, more formal equivalent of …的时候 (…的時候) "when." Thus, 在校时 (在校時) means, "When he/she was in school…".
- A6. ●说实话 (說實話) shuō shíhuà "speak the truth," "tell the truth" [IE]
- A8. ●班 bān (measure for scheduled runs of a bus, train, or airplane) [M]. 十二点的那班公车 (十二點的那班公車) means "the twelve o'clock bus."

- A9b. 从…读起 (從…讀起) "start studying from" (ISC 11-4: 9A)
- A9c. ●三字经 (三字經) Sān Zì Jīng Three Character Classic [N]
- A9e. The 百家姓 Bǎi Jiā Xìng Book of One Hundred Family Names and the two preceding books were all textbooks widely used in imperial China to teach Chinese children classical Chinese language and culture.
- B1a. ◆警察局 jǐngchájú "police station" [pw]
- B1b. ●报告 (報告) bàogào "report (to)" [V/N]
- B1c. ◆警察 jǐngchá "police," "police officer" [N]
- B3. ●说好 (說好) shuōhǎo "agree" [RC]
- C1a.

 回 期 rìqī/rìqí "date" [N]
- C1b. 从左往右读 (從左往右讀) "read from left to right"
- C1c. 逋 tōng "make sense," "be logical," "be coherent" [sv]
- C2a. ◆笨 bèn "be stupid" [sv]
- C2b. 在北京城外头住着一个白老头儿 (在北京城外頭住著一個白老頭兒) "Outside of Beijing city, there lived an old man with the last name of Bai."
- C2c. ◆介绍 (介紹) jièshao "introduce" [v]. The pattern A给B介绍C (A給B介紹C) is used to convey "A introduces C to B"
- C2d. 不到一年 "before a year was up"
- C2e. ◆碗 wăn "bowl" [N/M]
- C2f. ◆糖 táng "sugar" [N]
- C2g. The 这 (這) in 我这就去 (我這就去) means "immediately" or "right away" (ISC 18-1).
- **C2h.** 没有多大工夫 (沒有多大工夫) "before very long" (lit. "there was not very much time")
- C2i. 哪个碗不是都一样吗?(哪個碗不是都一樣嗎?) "Isn't it all the same which bowl it is?" or, in more idiomatic English, "It makes no difference which bowl it is!"
- C2j. 过了一会儿 (過了一會兒) guòle yìhuǐr "after a while"
- C2k. ◆哭 kū "cry" [v]
- C2I. ●进门儿 (進門兒) jìnménr "enter a door or gate," "come in" [vo]
- C2m. ◆奇怪 qíguài "be strange" [sv]
- **C2n.** 你不是打我的儿子吗?(你不是打我的兒子嗎?) "Aren't you hitting my son?" This is a rhetorical question; the speaker really means, "You are hitting my son!"

A Lost Bag



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

565 P diào fall, drop; lose

Radical is 手 **shǒu** "hand" (305), which at the left side of a character is written as ‡ and is referred to colloquially as 提手 **tíshǒu** "raised hand." Phonetic is 卓 **zhuó** "eminent." Distinguish 掉 from 桌 **zhuō** (373).

掉	diào	fall, drop; lose, misplace [v]
掉	-diào	away [RE]
跑掉	păodiào	run off, run away [RC]
死掉	sĭdiào	die [RC]
忘掉	wàngdiào	forget [RC]
卖掉 (賣掉)	màidiào	sell off [RC]

566 khuŏ fire

This character, which is a pictograph representing fire, is itself a radical. As a radical at the left-hand side of a character, as in 炒 chǎo "stir-fry," it is referred to colloquially as 火字旁 huǒzipáng "side made up of the character 火," and its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. When 火 occurs as a radical at the bottom of a character, it is written $\overset{\dots}{}$ and is referred to colloquially as 四点火

(四點火) **sìdiǎn huǒ** "four dots of fire," e.g., 煮 **zhǔ** "boil." The character 火 can also serve as a phonetic in some characters, e.g., in the simplified character 伙, which is used in the word 伙伴 **huǒbàn** "companion." Distinguish 火 from 人 **rén** (30), 大 **dà** (13), and 太 **tài** (64).

火	huŏ	fire [N]
火车 (火車)	huŏchē	train [N]
●火山	huŏshān	volcano [N]
	huŏshānkŏu	crater of a volcano

567 检(檢) jiǎn examine

Radical is the pictograph 木 mù "tree." This radical is referred to colloquially as 木字旁 mùzìpáng "side made up of the character 木." Note that when 木 is written at the left of a character as a radical, its last stroke is shortened so that it doesn't collide with the component to its right. Phonetic is \oplus (\oplus) qlān.

●体检 (體檢) tǐjiǎn physical examination [N]

chá examine, check
Zhā Zha (a surname)

Radical is the pictograph \uparrow mù "tree," which is at the top of the character. The rest of the character is composed of \exists rì (132) and \lnot yī (1). Distinguish \bullet from \bullet xiāng (39).

●查	Zhā	Zha [sn]
●查	chá	examine, check [v]
●查字	cházì	look up characters [vo]
检查 (檢查)	jiănchá	inspect, examine [v]; inspection [N]
查号台(查號台)	cháhàotái	information, directory assistance [ท]

569 wēi/wéi danger

Radical is \sqcap jié. Distinguish 危 from 色 sè (352) and 包 bāo (332).

危 Wēi/Wéi Wei [sN]

570 险(除) xiǎn danger

Radical is 阜 **fù** "mound," which is written ${\mathbb F}$ when occurring at the left-hand side of a character. This radical is referred to colloquially as 左耳旁 **zuŏ'ĕrpáng** "side made up of a left ear." Phonetic is ${\mathbb G}$ (${\mathfrak g}$) **qiān**. Distinguish ${\mathbb G}$ (${\mathfrak g}$) **from** ${\mathbb G}$ (${\mathfrak g}$) **jiǎn** (567) earlier in this lesson.

●危险 (危險) wēixiǎn/wéixiǎn be dangerous [sv]; danger [ɴ]

New Words in ISC 22-3 Written with Characters You Already Know

错(錯)cuòerror, mistake [N]没错(沒錯)méi cuò"that's right" [IE]国家(國家)guójiācountry [N]

延 (還) huán give back [v] (Note that the character is in this

sense pronounced huán, not hái.)

还给(還給) huángěi give back to [v+pv] 没什么(沒什麼) méi shénme "You're welcome" [IE] 学生证(學生證) xuéshēngzhèng student ID [N]

应该的 (應該的) yīnggāide "something one ought to do," "of course" [IE]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、从上海到南京,你看最好是坐飞机,火车,还是汽车?
- 二、火虽然有用,但也很危险,大人、小孩儿都应该特别小心。
- 三、这个火山很有名,每年有成千上万的人从世界各地来看它。
- 四、他越是想早一点儿把他的房子卖掉,就 起 是 卖 不 掉, 真 着 急!
- 五、今天天气不好,开车太危险了,还是 坐火车吧,又省事又安全。
- 六、那个地方很危险,小偷特别多,你要 随时注意自己的皮包或钱包。
- 七、这个字我不认识,我查过可是查不到,你能不能告诉我是什么意思?
- 八、你运气不错,钱包找回来了!快检查 一下,看里面的东西是不是都还在。
- 九、美国人常说中国是共产主义国家,但 是中国人自己说中国是社会主义国 家。
- 十、王大海小时候学的法语,现在全忘掉了!



Sign in Singapore

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

马南喜: 先生, 我今天早上掉了一个皮包。不知道有没有人看到?

警卫 :你的皮包有多大?什么颜色?

马南喜:白色跟黑色,大概比我这个皮包大一点。上面写着WILLIAMS。里

面除了一千多块钱以外,还有我的学生证跟护照。

警卫 : 你是哪个国家的?叫什么名字?

马南喜:我是美国人,叫Nancy Miles。中文名字叫马南喜。

警卫 :你看,这是不是你的皮包?

马南喜:没错,没错,正是我的!

警卫 :请你检查一下看东西是不是都在?

马南喜:我看看。钱、学生证跟护照都在。真谢谢你!

警卫 :没什么,应该的。以后小心一点!

许先生: 你比较喜欢坐飞机, 火车, 还是汽车?

何小姐:坐火车或是汽车都可以,可是我不喜欢坐飞机。

许先生:为什么?

何小姐:安全检查越来越麻烦。什么都得检查,而且很多东西不准带。

许先生:没错!

何小姐:还有,我总怕飞机会掉下来。每一、两年都有飞机掉下来,每次

都有好多人死掉。

许先生:其实,你不用怕这个。现在的飞机都很安全。我在哪儿读过,坐

飞机比坐汽车还安全!当然坐火车也很安全。

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

一、我是加拿大的华人,在广州出生,十一岁的时候跟着父母来到加拿大。 记得我刚开始学英文的时候,觉得很难。差不多每个字都看不懂,所 以刚查完一个字马上又得查另外一个字。经过了十几年,虽然现在有 时候还有生字得查,但现在,我英文读得、说得就跟加拿大人差不多 一样,而且我很高兴我也没忘掉我的母语中文。我在大学的时候还学 了一点日文,不过因为一直没有机会用,所以我的日文早就"还给"老 师了!

二、人才外流

不少外国留学生在美国读完研究生,拿到学位以后,都不想回国。他们想尽了办法要留在美国工作,因为美国的生活好,而且也比较自由,比方说言论自由—就不是每个国家都有的。所以很多国家都有人才外流的问题,也可以说是人才外"留"。当然,不住在自己的国家,也不应该完全忘掉自己的"根"。所以,如果我们能够把我们的母语传给下一代,是非常好的事情。

● Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+ 七 兀 九 六 $\overline{\mathcal{H}}$ 王 事今 中美 東你 我這 皮那 真 他 看這 小火 從 大 或 或 西運 是個 又天 著越 它個 上 包個 心雖 海 是人 是氣 甚字 或地 安天 急是 海 火 然 11 社常 不不 麼我 錢方 全氣 到 ! 想 有 是 意不 時 會 說 錯 包 很 用 南 不 早 很 候 主中 都 思 京 , 認 危 好 有 學 義國 還 錢 ? 識 險 名 但 點 你 的 在包 或 是 開 也 兒 看 法 家 # 找 我 11 很 重 包 把 最 語 產 查 年 口 偷 太 危 他 好 主 來 過 特 有 危 險 的 是 現 義 口 別 T 險 成 , 房 坐 在 或 是 多 千 大 1 了 子 雅 全 快 家 杳 上 人 機 賣 忘 你 檢 還 萬 不 掉 掉 11 火 佃 到 要 的 杳 是 T 車 隨 孩 是 坐 X 就 中 兒 下 你 時 火 從 越 或 都 能 注 重 冊 環 是 界 人 不 意 吧 應 看 是 賣 裡 各 自 能 自 該 汽 不 告 己 己 面 又 地 特 重 掉 說 的 訴 的 來 別 ? 省

•

你

的生

皮

包

有

多

大

?

甚

麼

顔

色

塊白

錢色

以跟

色

大

比

我

這

個

包

大

點

0

上

面

寫

著

WILLIAMS

裡

面

除

了

千

多

我 概

外黑

還

有

的

學

生

證

跟皮

護

照

字

馬

南

喜

:

先

我

9

天

早

上

掉

了

個

皮

包

不

知

道

有

沒

有

人

看

到

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

許

先

生

不

华用

火怕

車這

也個

安現

全在

的

飛

機

都

很

安

全

我

在

哪

兒

讀

過

坐

飛

機

比

坐

汽

車

還

飛

機

掉

來

每次

都

有

好

多

死

掉

很。

安其

全實

!

當你

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

馬 警 馬 警 馬 警 馬 警 馬 南 衛 南 衛 南 衛 衛 南 南 喜 喜

喜 喜 : : : : 沒 我 你 請 你 錯 你 是 是 看 美 哪 檢 , 查 沒 這 或 個 錯 是 或 人 K 家 不 , 看 正 是 的 Nancy 東 是 ? 你 西 我 的 的 皮 甚 是 Miles 包 麼 不 ! 名 是 字 都 中 在 文 ? 名

警 衛 喜 : 沒 我 什 看 麼 看 應 錢 該 學 的 生 0 以 證 後 跟 小 護 照 都 點 在 ! 真 謝 謝 你

!

何 許 何 許 何 許 先 1 先 1 先 1 生 姐 姐 姐 生 生 : 還 沒 安 為 坐 你 錯 有 全 什 比 火 檢 麼 車 較 我 杏 或 喜 總 越 是 歡 怕 來 汽 44 飛 越 車 飛 機 麻 都 機 會 煩 口 掉 以 火 下 甚 車 , 來 麼 口 都 是 還 每 得 是 我 汽 檢 不 查 喜 車 兩 歡 , 年 坐 而 都 且 飛 有 很 機

多

東

西

不

准

帶

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

然有論因後 不才由美 不 所住外 或 以在流就 П 自的不 或 如己問是 的 果的題 每 事 個 們美 我 家也國 而想 或 可 家 且 能 都 也以 也 了 有 說 比 辨 把 應 法究 較 我 該 自 所 1 外以 由 的 母: 忘 很 多比 語掉 留 方 自 工 。家說 位 下的當都言

就日沒說現個覺著 一文忘得在字得父是 還,掉就有馬很母加 給不我跟時上難來拿 一過的加候又。 到大 老因母拿還得差加的 師為語大有查不拿 了一中人生另多大人 直文差字外每 。不得一個記在 有我多 查個字得 字都我州 機在一 會大樣但。 出圖 看 現經不 用學 開 在過懂 的而 所時且 以候我我 十所 我還很 英 年剛 的學高 文 興 查 讀 文一我 雖 候 早點也

Notes 注解

- A3a. ●成千上万 (成千上萬) chéng-qiān-shàng-wàn "tens of thousands (of)" [EX]
- A3b. 世界各地 "all over the world" (lit. "all places in the whole world")
- A4. 卖不掉 (賣不掉) "can't sell," "can't get rid of something by trying to sell it"

才

外

- A5. ●安全 (安全) ānquán "be safe," "secure" [sv]
- B1. ◆颜色 (顔色) yánsè "color" [N]
- **B2a.** ●安全检查 (安全檢查) **ānquán jiǎnchá** "safety inspection," "security check" [PH]. This is nowadays often abbreviated to 安检 (安檢).
- B2b. ◆麻烦 (麻煩) "be troublesome," "bothersome" [cv]
- C1a. ●跟 gēn "follow" [v]. 跟着 (跟著) means "following."
- C1b. ●经过 (經過) jīngguò "pass through," "go through" [RC]. The phrase 经过了十几年 (經過了十幾年) lit. means "having gone through more than ten years" or, in idiomatic English, "after more than a dozen years."

- C1c. ●母语 (母語) mǔyǔ "mother tongue," "native language" [N]
- C2b. ●外流 wàiliú "flow outward" [v]; "outflow" [N]
- C2c. ●人才外流 réncái wàiliú "brain drain" [PH]
- C2d. ●学位 (學位) xuéwèi "degree" [N]
- C2e. ●想尽办法 (想盡辦法) xiǎngjìn bànfǎ "try every possible way or means" [PH]
- C2f. ●言论自由 (言論自由) yánlùn zìyóu "freedom of speech" [PH]
- C2g. 人才外"留" "people of talent 'stay' abroad". This is a Chinese pun, since 人才外流 "brain drain" sounds exactly the same as 人才外"留"
- C2h. ●根 gēn "root" [N]
- C2i. ●能够 (能夠) nénggòu "can" [AV]
- C2j. ●代 dài "generation" [M]. The common phrase 下一代 means "the next generation."
- C2k. 把我们的母语传给下一代 (把我們的母語傳給下一代) "transmit our mother tongue to the next generation"

危險 有電 未經授權不得內進 DANGER ELECTRICITY

"Danger, (there is) electricity, without authorization (you) may not enter" (sign in Hong Kong)

The Accident



New Characters and Words

Study the six characters below and the common words written with them, paying careful attention to each character's pronunciation, meaning, and structure, as well as similar-looking characters. After you've studied a character, turn to the *Practice Essentials* volume and practice writing it on the practice sheet, making sure to follow the correct stroke order and direction as you pronounce it out loud and think of its meaning.

571 伤(傷) shāng wound, injury; injure, hurt

Radical is 人 **rén** "person" (30), which is written 1 when occurring at the left side of a character so as not to get in the way of the component at the right. The colloquial name for this radical is 人字旁 **rénzìpáng** "side made up of the character 1." Distinguish traditional 傷 from traditional 場 **chăng** (227) and traditional 陽 **yáng** (285).

受伤 (受傷) shòushāng suffer injury, be hurt [vo]

pò break, tear, split

Radical is \overline{G} shí "stone" (420). Phonetic is 皮 pí "skin" (563). If a person is hit by a "stone" \overline{G} , it might "break" 破 the "skin" 皮. Distinguish 破 from 皮 pí (563) and 被 bèi (564).

破 pò break, tear [v]
可打破 dăpò break, smash [RC]砂破坏 (破壞) pòhuài destroy, damage [RC]

573 结(結) jié tie; knot

Radical is 丝 (絲) **sī** "silk." When at the left side of a character, this radical is referred to colloquially as 绞丝旁 (絞絲旁) **jiǎosīpáng** "side made up of twisted silk" and is written as 纟(糹). Phonetic is 吉 **jí** "auspicious." Distinguish 结 (結) from 给 (給) **gĕi** (192).

结果(結果)	jiéguŏ	as a result, in the end [сฦ; result [ɴ]
●结 (結)	jié	knot [N]
⊙打结 (打結)	dăjié	tie a knot [vo]
⊙打中国结 (打中國結)	dă Zhōngguo jié	tie Chinese-style knots [РН]

友(發) fā put forth, issue, distribute

Radical of the simplified form is $\overline{\chi}$ yòu "again" (210), and of the traditional form it is $\overline{\chi}$ bō "legs." Distinguish simplified $\overline{\chi}$ from $\overline{\chi}$ yǒu (172).

发票 (發票) fāpiào receipt, itemized bill [N]
ato the state of the state of
发音 (發音) fāyīn pronunciation [N]
●发明 (發明) fāmíng invent [v]; invention [N]
●发现 (發現) fāxiàn discover [v]; discovery [N]

数(費) fèi spend; expense

Radical is 贝(貝)**bèi** "cowrie shell," which gives an idea of the meaning, since cowrie shells were used as a form of money in ancient China. Phonetic is 弗 **fú** "not." One way to remember this character is by the similarity of the character 弗 to a "reverse dollar sign." Distinguish 费 (費) from 贵 (貴) **guì** (85).

费 (費)	Fèi	Fei [sn]
修车费 (修車費)	xiūchēfèi	cost of repairing a vehicle [N]
水费 (水費)	shuĭfèi	water fee [N]
电费 (電費)	diànfèi	electricity fee [N]
水电费 (水電費)	shuĭdiànfèi	water and electricity fee [N]
破费 (破費)	pòfèi	go to great expense [vo]
●费用(費用)	fèiyòng	expenses, cost, fee [N]
●小费 (小費)	xiăofèi	tip, gratuity [N]
●费城 (費城)	Fèichéng	Philadelphia [PW]

576 hé be in accord with

Radical is \Box kǒu "mouth" (140). When at the bottom of a character, as here, this radical is referred to colloquially as \Box 字底 kǒuzìdǐ "bottom made up of the character \Box ." The whole character is itself a phonetic in other characters, e.g., in 哈 hā (the sound of laughter) or in 给 (給) gĕi (192). Distinguish 合 from 拿 ná (314) and 给 (給) gĕi (192).

合算	hésuàn	be worthwhile; reasonable (in price) [sv]
●合身	héshēn	be well-fitting (of clothes) [sv]
●合作	hézuò	cooperate; cooperation [v/N]

New Words in ISC 22-4 Written with Characters You Already Know

15		
成	chéng	become, turn into [v]
倒	dào	on the contrary, but, and yet [A]
…得了	déle	and that will do [РТ]
定	-dìng	fixed, settled [RE]
说不定(說不定)	shuōbudìng	not be able to say for sure [RC]
算了	suànle	"forget about it" [IE]
怪…的	guàide	quite, rather [PT]
马 (馬)	mă	horse [N]
马路 (馬路)	mălù	road [N]
过马路(過馬路)	guò mălù	cross the road [PH]
修	xiū	repair [v]
修车(修車)	xiūchē	repair a vehicle [vo]
样儿(樣兒)	yàngr	appearance, shape [N]
一路平安	yílù píng'ān	"have a good trip," "bon voyage" (lit. "all along the way, peace") [EX]
自行车(自行車)	zìxíngchē	bicycle [N]

Now practice reading the new characters and words for this lesson in context in sentences, conversations, and narratives. Be sure to refer to the Notes at the end of this lesson, and make use of the accompanying audio disc to hear and practice correct pronunciation, phrasing, and intonation.

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

- 一、虽然车子坏了,老张人倒是没有受伤。
- 二、我们花了那么多钱吃饭,怪不合算的!
- 三、不好意思,又让您破费了,改天我做东!
- 四、要不是她非常用功,考试的结果也不会那么好。
- 五、要是我不来美国,说不定今天已经成为一名医生了。
- 六、刚才发生了什么事,马路上这么多人?我没注意。
- 七、我的衣服破了,我去买一件新的算了,这件就不要了。
- 八、我们买菜的发票不见了,是你拿走了吗?我们还需要。
- 九、我要是住校外,得自己做饭,除了房钱还得加水费、电费,结果时间和 费用加起来,想想是不太合算的,还是住家里得了。
- 十、王大海的自行车放在教室外面,结果被偷了。

B. CONVERSATIONS 对话

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

美国人 :怎么样?怎么样?您受伤了没有?

中国人一:我倒没什么大事。不过,您看,我的衣服破了,还有,我的自行

车成了什么样儿了?刚才要不是我向左转,还说不定有多危险

呢!

美国人 :对不起,对不起,实在对不起!

中国人二:怎么了?发生什么事儿了?

中国人一:他把我撞了!

美国人 :是不是我们叫交通警?

中国人二:要不然这样儿吧。你们私了得了。您给他一点修车费。如果叫

警察的话,得花好多时间,怪不合算的。

中国人一:衣服就算了。您给我一百块钱修车吧。

美国人 : 行,行,行。今天算我们两个运气不好……

__``

费国华:结果你去了哪家饭馆儿吃饭?

牛进明:去了那家新开的"北京楼"。

费国华:我还没去过那家。那儿的菜怎么样?

牛进明:我觉得还行,虽然不是很好,但是比我上次去的地方好多了。

 \equiv .

小石:你的英语发音不错!

老张:哪里。

小石: 你是在哪儿学的?

老张:我因为是在美国上的大学,所以发音大概

还可以。

小石: 难怪这么好,原来你 是在美国上的大学。

四、

老师:"发现"和"发明"有

什么不同?

学生: 我爸爸发现了我妈妈, 后来爸爸和妈妈

发明了我。



Sign in Hong Kong

C. NARRATIVES 短文

Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

- 一、有的中国人读书时,一不小心把"山"读成是"三",或者把"花生"读成"发生"。读书时还是要注意发音,如果发错了音,别人不但听不懂,而且有时会笑话我们的!
- 二、有一个老外说他在中国最喜欢做的事情就是讲价。比方说,一块500元的手表,只要你有时间讲价,说不定100元就可以买到。不但节省了钱, 而且还有机会练习讲中国话!不过,不知道那个卖手表的怎么想。

三、美国华人

因为中国国内的战争,再加上美国加州发现了黄金,所以一八五〇年左右,有两万多华人离开中国的南方,主要是广东省,来到了美国。一八六〇年之后,从中国来的工人大部分在铁路公司工作,建铁路。这种工作是非常危险的,死了不少人。铁路完成后大部分的工人就留在美国了,在美国各地住了下来。在美国,虽然除了原住民以外,其他的人都是从外国来的,但是那时候的人们不喜欢中国人,这不只是因为中国人的语言、文化和衣服和他们的不一样,美国人更怕新来的中国人会拿走他们的工作。一八七〇年以后,事情变得更坏了,有不少中国人被打伤,也有人被打死。

四、称大象

很久以前,有两位老先生在河边看见了一只大象。第一位老先生说:"我看这只大象应该有五千斤重吧。"第二位老先生说:"不止,不止。我看那只大象有一万斤重!不过呢,我们很难知道谁对谁错,因为要称这么大的大象是不可能的。"

正在这时,有一个小孩子走过来,听见了两位老先生的话,就对他们说:"谁说不可能称那只大象?你们想称它吗?我有办法!"两位老先生问他:"你有什么办法?"

小孩子说:"先把大象弄到一只船上去,看看水到船的什么地方,就在船边做一个记号。大象回到河岸上以后,再往船上搬石头。等船沉到做记号的地方就够了。然后再把船里的石头搬上岸来分成几次称一称,不是就知道这只大象的重量了吗?"

两位老先生觉得这个孩子实在太聪明了,就照他的方法去做,结果发现大象有七千五百斤重。你们说这个孩子聪明不聪明?

0

Reading Exercises (Traditional Characters) 繁體字

A. SENTENCES 句子

Read out loud each of the following sentences, which include all the new characters of this lesson. The first time you read a sentence, focus special attention on the characters and words that are new to you, reminding yourself of their pronunciation and meaning. The second time, aim to comprehend the overall meaning of the sentence.

+ 九 七 Ŧi. 几 六 結王 我 我 别[要 要 算 我 我 多 經 我不 雖 合時 了 走 th 們 的 人 成是 做 的們 傷 果大 算間房 了 了 才 不 不 好 嗎 ? 被海 錢 是 買 發 重 的和 衣 為 我 會 是 東意 花 ? 費還 菜 我 思 住 這 服 生 那 她 偷的 不 ! T 子 還 用 得 校 我的 件破 沒 了 名 來 藤 非 壞 那 了 自 們 是加加外 發 就 了 注什 美 好 常 又 麼 T 行 多 住起 TK 還 票 不 意 蘇 生國 用 讓 重 家來費得 需 不 要我 事 了 功 您 錢 老 放 見 去 說 破 張 裡 自 要 了 吃 在 得想電己 買 了 馬 不 考 費 飯 教 了想費做 路 定 試 倒 T 室 是 件 上 的 怪 是 飯 是 夕 天 不結 你 這 結 改 沒 新 不 面 太果除 的 藤 E 果 合 有 天

B. CONVERSATIONS 對話

Read out loud the following conversations, including the name or role of the person speaking. If possible, find a partner or partners and each of you play a role. Then switch roles, so you get practice reading all of the lines.

中 中 美 中 美 中 中 美 美 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 或 人 人 人 人 人 人 要 什 怎 料 兩行 塊衣 的 得 車了 是 不 險向樣有您我 怎 7 ? 錢服 花 費 不 不 把 起 不 呢 左 個 得 麻 兒 倒 了 夢 好 起 轉 我 運 行 修就 是 我 ! ! 沒 T 沒 T 樣 氣 車算 多 我 撞 的我什 有 如 這 ? ? 四四 不 行 時 對 自的 T 果 7 還 樣 亦 您 別[發 怎 好 間 說 0 1 行 不 衣 生 夢 今 皿 交 起 不 車服 警 事 要 他 什 樣 成破 天 給 怪 定 通 察 ? 麼 不 不合 算 我 你 實 有 1 T 的 點 您 事 們 多 是 我 在 們 算 修 兒 危我麼 還 受 百 私 對

兀

學 老 師 不一 古 發 現

生 爸 我 爸爸 和爸 媽 發 媽 現 和 發 T 明 我 發 媽 明 我 媽 有 其 後

來

麼

C. NARRATIVES 短文

1 石

你 的 英 語 發 音 不 錯

!

張 石 : 所我 你 是 發為 在 哪 是 兒 在 學 美 的 或 上 的 大 學

老

1

張

:

哪

裡

國難 以因 上怪 狺 大麼 音 大 好 概 還 原 口 來 以 你 是 在 美

1

石

的

進 明 : 方好我 好 , 譽 但得 是環 比行 我 上雖 次然 去不 的是

4

地很 Read the following narratives, paying special attention to punctuation and overall structure. The first time you

4

進

明

:

去

T

那

家

新

開

的

北

京

樓

費

或

華

:

結

果

你

去

了

哪

家

飯

館

兒

吃

費

或

華

澴

去

调

那

家

0

那

兒

的

菜我

麼沒

怎

樣

有 價 不還 懂 是 要 , 老 且 意 說 有發 時 音

有 間 知 1 道 錢 講 的 0 那 價比個 中 , 個而 而注或國 方 賣且說說外 者 手 還 不 讀 把 錶有定一他 的機 花時 塊在 會 會 中 笑 如 怎 生 麼練元00 話果 或 想習就元最 我 發 讀 講可的喜 們錯 成 中以手歡 了 的 1 國 買 錶 做 ! 音 發 到 話 的 生 只 事 別 ! 0 Ш 不不要情 ___ 過但你就 不讀讀 ,節有是 但書 成 不省時講 聽時是

美 或 華

read a narrative, read it out loud. The second time, read silently and try to gradually increase your reading

少 作 樣 為 但 除 美 死 路 一 開 黃 因 中。,中是了 或 了 公八中金為 國一美國那原 口 六 國 了不 , 🛱 人八國人時住 少工〇的所國 南以國 被七人的候民在人作年 語的以美 打〇更 0 方 言人外國 傷年怕 鐵 後 八的 , 鐵 們 各路 主五戰 以新 , 路從要○爭 文不其地完 也後來 喜他住成 有,的 中 是 年 化 歡的 廣左再 人事中 了後 或 種 和 來東右加 被情國 中 下大 人 I. 衣 都來部 作的 或 上 服 會 人 0 分 工 有美 是 是 和 人來 更 , 在的 巫 從 非 他這 走 美工 大到萬加 外 常 他們不 多州 或 部 或 T 危 們的只 就 分 華發 來 美 險 是 雖 在 有的不 留 人現 的 的 或 不工一因 然在 離了

speed. Always think of the meaning of what you're reading.

四

稱

孩現聰 就石記以在船 問想說聽 的很那二看了很 子大明 知頭號 後船 他稱 大難 隻 位這 見 了 道搬的 邊去小 它 了正 象知大老隻隻以 砜 明有 位 這上地再做 , 孩 一嗎 誰 兩在 是道象先大大前 老 不七就 隻岸方往一看子 你 ? 這 不誰有生象象 說 聰千照先 時 大來就船 可對 個看說 有我 說應 有 甚有 明五他生 象分夠 可 該第兩 上記 水 能誰萬 先 有 麼辦能 的錯斤一 百 的 覺 的成了搬號到 有 斤方得 重幾 。船先 辦法稱 ,重不 五位 。石 的個 ! 重法 量次然頭大的把 法 那 因!止辛老先 這 話 ? _ **广** 先 生 售 了稱後 象甚 去個 0 為不 要過不 嗎 시지 大 你做孩 再等回 廖 生在 重 位象就 稱呢止些說河 ? 子 稱把船到地 弄 走 ? 對 說結實 船沉河方到 , 這 0 先你他 這 果 在 不裡到岸 麼我我一 是的做上就隻 個發太 生們們 大們看第我見

Notes 注解

- A9b. ●房钱 (房錢) fángqián "room or house rent" [N]
- A9c. 加起来 (加起來) "add up" [RC]
- B1a. ◆撞 zhuàng "bump into," "collide with" [v]
- B1b. ◆交通警 jiāotōngjǐng "traffic police" [N]
- B1c. ◆私了 sīliǎo "settle privately" [v]
- B1d. ●警察 jǐngchá "police," "police officer" [N]
- C1. 花牛 huāshēng "peanut" [N]
- C2a. ●块 (塊) kuài (measure for watches) [M]. The phrase 一块 500 元的手表 (一塊500元的手錶) means "a 500-dollar watch." Another possible measure for 手表 (手錶) is 只 (隻) zhī.
- C2c. ◆练习 (練習) liànxí "practice" [v]
- C3a. ●国内 (國內) guónèi "domestic," "internal" [PW]
- C3b. 再加上 could here be translated as "and added to that," "in addition," or "plus."
- C3c. ●黄金 (黄金) huángjīn "gold" [N]

- C3d. ●离开 (離開) líkāi "leave," "depart" [v]
- C3e. ●来到 (來到) láidào "come to," "arrive at" [RC]
- C3f. ◆铁路 (鐵路) tiělù "railroad" [N]. 铁 (鐵) is the word for "iron," so 铁路 (鐵路) literally means "iron road."
- C3g. ●完成 wánchéng "complete," "accomplish" [v]
- **C3i.** 事情变得更坏了 (事情變得更壞了) "the situation became even worse" (lit. "the thing changed so that it became even worse")
- C3j. 被打伤 (被打傷) "be injured," "be wounded"
- C3k. 被打死 "be beaten to death," "be killed"
- C4a. ◆称 (稱) chēng "weigh," "weigh out" [v]
- C4b. ◆大象 dàxiàng "elephant" [N]. Note that the measure for elephants, as for many other animals, is 只 (隻) zhī.
- C4c. 河边 (河邊) "by the side of a river"
- C4d. ◆禾止 bù zhǐ "not just that, not only" [PH]
- C4e. ◆弄 nòng "do," "make," "get," "handle," "tinker with." In ISC 18-2: 7, we first took up this verb, which is a so-called "dummy" verb that can substitute for a more specific verb. We could translate 把大象弄到一只船上去 (把大象弄到一隻船上去) as "get the elephant on a boat."
- C4f. ●只(隻) zhī (for boats) [M]
- C4g. 船边 (船邊) "the side of the boat"
- C4h. ●记号 (記號) jihao "mark," "sign," "notation" [N]
- C4i. ②河岸 hé'àn "river bank," "riverside" [N]
- C4j. ◆搬 bān "move" [v]. This character is used in the expression 搬家 "move one's home." The phrase 往船上搬石头 (往船上搬石頭) means "moved stones onto the boat."
- C4k. ◆ ∑ chén "sink," "be submerged" [v]
- C4m. ◆聪明 (聰明) cōngming "be smart" [cv]
- C4n. ●照 zhào "according to" [cv]. The phrase 照他的方法去做 lit. means "did according to his method."

NOTE:

Printable pdfs for Units 23 and 24, along with Appendices A, C, D, E, F are on the accompanying disc.